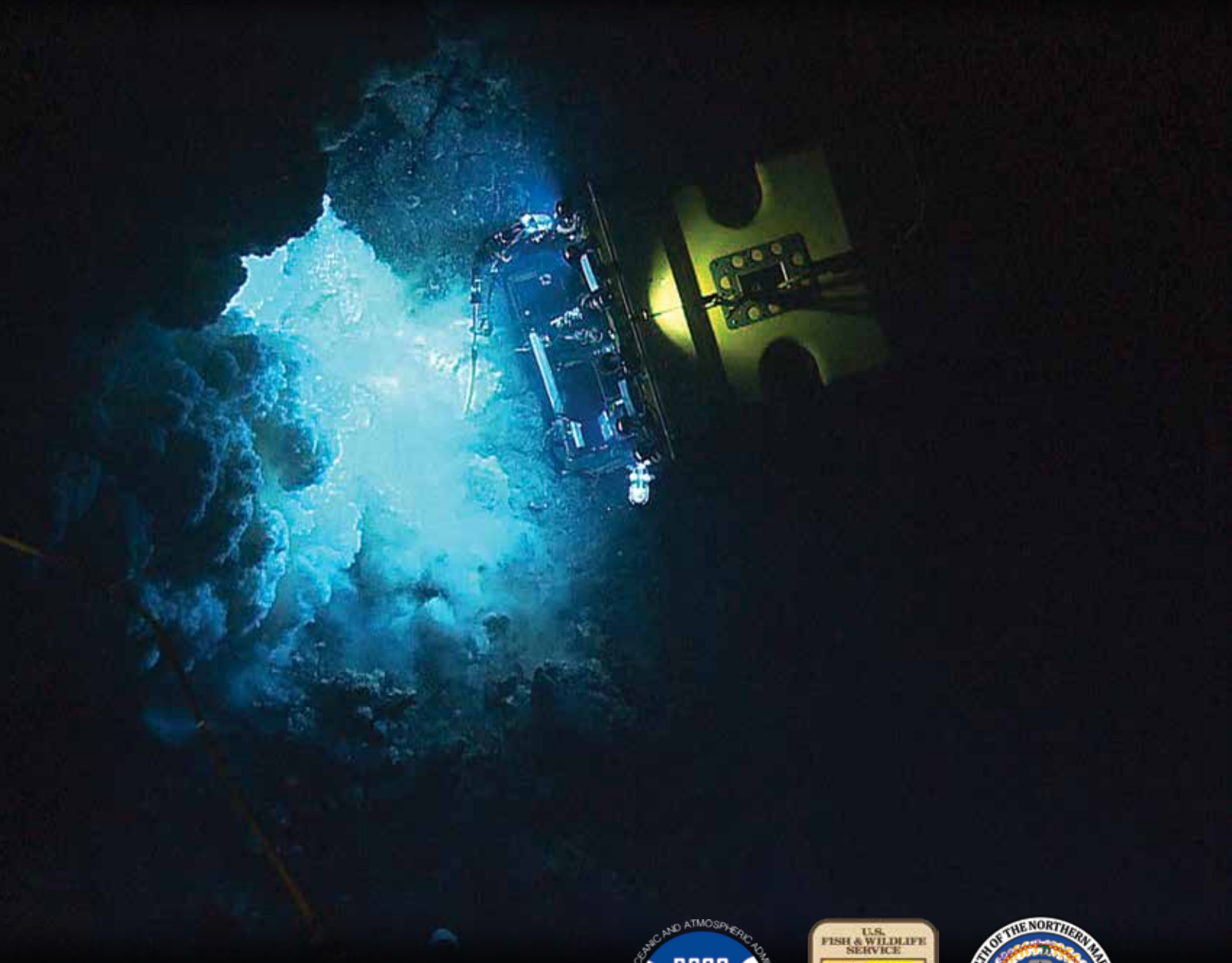
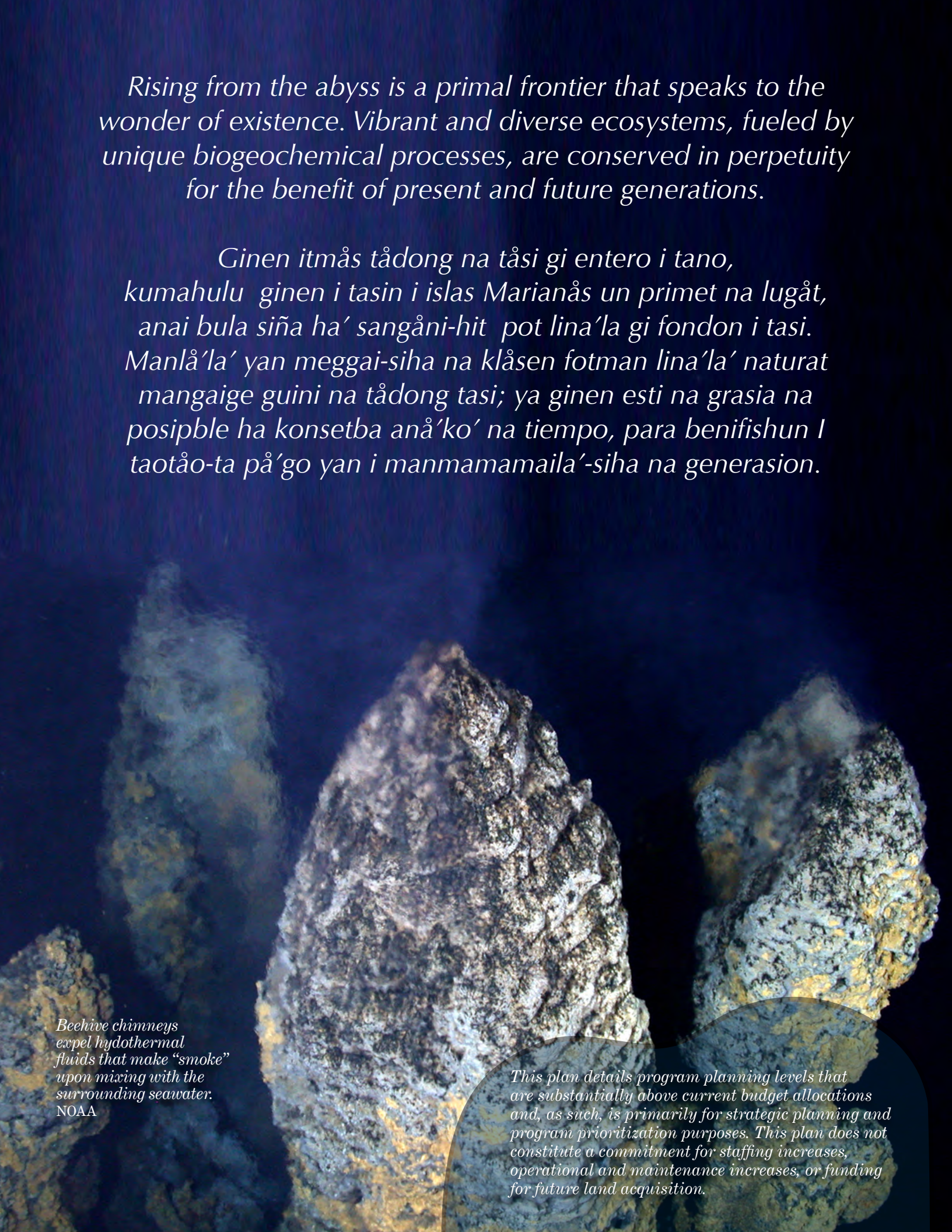
Marianas Trench
Marine National Monument

Draft Monument Management Plan and Environmental Assessment



Rising from the abyss is a primal frontier that speaks to the wonder of existence. Vibrant and diverse ecosystems, fueled by unique biogeochemical processes, are conserved in perpetuity for the benefit of present and future generations.

Ginen itmås tådong na tåsi gi entero i tano, kumahulu ginen i tasin i islas Marianås un primet na lugåt, anai bula siña ha' sangåni-hit pot lina'la gi fondon i tasi. Manlå'la' yan meggai-siha na klåsen fotman lina'la' naturat mangaige guini na tådong tasi; ya ginen esti na grasia na posipble ha konsetba anå'ko' na tiempo, para benifishun I taotåo-ta på'go yan i manmamamaila'-siha na generasion.



Beehive chimneys expel hydothermal fluids that make "smoke" upon mixing with the surrounding seawater. NOAA

This plan details program planning levels that are substantially above current budget allocations and, as such, is primarily for strategic planning and program prioritization purposes. This plan does not constitute a commitment for staffing increases, operational and maintenance increases, or funding for future land acquisition.

Draft
Marianas Trench Marine National Monument Management Plan
and
Environmental Assessment

November 2020

Prepared by:

Marianas Trench Marine National Monument

National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration
NOAA Inouye Regional Center
1845 Wasp Blvd., Bldg 176
Honolulu, HI 96818

US Fish & Wildlife Service
P.O. Box 8134, MOU-3
Dededo, GU 96912

CNMI Department of Lands and Natural Resources
Division of Fish and Wildlife
P.O. Box 10007
Saipan, MP 96950

Blank page

Table of Contents

1. Introduction
   1.1. Monument Features Overview 1
   1.2. Monument Establishment 4
   1.3 Global and Regional Significance 4
   1.4 Purpose and Need for Management Plan 5
   1.5 Management Framework 5
   1.6 Scope of the Management Plan and Review Process 11

2. Goals and Management Alternatives
   2.1 Goals, Objectives, and Strategies 13
   2.2 Management Alternatives 16
   2.3 Action Plans 19

3. Affected Environment
   3.1 Physical Environment 79
   3.2 Biological Environment 120

4. Cultural & Socioeconomic Resources
   4.1 Introduction… 153
   4.2 Archeological Record and Maritime Zone 155
   4.3 Global Encounters 157
   4.4 The Administration and Militarization of the Mariana Islands 160
   4.5 Joint Region Marianas and Coast Guard Sector Guam 162
   4.6 Demographic and Economic Setting in Guam and the CNMI 163
   4.7 Ecotourism 164
   4.8 Cultural and Socioeconomic Importance of Fishing 165

5. Environmental Effects Analysis
   5.1 Overview of Effects Analysis and Terminology 169
   5.2 Summary of Effects 170
   5.3 Effects Analysis 170
   5.4 Cumulative Effects Assessment 180

6. Appendices

Appendix A. Known Species Lists.....A-1
Appendix B. USFWS Compatibility Determinations and Appropriate Use Findings.....B-1
Appendix C. Implementation Plan.....C-1
Appendix D. Wilderness Review for Mariana Trench and Mariana Arc of Fire NWRs.....D-1
Appendix E. Best Management Practices & Biosecurity.....E-1
Appendix F. Legal Documents.....F-1
Appendix G. Mariana Trench Monument Advisory Council.....G-1
Appendix H. Acronyms and Abbreviations.....H-1
Appendix I. Mandates.....I-1
Appendix J. Statement of Compliance.....J-1
Appendix K. Public Scoping.....K-1

Gasses spew from the high-temperature white smokers at Champagne Vent site, NW Eifuku volcano. Photo: NOAA

Chapter 1. Introduction

1.1 Monument Features Overview

Enormous submarine mud volcanoes, an underwater pool of liquid sulfur, dense apex predator populations, and spectacular coral reef systems…these are but some of the distinctive characteristics of the Marianas Trench Marine National Monument (Monument). Monument features are marked by the region's complex geological processes in the Earth's most active volcanic system, the Pacific Ring of Fire. These geological phenomena create unique underwater environments that support dynamic biological ecosystems. Spectacular volcanic undersea vents, also known as "smokers," support a wide variety of marine life, including some of the earliest known microbial life forms on Earth. Also found here is the Mariana Trench, the world's deepest, in which Mount Everest could fit with a mile of water to spare.[1, 2]

Spanning 95,216 square miles of submerged lands and waters, the Monument is located on the western edge of the Pacific Ocean and east of the Philippines in the vicinity of the Mariana Archipelago of islands. Here, the oldest species on our planet thrive amidst magnificent mud volcanoes, and strange new species defy our old concepts of existence. The world's first discovery of hydrothermal vent fish was made in a boiling undersea lake of liquid sulfur on one of the Monument's seamounts. The submerged caldera at Maug is one of the few places on Earth where photosynthetic and chemosynthetic communities of life are known to exist together, fueling a microbial biodiversity hotspot of extraordinary complexity. This area provides a natural laboratory for studying ocean acidification and a potential coral refuge for climate change.

The unspoiled waters surrounding these islands are home to sharks, whales, dolphins, and fish, along with several species of threatened and endangered (T&E) sea turtles. Sharks and other apex predators drive smaller fish to the surface, creating the bait balls upon which many seabirds feed. More than two dozen seabird species inhabit the area and enrich the nutrient load of coral reefs, fertilizing the shores with energy from the sea. The Monument complements the protections of adjacent wildlife conservation reserves in the three northernmost islands of the U.S. Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands (CNMI) and presents a remarkable opportunity to protect every link in this complex and fragile chain—birds, seamounts, predatory fish and corals—as an integrated ecosystem.

The Monument consists of three units: Trench, Volcanic, and Islands. Two of these units have also been designated as national wildlife refuges. The Trench Unit and Volcanic Unit are managed both as part of the Monument and also as the "Mariana Trench National Wildlife Refuge" and "Mariana Arc of Fire National Wildlife Refuge". This document identifies these areas as the Trench Unit/Refuge and Volcanic Unit/Arc of Fire Refuge. The Islands Unit is not managed as a part of the National Wildlife Refuge System (NWRS). We have used these names throughout this plan in accordance with their legal and regulatory structure.

Xenophyophores in the Trench Unit/Refuge. Photo: NOAA

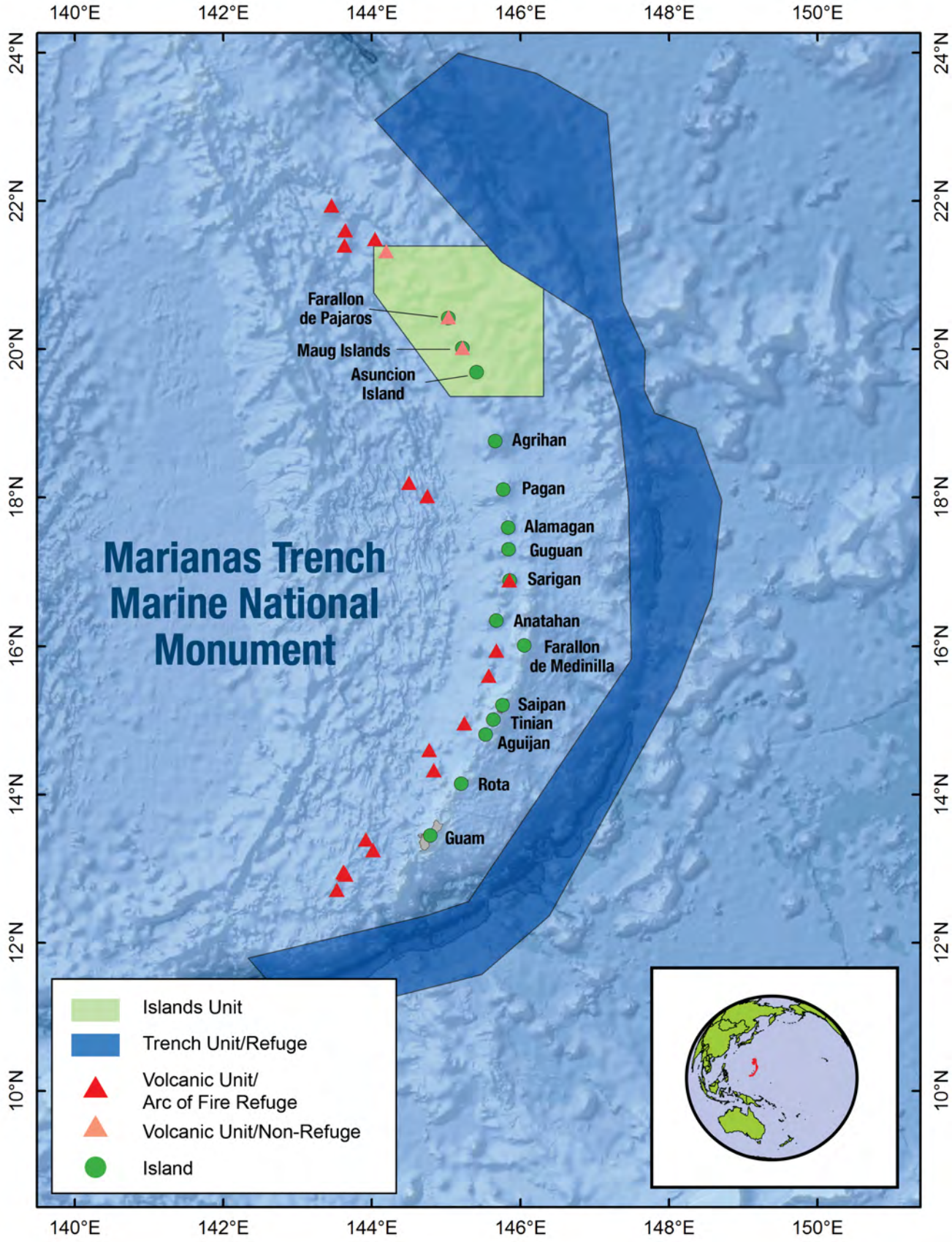
The **Trench Unit/Refuge** stretches approximately 940 nautical miles (nmi)[*] long and 38 nmi wide along the Mariana Trench sea floor and includes Sirena Deep, the third deepest point on Earth at about 35,000 feet—remarkable for its steep walls, distinctive geologic features, and deep ocean life forms. Xenophyophores resembling giant amoebae, deep-sea jellyfish, shrimplike amphipods, and translucent sea cucumbers have found a home in this harsh environment amid shaggy bacterial mats. The ocean floor at such depth consists of a biogenous ooze composed of microscopic plankton shells from both animal and plant plankton. The deepest areas of the Mariana Trench are likened to an inverted chain of islands, where each "peak" points downward but, like islands, each feature can be geologically and biologically unique.

The **Volcanic Unit/Arc of Fire Refuge** – an arc of 18[†] undersea mud volcanoes and thermal vents – sustains life under some of the harshest conditions on the planet. Here species survive in the midst of hydrothermal vents that produce highly acidic and boiling water. Vent communities include squat lobsters as well as tubeworms, clams, and mussels that have developed a symbiotic relationship with chemosynthetic bacteria. The Champagne vent at NW Eifuku produces almost pure liquid carbon dioxide. This phenomenon has only been observed at one other site in the world, the Okinawa Trough in the East China Sea.

[*] A nautical mile (nmi) is a unit of distance used on ocean and coastal waters that is approximately one minute of arc measured along any meridian. By international agreement, it has been set at 1,852 meters exactly or 1.15078 statute miles.

[†] Although Presidential Proclamation 8335 identifies 21 submarine volcanoes included in the "Volcanic Unit", three of these (Maug, Ahyi, and Daikoku) are also within the boundary of the "Islands Unit". For purposes of management, these three vents are considered primarily within the Islands Unit and therefore are not managed as units of the NWRS in accordance with Secretarial Order 3284. Henceforth, within this plan and for management purposes, the "Volcanic Unit/Arc of Fire Refuge" is considered as 18 submerged volcanoes.

Marianas Trench Marine National Monument *Figure 1.*



The Islands Unit encompasses both the waters and submerged lands surrounding the three northernmost Mariana Islands and includes healthy coral reefs made up of roughly 300 different coral species. One of the coral reef sites has the highest density of sharks anywhere in the Pacific. The reefs and waters also include a great diversity of seamount and hydrothermal vent life. Unusual reef habitats support marine biological communities dependent on basalt rock foundations. Photosynthetic and chemosynthetic communities of life co-exist in the caldera of Maug. The Daikoku submarine volcano has a pool of liquid sulfur, the "Sulfur Cauldron". The only other known location of molten sulfur is on Io, a moon of Jupiter.

Photosynthetic and chemosynthetic life co-exist at Maug. Photo: NOAA

1.2 Monument Establishment

On June 6, 2009 President George W. Bush issued Presidential Proclamation 8335 (Proclamation) establishing the Marianas Trench Marine National Monument under the authority of the Antiquities Act of 1906. The Monument was established for the purpose of protecting objects of scientific interest such as the subduction system in the Trench; submerged volcanoes; hydrothermal vents (including the Champagne Vent and Sulfur Cauldron); coral reef ecosystems; and biologically diverse ecosystems where chemosynthetic and photosynthetic organisms exist side by side.

The Islands Unit boundaries are comprised of both the waters and submerged lands up to the mean low water line around the islands of Farallon de Pajaros (also known as Uracas[‡]), Maug, and Asuncion; while the Volcanic Unit/Arc of Fire Refuge and the Trench Unit/Refuge consist of only the submerged lands and features therein (not the overlying water column) within their specified boundaries. The boundaries of the Monument's Volcanic Unit/Arc of Fire Refuge include the submerged lands extending one nautical mile circle drawn from the center of each of the 18 active submarine volcanoes and hydrothermal vents. The boundary of the Trench Unit/Refuge extends from the northern limit of the Exclusive Economic Zone (EEZ) of the United States adjacent to the CNMI to the southern limit of the EEZ adjacent to the U.S. Territory of Guam.

1.3 Global and Regional Significance

Rare and unique geology, geochemistry, rare biological conditions, and pristine ecosystems provide an ideal location for interdisciplinary research. Because the area has a distinct position in the biogeography of the Pacific as a place where a high number of regional endemic and unusual species assemblages thrive, the Monument holds outstanding potential for globally significant social and scholarly contributions. Monument management activities can foster a greater understanding of issues related to climate change, fisheries systems upon which international food markets rely, Pacific navigational and trade routes, geological processes and global events, and the interconnectivity between humans and the natural world.

[‡] Farallon de Pajaros (from Spanish *Farallón de los pájaros*, meaning "cliffs of the birds"), is also known locally as Uracus (from Spanish *Urracas*, meaning "magpies").

This national marine monument is part of a growing global network of marine protected areas (MPAs) linked by a shared concern for society's relationship with marine wildlife and the marine environment. The Monument is one of the largest MPAs in the world and is poised to host research pursuits and eco-tourism ventures that are consistent with marine conservation, non-commercial fisheries activities, and cultural endeavors. This draft Monument management plan (MMP) was developed with consideration toward other regional conservation plans and MPA initiatives to augment, not duplicate, existing efforts that apply to the Monument.

Regional ecosystem planning efforts include the *Comprehensive Wildlife Conservation Strategies* and *Wildlife Action Plans* for the CNMI and Guam, the Pacific Islands Fisheries Science Center (PIFSC) Monument Program's *Marianas Trench Marine National Monument Science Plan for 2021-2026*, the Western Pacific Regional Fishery Management Council's *Mariana Archipelago Fishery Ecosystem Plan*, and the *Regional Biosecurity Plan* for Micronesia and Hawai‘i. Existing recovery plans for threatened and endangered (T&E) species in the Monument are also incorporated as applicable in this MMP.

1.4 Purpose and Need for a Management Plan

Presidential Proclamation 8335 tasked the Secretaries of Commerce and Interior, in cooperation with the CNMI Government, to prepare management plans and to promulgate implementing regulations for the proper care and management of the Monument. The U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS), National Ocean and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA), and CNMI Monument managers are collaborating to prepare and implement this management plan to fulfill the directives set forth in the Proclamation, and planning requirements of National Wildlife Refuge System Administration Act (Administration Act) and other applicable directives. This draft MMP/EA meets the Administration Act requirement to develop Comprehensive Conservation Plans (CCP) for all Refuge System units; NOAA's National Environmental Policy Act requirements; and CNMI's Northern Islands Submerged Lands (NISL) management plan requirement.

The purpose of this MMP is to provide a blueprint for managing activities and resources within the Monument in accordance with the conservation direction of its establishment with consideration for the history of the region, the remote location of the Monument, and the logistics associated with both. The goals and objectives are derived from the Proclamation, applicable implementing laws, regulations and policies; public input; stakeholder concerns; and endeavor to represent the diverse stakeholder constituency. The strategies and activities carry forward the directives outlined in the Proclamation and are aligned with federal and territorial mandates.

1.5 Management Framework

1.5.1 Background

President George W. Bush assigned management responsibility for the Monument to the Secretary of the Interior, in consultation with the Secretary of Commerce, except that the Secretary of Commerce, in consultation with the Secretary of the Interior, has the primary responsibility with respect to fishery-related activities regulated pursuant to the Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act (16 U.S.C. 1801 et seq.) and any other applicable authorities. The Secretaries of the Interior and Commerce were directed to involve the Department of Defense (DOD) and Department

of State (DOS) as cooperating agencies and treat as a cooperating agency the Government of the CNMI in developing management plans and regulations. The Proclamation specified that monument management plans shall ensure that the Monument will be administered in accordance with the Proclamation, and shall provide for: ensuring traditional access by indigenous persons for culturally significant subsistence, cultural and religious uses; promoting scientific exploration and research; and providing public education and outreach programs.

To carry out the President's direction, Department of the Interior (DOI) Secretary Dirk Kempthorne was obligated to determine which DOI bureau could best implement the entirety of the Proclamation provisions. On January 16, 2009, Secretarial Order 3284 delegated management responsibility to the USFWS and designated the Volcanic and Trench Units as units of the NWRS, subject to provisions of the Proclamation. On October 8, 2009, those units were officially named "Mariana Arc of Fire National Wildlife Refuge" and "Mariana Trench National Wildlife Refuge", respectively. Refuge designation ensured the protections directed by the President by immediately applying the authorities of laws, regulations, and policies of the NWRS within the entirety of those units' boundaries. To ensure the proper care and management of the Islands Unit in accordance with the Proclamation directives, either: 1) New regulations will be developed through a separate public review process; or, 2) Secretarial Order 3284 will be amended to include the Islands Unit under the Administration Act.

Similarly, acting Secretary of Commerce Otto J. Wolff delegated his management responsibility for the Monument to NOAA, through the National Marine Fisheries Service. Monument fishing regulations were published on June 3, 2013 (50 CFR part 665) to define the terms used in Proclamation 8335 and to further articulate the intention and scope of regulated activities in the Monument. To learn more, see the *Compliance Guide* at www.fisheries.noaa.gov/pacific-islands/ resources-fishing/regulation-summaries-and-compliance-guides-pacific-islands.

The territorial submerged land around Maug, Farallon de Pajaros and Asuncion was transferred from federal authority to the CNMI on September 22, 2016, bringing new opportunities for additional consultation and coordination of management between areas of Commonwealth jurisdiction and areas of federal jurisdiction. Within the Islands Unit/Arc of Fire Refuge, the CNMI territorial sea extends from low water line at the three northern islands, seaward 3 nautical miles. The federal area of the Islands Unit/Arc of Fire Refuge extends from the CNMI boundary, out seaward roughly 50 nmi. Both the Volcanic Unit/Arc of Fire Refuge and the Trench Unit/Refuge are solely under federal jurisdiction.

1.5.2 Management Roles and Responsibilities

As directed in the Proclamation, protection of different resources in the Monument is delegated to multiple government agencies and legal mechanisms. The Secretaries of Commerce (through NOAA) and the Interior (through USFWS) manage the Monument pursuant to applicable legal authorities and in consultation with the Secretary of Defense. The USFWS and NOAA also receive advice and recommendations from the Department of Defense (DOD), the U.S. Coast Guard (USCG) and the Government of the CNMI through the Mariana Trench Monument Advisory Council
(MTMAC). The CNMI has management authority within the NISL boundaries. Under the terms of the transfer Memorandum of Agreement (signed by the CNMI Government, DOI and DoC on Sep 22, 2016), the USFWS and NOAA manage the conveyed submerged lands for the benefit of the CNMI people in consultation with the CNMI government. The "Monument managers" referred to in this MMP/EA include the USFWS, NOAA, and CNMI. A brief description of each follows:

U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service

The U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, an agency within the Department of the Interior, is the principal Federal agency responsible for conserving, protecting, and enhancing the Nation's fish and wildlife populations and their habitats. The mission of the Service is "working with others, to conserve, protect, and enhance fish and wildlife and their habitats for the continuing benefit of the American people." National natural resources entrusted to the Service for conservation and protection include migratory birds, endangered and threatened species, inter-jurisdictional fish, wetlands, and certain marine mammals. The agency seeks to provide and enhance opportunities to participate in compatible wildlife-dependent recreation; and foster understanding and instill appreciation of the diversity and interconnectedness of fish, wildlife, and plants and their habitats.

The USFWS Monument management activities are coordinated by the Superintendent for the Mariana Islands Refuges & Monument Complex with offices on Saipan and Guam. The USFWS Pacific Islands Fish and Wildlife Office (PIFWO) has field offices located in CNMI, Guam, and Hawai‘i with conservation oversight for seabirds in the Monument and shared responsibility for administration of the Endangered Species Act (ESA) with the NOAA National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS). PIFWO also administers coastal conservation and conservation partnerships programs through its Habitat Conservation Division, and provides assistance with invasive species issues and emergency response throughout the Pacific islands.

National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration

The Marine National Monument Program is based in the Pacific Islands Region Office (PIRO) in Honolulu, Hawai‘i as part of NMFS, and is NOAA's lead line office for preparing and implementing this management plan with support from NOAA line offices and the NOAA Saipan and Guam Field Offices. The Monument Program works closely with the NMFS PIFSC through an integrated program to promote science-based management of the Monument's resources. Other NOAA line offices that support Monument management include the Office of Law Enforcement (OLE), National Ocean Service (NOS), National Environmental Satellite, Data and Information Services, National Weather Service, Program, Planning, and Integration, and the Office of Oceanic and Atmospheric Research (OAR). The Marine National Monument Program also collaborates with federal agencies, territorial governments, universities, and non-governmental peers to implement Monument activities, engage the public, and fulfill its responsibilities under the Monument management arrangement.

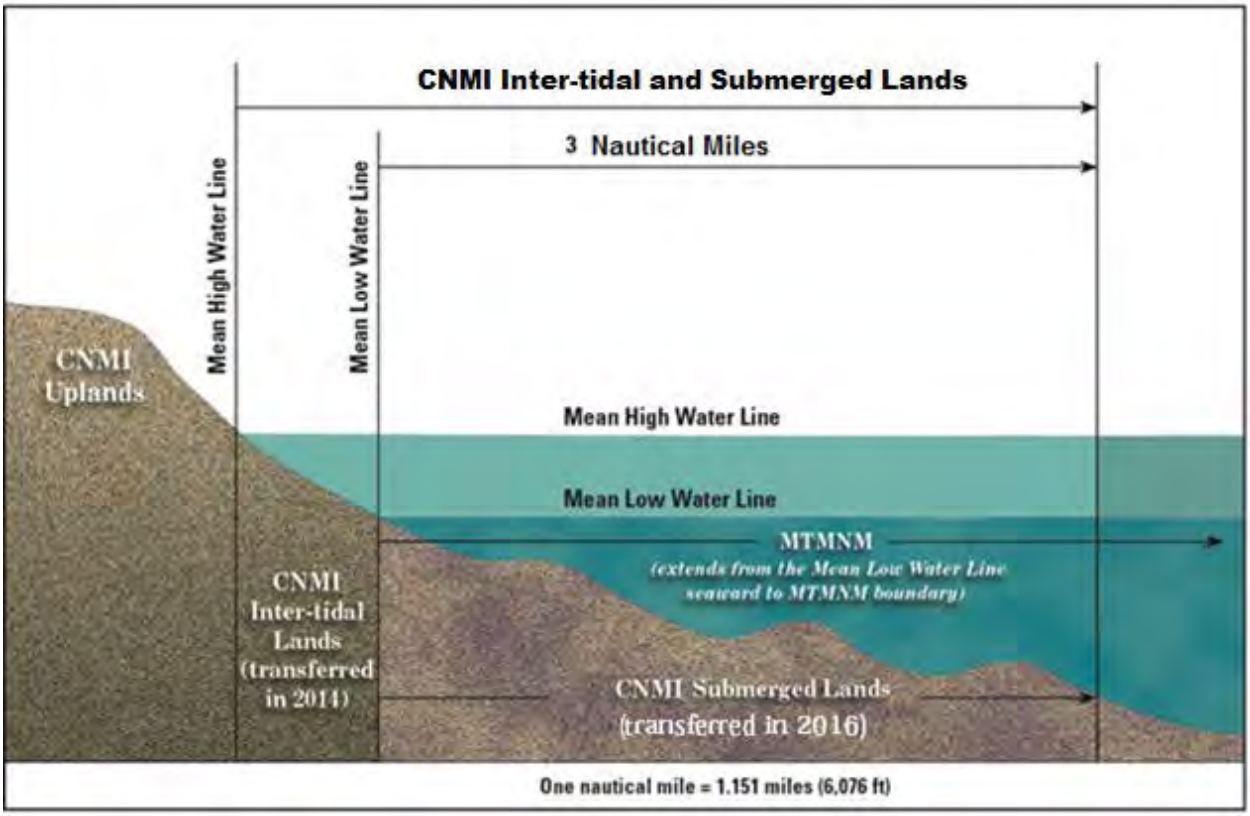
In addition to shared responsibility for administration of the ESA, the NMFS PIRO administers the Marine Mammal Protection Act (MMPA), and Magnuson-Stevens Act (MSA). The PIRO NMFS supports both domestic and international marine resource management within the Pacific, and is responsible for assisting the Western Pacific Regional Fishery Management Council in the development of fishery management plans and amendments, drafting and implementing federal fishery regulations, issuing federal fishing permits, and monitoring fisheries stocks. Other major NOAA responsibilities include exploration and research, ocean literacy, recovering protected species, maintaining resilient marine habitats, and monitoring compliance with fishery agreements and treaties.

U.S. Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands

The CNMI Department of Land and Natural Resources (DLNR) and Bureau of Environmental and Coastal Quality (BECQ) are responsible for coordinating activities and managing natural resources for the CNMI government. DLNR has primary responsibility for the management of submerged lands and fisheries and BECQ has primary responsibility for managing coastal resources and water quality. The CNMI territorial sea extends from the low water line at Maug, Farallon de Pajaros, and Asuncion; seaward 3 nautical miles within the Islands Unit of the Monument. These 3 islands are constitutionally-designated wildlife sanctuaries managed by the DLNR Division of Fish and Wildlife.

The Division of Fish and Wildlife (DFW) within the DLNR performs a wide range of duties associated with fisheries management and the protection and conservation of marine resources in the CNMI. Programs within DFW focus on research and monitoring of fish and their essential habitats, management and monitoring of all marine protected and conservation areas, fisheries permitting and enforcement, and community outreach and education.

BECQ is responsible for the management of coastal resources of the CNMI, including coral reef and associated habitats and water quality. BECQ regulates commercial tourism and recreational activities (i.e. marine sports operators), coastal and submerged earth moving activities, and coastal development and resource use. Actions carried out comprise permitting and associated monitoring and enforcement, research and monitoring of marine habitats and communities, water quality monitoring, and community outreach and education.



CNMI jurisdiction area 0-3 nmi around Maug, Farallon de Pajaros, and Asuncion. *Image: Glenda Franich/USFWS*

1.5.3 Other Cooperating Agencies and Departments

Department of Defense

The Department of Defense (DOD) is directed under the Proclamation to be involved as a cooperating agency in developing and implementing any management plans, rules, and regulations. The mission of the DOD is to provide the military forces needed to deter war and to protect the security of our country. The boundaries of the Monument fall within the jurisdiction of DOD's Joint Region Mariana, whose mission is to provide executive level installation management support to all DOD components and tenants through assigned regional installations on Guam and the Northern Mariana Islands in support of training in the Marianas; to act as the interface between the military and the civilian community; to ensure compliance with all environmental laws and regulations, safety procedures, and equal opportunity policy; and perform other functions and tasks as may be assigned.

Presidential Proclamation 8335 states that the prohibitions outlined by the Proclamation do not apply to the activities and exercises of the Armed Forces. However, the Proclamation also states "*The Armed Forces shall ensure, by the adoption of appropriate measures not impairing operations or operational capabilities, that its vessels and aircraft act in a manner consistent, so far as is reasonable and practicable, with this proclamation.*" A DOD official is one of five representatives on the MTMAC advisory body for the Monument.

U.S. Coast Guard

The U.S. Coast Guard, an agency within the Department of Homeland Security, also has a representative on the MTMAC. For over two centuries the USCG has safeguarded our Nation's maritime interests in the heartland, in the ports, at sea, and around the globe. Coast Guard Sector Guam's area of responsibility includes Guam, the CNMI, the Republic of Palau, the Republic of the Marshall Islands, and the Federated States of Micronesia (Kosrae, Pohnpei, Chuuk, and Yap). The Coast Guard has 11 missions covering responsibilities in: Ports, waterways, and coastal security; Drug interdiction; Aids to navigation; Search and rescue; Living marine resources; Marine safety; Defense readiness; Migrant interdiction; Marine environmental protection; Ice operations; and other law enforcement. Monument regulation enforcement will be conducted primarily by the USCG, working in close association with NOAA Office of Law Enforcement (OLE), USFWS OLE, Refuge LE, and CNMI LE personnel.

Office of Oceans and Polar Affairs

The Office of Oceans and Polar Affairs (OPA), within the Department of State (DOS), is responsible for formulating and implementing U.S. policy on international issues concerning the oceans, the Arctic, and Antarctica. In coordination with USFWS and NOAA, OPA promotes marine scientific research with an efficient authorization process and through support of several international scientific organizations. Its responsibilities at the international level include: protection of the marine environment from pollution and other anthropogenic threats, through the International Maritime Organization, Regional Seas Programme, oil spill response, control of invasive species, and other means; conservation of marine biodiversity, including whales and other cetaceans, sea birds, and coral reefs; improvement of maritime security, to protect the United States from terrorism and other criminal threats, and to protect freedom of navigation and maritime commerce; and, protection of

underwater cultural heritage, through participation in bilateral and multilateral international agreements, as well as through domestic policies.

Foreign-based researchers wishing to access and/or conduct research activities in the Monument must apply through the OPA Research Application Tracking System[§] (RATS), an online data management system designed to improve the transparency and efficiency of the implementation of the marine scientific research consent regime established by the Law of the Sea Convention. It is the responsibility of either the chief scientist or his/her sponsoring organization to seek consent through the office of their nation's Science Attaché to the United States in a timely fashion; the Law of the Sea Convention states that applications must be received no later than six months prior to the expected starting date of the marine scientific research.

The Office of Insular Affairs

The Office of Insular Affairs (OIA), an agency within the Department of the Interior, has responsibility for coordinating federal policy with respect to the territories of American Samoa, Guam, the U.S. Virgin Islands, and the CNMI, and for administering and overseeing U.S. federal assistance provided to the Freely Associated States of the Federated States of Micronesia, the Republic of the Marshall Islands, and the Republic of Palau under the Compacts of Free Association. The mission of the OIA is to empower insular communities by improving their quality of life, creating economic opportunities and promoting efficient and effective governance.

1.5.4 Monument Management Coordination Team

This management plan proposes the creation of a Monument Management Coordination Team (MMCT) comprised of representatives from USFWS, NOAA, and CNMI within one year of publication to facilitate coordinated management of the Monument. Coordination of management is prescribed in the Proclamation, in particular for the Islands Unit. The agencies will create and operate a MMCT that will meet routinely on a fixed schedule to promote communication and coordination (i.e., consultation), joint permitting activities, etc. Technical advisors and/or other federal and local agencies may be brought in as needed to aid in the decision-making process.

1.5.5 Marianas Trench Monument Advisory Council

Presidential Proclamation 8335 tasked the Secretaries of Commerce and Interior to establish a Monument Advisory Council to provide advice and recommendations on the development of management plans and management of the Monument. The first term of the council was appointed by the Secretaries in September 2010 after considering nominations from the Governor of the CNMI, the Secretary of Defense, and the Secretary of Homeland Security. MTMAC membership includes three officials of the CNMI Government, one from the DOD, and one from the USCG who each serve a 3-year term. By-laws for the MTMAC were established at the 7th MTMAC meeting on Saipan in September 2013 (Appendix G). It is envisioned that the MTMAC will continue to provide advice and recommendations on Monument management to the new MMCT on a regular basis. Subject to the by-laws, the MTMAC may form sub-committees to fulfill specific project needs. The first sub-committee was a Mariana Trench Monument visitor facility working group, formed to research and recommend specifications for a proposed multi-purpose visitor facility.

[§] https://www.state.gov/research-application-tracking-system/

1.6 Scope of the Management Plan and Review Process

1.6.1 Scope of the Plan

With consideration for public input, this management plan is designed to meet the requirements of Presidential Proclamation 8335; Secretarial Order 8234; the Administration Act; the National Environmental Policy Act (NEPA); existing NOAA/USFWS management responsibilities for the area; and the NISL Memorandum of Agreement. Action plans address conservation priorities such as resource protection, traditional access by indigenous persons, exploration and research, ocean literacy and outreach. Activities occurring beyond the Monument boundaries such as commercial fishing and deep-sea mining; all proposed military training within the Navy's Mariana Islands Training and Testing program; and, right-of-way permits and associated environmental assessments to install submarine fiber optic telecommunications cables are beyond the scope of this plan.

1.6.2 Review Process

The MMP review process follows NEPA, as directed in Proclamation, as well as all applicable NOAA, USFWS, and CNMI policies. The NEPA process for the Monument began in 2011 with the USFWS and NOAA publishing a joint Federal Register "Notice of Intent" to prepare a Monument Management Plan and Environmental Assessment (MMP/EA).[3] Public scoping meetings were held on Saipan, Tinian, Rota, and Guam February-March 2012 to gather information and encourage public participation regarding Monument management activities and issues. Monument-related workshops were held annually on Saipan, Tinian, Rota, and Guam from 2010-2013 to identify concerns from diverse stakeholders and isolate research initiatives that would provide the maximum benefit for regional and global communities. A summary of those comments is provided in Appendix K. Meaningful public involvement and access to the Monument for a multitude of uses were acknowledged as high priorities. Public comments clarified the goals for the MMP/EA and were considered in the development of management strategies.

As required by NEPA, funding or permitting decisions will be made with full consideration of the impact to the natural and human environment; federal agencies must to disclose these impacts to interested parties and the general public. The central element in the environmental review process is an evaluation of alternatives including the "no action" alternative. This Draft MMP/EA proposes a series of Action Plans for managing the Monument with a range of three implementation alternatives. Public comments will play a role in selecting the final alternative to guide Monument management.

An effects analysis of the proposed management actions was developed by identifying resources associated with the physical, biological, and human environment that may be impacted by the various alternative strategies presented in Chapter 2. The affected environment of the Monument (including the Physical Environment, Biological Environment, Cultural, and Socioeconomic Resources) and a description of conservation target species are described in Chapters 3 and 4. The potential effects to those resources as a result of implementing the strategies described under each alternative were then assessed and provided in Chapter 5.

Monument managers are committed to securing public input throughout the planning process. This draft MMP/EA and associated proposed regulations are being made available to the public for a 60-day public comment period. Comments and the agency responses will be consolidated and published with the final Marianas Trench Marine National Monument Management Plan.

References:

1. Frensley, C. 2008, The Highest and Deepest Points on Earth, Sciences 360 (Online publication)

2. Gallo, N. D., Cameron, J., Hardy, K., Fryer, P., Bartlett, D. H., & Levin, L. A. (2015). Submersible-and lander-observed community patterns in the Mariana and New Britain trenches: influence of productivity and depth on epibenthic and scavenging communities. Deep Sea Research Part I: Oceanographic Research Papers, 99, 119-133.

3. Federal Register / Vol. 76, No. 65 / Tuesday, April 5, 2011 / Notices

Vibrant coral reef community in the Islands Unit. Photo: Jean Kenyon/USFWS

Chapter 2. Goals and Management Alternatives

2.1 Goals, Objectives, and Strategies

Goals, objectives and strategies are the unifying elements of successful Monument management. They identify and focus management priorities, resolve issues, and link to Proclamation decrees, and agency policies and missions. Six goals for Monument management have been developed. The management objectives to meet these goals have been divided into 11 program areas, referred to as the following action plans:

- Marine Resource Conservation and Monitoring;
- Coordination of Management, Access and Permitting;
- Sustainable Non-commercial Fishing;
- Surveillance and Enforcement;
- Marine Invasive Species Control;
- Marine Debris;
- Emergency Response and Natural Resource Damage Assessment;
- Exploration and Research;
- Cultural and Maritime Heritage;
- Ocean Literacy, Environmental Education, and Public Outreach; and
- International Collaboration.

Marianas Trench Marine National Monument Goals

1. Conserve and protect the marine ecosystems around the islands of Farallon de Pajaros (Uracus), Maug, and Asuncion; 21 of the Mariana Ridge undersea volcanoes and thermal vents (as identified in the Presidential Proclamation); and the geologic features and life forms in the Mariana Trench.

2. Provide for traditional access to the Monument by the indigenous people of CNMI and Guam for culturally significant, subsistence, and religious uses.

3. Develop education, interpretation, and outreach programs to enhance understanding and appreciation of Monument resources and efforts to conserve them.

4. Assess and promote scientific exploration and research opportunities and adopt measures to ensure that the Monument's ecosystems, marine resources, and other objects of scientific interest are not degraded.

5. Assess and provide opportunities for tourism, recreation, and economic ventures that are compatible with the Monument's ecosystem, marine resources, and other objects of scientific interest.

6. Contribute to the recovery and protection of all native species with special consideration for threatened and endangered species, and species of management concern.

Each action plan contains a series of strategies and activities designed to help meet the objectives that address Monument management goals. Some action plans contain strategies and activities that will aid Monument managers in efficiently meeting multiple goals (a management approach known as multiple objective planning described in the next section). Brief descriptions are provided that outline how strategies and activities will be implemented to achieve the intended objectives. Goal order does not imply any priority in this draft MMP. Table 2.1 on the opposite page demonstrates the linkage between goals and action plans.

These mussels, shrimp, and limpets living at NW Eifuku seamount all depend on the chemical energy in hydrothermal vents for survival. Photo: NOAA/PMEL

The MMP is a living planning document, to be reviewed by Monument managers annually, and revised as needed to reflect new or changing resource conditions. The MMP is scheduled to be updated through the formal planning process and made available for public review every 15 years.

Table 2.1. Relationship between MMP goals and action plans.

MMP Goal	
1. Conserve and protect the marine ecosystems around the islands of Farallon de Pajaros (Uracus), Maug, and Asuncion; 21 of the Mariana Ridge undersea volcanoes and thermal vents; and the geologic features and life forms in the Mariana Trench.	Marine Resources Conservation & Monitoring
	Coordination of Management, Access & Permitting
	Surveillance & Enforcement
	Marine Invasive Species Control
	Marine Debris
	Emergency Response & Natural Resource Damage Assessment
2. Provide for traditional access to the Monument by indigenous persons for culturally significant subsistence and other cultural and religious uses.	Cultural & Maritime Heritage
	Coordination of Management, Access & Permitting
3. Develop education, interpretation, and outreach programs to enhance understanding and appreciation of Monument resources and efforts to conserve them.	Ocean Literacy, Environmental Education & Public Outreach
	Marine Resources Conservation & Monitoring
	Coordination of Management, Access & Permitting
	Surveillance & Enforcement
	Marine Invasive Species Control
	Marine Debris
	Cultural & Maritime Heritage
4. Assess and promote scientific exploration and research opportunities and adopt measures to ensure that the Monument's ecosystem, marine resources or species, or other objects of scientific interest are not degraded.	Exploration & Research
	Coordination of Management, Access & Permitting
	Marine Debris
	Ocean Literacy, Environmental Education & Public Outreach
5. Assess and provide opportunities for tourism, recreation, and economic ventures that do not harm the Monument's ecosystem, marine resources or species, or other objects of scientific interest.	Ocean Literacy, Environmental Education & Public Outreach
	Coordination of Management, Access & Permitting
6. Contribute to the recovery and protection of all native species with special consideration for threatened and endangered species, and species of management concern.	Ocean Literacy, Environmental Education & Public Outreach
	Marine Resources Conservation & Monitoring
	Surveillance & Enforcement
	Marine Invasive Species Control
	Marine Debris
	International Collaboration
	Exploration & Research

2.2 Management Alternatives

2.2.1 Alternative Development

The planning team reviewed and considered a variety of resource, social, economic, and organizational aspects important for managing the Monument during the development of the MMP alternatives. These background conditions are described more fully in the physical, biological, and cultural and socioeconomic resources chapters of this document. The team reviewed scientific reports and studies to better understand ecosystem trends and the latest scientific recommendations for species and habitats. Managers met with elected officials and staff from local, territorial, and federal agencies to ascertain priorities and problems as perceived by others. The MTMAC provided advice and recommendations in developing the range of alternatives to be responsive to the CNMI, USFWS, and NOAA's priorities, in addition to reviews of draft documents. Staff members also held public workshops and met with nongovernmental groups (NGOs), university/academic members, and community organizations to ensure that their comments and ideas were considered during MMP development. Community input was also gathered through the public scoping process.

2.2.2 Alternatives Considered but Not Selected

During the development of the alternatives, the planning team considered the actions detailed below. Both of these management alternatives were ultimately eliminated for the reasons provided.

Focus on Sustainable Tourism Development
Several requests to focus on developing tourism in the Monument were made during public scoping. The Proclamation does direct the Managers to assess and promote tourism and economic development opportunities. However, the high travel cost and sheer distance to reach the Islands Unit is a limiting factor for many potential visitors. With the exception of Zealandia, which rises 3 ft above sea level at low tide, the technological requirements to attempt visits to the Volcanic Unit/Arc of Fire Refuge or Trench Unit/Refuge are beyond the reach of most people, limiting access to government and university-sponsored researchers. Only a wealthy few have access to private submarines capable of deep sea exploration. The action plans identified in this draft MMP are necessary precursors to implementing a tourism program. An understanding of the unique features in the Monument may foster the desire to visit and potentially spark the interest of eco-tourism entrepreneurs in the future. A sustainable tourism program for the Monument may be appropriate at a later time after the MMP and other proposed programs are underway.

Open Access
Requests to allow for free access to the Monument were also submitted during the public comment period. The Proclamation does support public access, particularly in the areas of non-commercial fishing and culturally significant subsistence, cultural and religious uses. Although there is no cost associated with innocent passage through the Monument waters, there are some activities which could harm Monument resources. Given the sensitive environments of the Monument, as well as its remote nature, the managers have determined that access to the Monument would be best provided for through a permitting system. A permitting system will support careful analysis of potential impacts from proposed activities in the Monument and will support the requirement of the Proclamation in to pursue "*programs for monitoring and enforcement… necessary to ensure that such activities do not degrade the coral reef ecosystem or related marine resources or species or diminish the Monument's natural character*."

2.2.3 Summary of Alternatives

The alternatives presented in this draft MMP/EA were designed to meet the Monument goals; achieve the missions of the USFWS and NOAA; fulfill the purpose and need for the planning document; support objectives in the 2015 CNMI *Wildlife Action Plan*; and respond to key issues and concerns that were identified during public and internal scoping. The alternatives described in this section were developed to comply with NEPA and other pertinent laws, and the regulations and directives applied to implement those laws. These alternatives provide a basis for comparing potential impacts and help managers make better decisions regarding the physical, biological, economic, and social effects that could result from proposed actions and activities.

NEPA requires federal agencies to develop a range of reasonable alternatives and consider those alternatives in an equal manner. NEPA also requires the inclusion of a "no action" alternative which reflects current management activities with no change, i.e., no management plan. The Monument managers decided that three alternatives would address the significant planning issues and provide a reasonable range for approaching Monument management for the next 15 years. Alternative 1 is the no action alternative. Alternative 2 provides a phased implementation of all of the proposed action plan activities on a set 15-year schedule, as funding and staffing permit. Alternative 3, the government's preferred alternative, provides Monument managers a ranking system to prioritize proposed action plan activities on an annual basis in accord with actual budget allocations and new funding opportunities for the Monument.

Each of these alternatives should be considered as separate, stand-alone options for Monument management. Both Alternatives 2 and 3 propose to implement the same set of action plan activities with the same potential environmental effects. The difference lies in the scheduling or timing of when the activities would be implemented which offers two ways to be responsive to the three agencies' needs; ensuring projects on a set schedule will be implemented and not fall to the wayside when priorities shift and offering flexibility to be responsive to changing environmental and administrative requirements. Under Alternative 1, new activities would not be added to augment the ongoing activities and ongoing activities are not guaranteed. Under Alternative 2, implementation phases may extend beyond the set time frame if requested funding is not provided; and, the managers would be obligated to implement the activities based on the set schedule irrespective of changing conditions and priorities. Alternative 3 gives the Monument managers flexibility to implement an activity based on varying environmental or staffing needs and to incorporate new grant funding or unanticipated opportunities into the management schedule. Once implemented, many of the activities under each of the alternatives will phase into ongoing activities as long as they remain relevant and funded. The three alternatives are summarized below:

Alternative 1 – No Action

Under Alternative 1, current management activities would continue. Fishing regulations for the Monument are enforced by NOAA but no regional outreach or public education of the permitting process would occur. The USFWS will manage the Trench Unit/Refuge and Volcanic Unit/Arc of Fire Refuge in accordance with regulations covering the NWRS. The CNMI would continue to have jurisdiction over the submerged lands and waters out to 3 nautical miles seaward of Maug, Asuncion, and Farallon de Pajaros, implementing management in cooperation with USFWS and NOAA. Grant funding from NOAA Fisheries Monument Program would allow limited support for projects in priority areas, such as ocean literacy. NOAA Fisheries PIFSC would continue to conduct RAMP cruises as funding and ship time allows on an approximately three year intervals. The PIFSC would continue cetacean and sea turtle assessment work as resources allow.

Alternative 2 – Phased Implementation on a Set Schedule
Under Alternative 2, proposed activities would be implemented in short-, mid-, and long-term phases, subject to funding and staff availability. All activities in each action plan have a designated implementation phase: short-term (within 3 years), mid-term (year 4-9), or long-term (10 years out or more). Alternative 2 includes the expansion of current programs and implementation of new projects. Outreach and education to communities in the CNMI and Guam would take place as well as distance learning opportunities via the internet. A permitting system would ensure protection of Monument ecosystems, and new programs to explore cultural and maritime connections would be implemented. New protocols to prevent introduction of marine invasive species would be developed and new technologies for monitoring and enforcement researched. The RAMP cruises would continue as funding and ship time allows, supporting resource monitoring needs identified in the action plans. The PIFSC would continue to conduct cetacean and sea turtle assessment work as resources allow. Managers would continue to support efforts to design exhibits and grow the visitor contact station.

Alterative 3 – Prioritized Implementation of Action Plans – (Preferred alternative)
Under Alternative 3, activities would be prioritized annually by the Monument Management Coordination Team (MMCT) comprised of USFWS, NOAA, and CNMI Monument managers. Prioritization will be based on a set ranking system. Proposed action plan activities will be carefully considered and given a score using the following seven criteria; 1) capacity to implement the activity, 2) authority to implement the activity, 3) funding availability and existing means to implement the activity, 4) level of partner support in carrying-out the activity, 5) the number of threats that would be curtailed or minimized by the executing the activity, 6) the number of target resources that would positively affected by implementing the activity, and 7) the level of urgency to implement the activity. This ranking system was used to prioritize the activities for the first year. In addition, an activity may be dropped if Monument managers deem that it is no longer beneficial in meeting the management objectives in relation to emerging priorities.

Top priorities for the first year under Alternative 3 include: A MMCT would be established to manage a joint permitting process. Monument information and regulations will be integrated into existing interagency agreements and mapping tools. Managers will work with partners to study, explore, and conserve Monument features and resources. Environmental education and ocean literacy programs will be developed along with distance learning tools. Managers would continue to design new exhibits and expand the visitor contact station. Protocols to prevent introduction of marine invasive species would be developed to replace the current BMPs if needed; and, new technologies for monitoring and enforcement would be studied. PIFSC would continue to conduct RAMP cruises and cetacean and sea turtle assessment work as resources allow.

Conical limpets (0.75 in) cover the rock surfaces at East Diamante while an arc crab wanders through. The white dots on the rocks and shells are limpet egg cases. Photo: NOAA

2. 3 Action Plans

Each Action Plan provides a comparative summary of management alternatives. Activities included in Alterative 1 are indicated by a check mark (✓). These are on-going activities that will continue even if the proposed action plans are not implemented. This no-change management option is a NEPA-required alternative.

Under Alternative 2, all activities have a designated implementation phase: short-term (within 3 years), mid-term (year 4-7), or long-term (8 years out or more). Under this alternative, all activities have a set schedule for implementation.

Alternative 3 requires the MMCT (USFWS, NOAA, and CNMI) to conduct a coordinated review of the proposed activities annually to determine funding priorities for implementation. The comparison charts show the priority given activities in the first year under the Alternative 3 column, with (1) being the highest priority and (4) the lowest priority for that year (example follows).

Project Title		Alt 1	Alt 2	Alt 3
E&R Activity 2.1	Work with partners to conduct scientific studies on the characteristics of the Monument's unique processes and resources.	✓	Short-term	(1)

2.3.1 Elements Common to All

All alternatives contain some common features. These are presented below to reduce the length and redundancy of the individual alternative descriptions.

a. Implementation subject to funding availability

Under each alternative, strategies will be implemented over a period of 15 years as funding becomes available. These action plans detail program recommendations that are sometimes substantially above current budget allocations and, as such, are primarily for strategic planning and program prioritization purposes. The action plans do not constitute a commitment for staffing increases, operational increases, or funding for future construction. It is the intent of the managers that annual priorities will follow the final MMP guidelines, although funding initiatives, unforeseen management issues, and budgets may vary from year to year.

b. Agency and Territory coordination

Under all alternatives, the Monument managers will continue to coordinate relevant management activities with the DOS, DOD, USCG, the Government of the CNMI, and the Government of Guam.

c. Appropriateness and compatibility

Each proposed activity will first need to be found appropriate and consistent with relevant laws, regulations, and policies, prior to allowing any public use of the Monument (including commercial uses). Compatibility determinations for activities occurring in the Trench Unit/ Refuge and the Volcanic Unit/Arc of Fire Refuge will be made by the USFWS (16 USC 668dd-668ee; 50 CFR 25, 26, and 29; and 603 FW 1 and 2). Compatibility determinations are located in Appendix B.

d. Threatened and endangered species protection and recovery

Protection of threatened and endangered species (T&E) species is common across all alternatives. The protection of federally listed species is mandated through Section 7 of the ESA. Federal agencies

must ensure the actions they take, including those they fund or authorize, do not jeopardize the existence of any listed species. To ensure adequate protection, managers are required to review all activities, programs, and projects occurring within the Monument to determine if they may affect listed species. If the determination is that an action may affect an endangered species, then a formal review and/or consultation will be conducted to identify those effects and means to mitigate those effects.

e. Climate change

Under all alternatives, Monument managers will participate in and contribute to climate change assessment efforts. Managers will consider 1) the potential effects of a proposed activity on climate changes as indicated by associated greenhouse gas emissions (GHG) and 2) the effects of climate change on a proposed action and its environmental impact. When possible, measures to minimize GHG output and potential affects to the species and their habitats will be incorporated into the project plans. Monument managers will work with PIFSC and the Pacific Islands Climate Change Cooperative (PICCC) when needed for science applications or modeling support.

f. Management approach

The management approach is based on three key frameworks; adaptive management, Ecosystem Based Management (EBM), and multiple objective planning. Adaptive management promotes flexible decision making that can be adjusted as outcomes from management actions and other events are evaluated. The MMP will be modified to produce improved results as new EBM information becomes available, as stakeholder concerns become better understood, and management objectives or funding resources respond to human and ecological shifts. Table 2.2 and Figure 2.1 provide additional information about the management planning cycle.

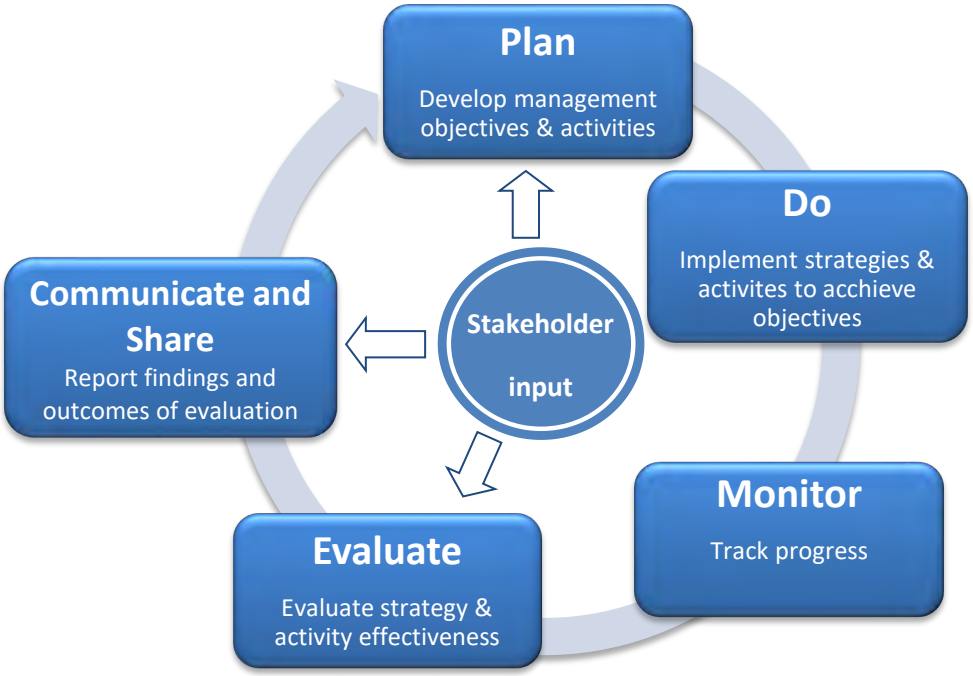


Figure 2.1. *The adaptive management cycle.*

Table 2.2. Management approaches used in the MMP

Approach	Key Concepts
Adaptive Management	Adaptive management involves exploring alternative ways to meet management objectives, predicting outcomes of alternatives based on the best available information, implementing one or more of those alternatives, monitoring to learn about the impacts of these actions, and then using the results to update knowledge and adjust management actions. Adaptive management focuses on learning and adapting through partnerships of managers, scientists, and stakeholders who together, learn how to create and maintain sustainable resource systems.
Ecosystem Based Management	Ecosystem based management considers the whole ecosystem, including humans and the environment, rather than managing one species or resource in isolation. Key aspects of EBM in regards to Monument management include: ➢ Integrates ecological, social, and sustainable socio-economic goals, recognizing humans as components of the ecosystem. ➢ Considers ecological, not just political, boundaries. ➢ Accounts for the complexity of natural processes and social systems and uses an adaptive management approach in the face of uncertainties. ➢ Engages multiple stakeholders in a collaborative process to define problems and find solutions. ➢ Focuses on the ecological integrity of coastal-marine systems and the sustainability of both human and ecological systems.
Multiple Objective Planning	Recognizing the shortcomings of single sector management, many government agencies and non-government organizations are developing approaches for multiple objective planning. The goal of multiple objective planning is to think holistically across management sectors, so that objectives among sectors can be identified and addressed for a mutually beneficial outcome. Multiple management objectives can be jointly addressed, and inter-agency management tools and resources can be pooled to achieve maximize benefit while minimizing costs.

g. Regulatory compliance

The activities listed in all alternatives will be reviewed prior to approval and implementation to ensure all actions comply with legal and policy requirements. This includes appropriate evaluations and documentation under NEPA and evaluation and consultation as required by the Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act (MSA) to include Essential Fish Habitat, Section 7 of the ESA and Section 106 of the National Historic Preservation Act of 1966 (NHPA). A description of relevant legal mandates, policies, executive orders, and other regulatory requirements is provided in Appendix I.

2.3.2 Marine Resources Conservation and Monitoring Action Plan

Introduction

Many of the Monument features and resources are unique to the region, while others once existed in other parts of the Pacific Ocean but have since been depleted. These resources hold historical and cultural meaning to the Chamorro and Carolinian people. The Marine Resources Conservation and Monitoring (MRCM) strategies and activities that are addressed in this action plan consider T&E species, the CNMI and Guam Species of Concern, fisheries resources, marine mammals, and habitats in the Monument.

Curious humpback whale inspecting diver. Photo: NOAA

Need for Action

Marine species and the habitats they depend on are under increasing pressure from various threats, such as rising ocean temperatures and ocean acidification; illegal, unreported and unregulated fishing; and other natural and anthropogenic events which often lead to habitat loss. While the impacts of these threats individually can be severe, they can sometimes occur simultaneously, which can have a devastating impact on a species.

Habitat loss frequently results in the fragmentation of suitable habitats for a species, although the degree of impact will depend on the life history of individual species. Increasing the distances between suitable habitats may cause the isolation of smaller populations. Isolation places smaller populations at greater risk of genetic drift, inbreeding depression, and increased mutations.[1, 2] Fragmentation of feeding grounds also has an energetic cost, as individuals have to range farther in order to find the required food sources, potentially reducing overall fitness of individuals.[3] Individuals transiting between fragmented habitats are also at greater risk to predation. Habitat loss and/or fragmentation are likely to have a disproportionally greater impact on T&E species.

The MRCM Action Plan addresses some of the major issues that exist for the protection of these resources such as: data deficiencies and the identification and mitigation of threats, by building on the activities in other action plans. There are clear overlaps between this plan and other plans designed to address specific threats, but this plan concentrates on T&E species, analysis of fisheries data for conservation needs, and considers important habitats, physical or biological features essential to conservation, and those features that may require special management considerations or protection– whereas the other action plans address species, fisheries, and habitats more broadly.

Snails, crabs, shrimp, and anemones compete for space at hydrothermal site. Photo: NSF/NOAA, Jason, WHOI

Activities described under each strategy are the methods used to produce the desirable outcome for the marine resources. Activities included under other action plans will compliment these efforts.

MRCM Objectives:

- **Threatened and Endangered Species, and Regional Species of Concern**: Protect and recover T&E species and species of concern as identified by the Guam and CNMI governments that are found in the Monument, and the habitats they depend on.
- **Marine Mammals:** Assess and protect the marine mammal species that occur within the Monument, and the habitats they depend on.
- **Fisheries:** Manage the fisheries resources to maintain healthy populations, while providing access for subsistence, recreational, and traditional indigenous fishing for the residents of the Mariana Archipelago.
- **Habitats:** Preserve or restore the natural ecosystems within the Monument.
- **Migratory Birds:** Assess and protect the bird species that are found in the Monument, and protect the habitats and resources they depend on.

MRCM Strategy 1: Coordinate and promote Monument-related non-commercial fishing and scientific research. The Proclamation directs Monument managers to establish a program for assessing and promoting monument-related non-commercial fishing and scientific research. This strategy and its associated activities will ensure that fishing and research efforts can be accomplished in a sustainable manner and will contribute to the protection and understanding of the Monument's unique ecosystems.

MRCM Activity 1.1: Work with partners to provide access for activities related to sustainable non-commercial fishing and exploration and research that preserves the marine resources of the Monument. Monument managers will assist with the coordination of fishing and research permits, and maintain up-to-date BMPs using information from across all NOAA and USFWS programs to ensure fishing and research permits reflect current standards for the conservation of Monument resources.

MRCM Activity 1.2: Work with partners and the scientific and local communities to monitor and assess the impacts from authorized Monument activities. Monument managers will track the locations and activities authorized in the Monument through databases and logbooks. Data collected will be cross-referenced with marine resource conservation research results to ensure that activities and regulations are consistent with conservation needs. Monument managers and partners will work to identify and implement possible alternatives for reducing impacts from the authorized activities and will be guided by the precautionary approach "*first, do no harm*."

MRCM Activity 1.3: Review the data and records from authorized fishing activities in the Monument and assess compliance with marine resource conservation needs. **M**onument managers will track authorized fishery landings from fishing trips conducted in the Monument. This data will be analyzed to ensure that activities and regulations are applicable and consistent with Proclamation directives.

MRCM Strategy 2: Assess the status of endangered species, fisheries, habitats, and geologic features of the Monument based on results from authorized research cruises and permitted scientific exploration. Past research efforts have underscored the need for continued assessments of the marine resources in the Mariana Archipelago, as they have typically only partially recorded the number of protected species (turtles or cetaceans), fisheries, habitat types and features believed to

occur in the Archipelago. Monument managers will assist with and permit further research, inventories, and monitoring activities to gain a greater understanding of the marine resources in the Monument.

MRCM Activity 2.1: Work with partners to conduct population studies for marine mammals and T&E species, and species of concern identified by CNMI and Guam. Accurate and current population estimates of marine mammals, protected species, and species of concern are required to determine the best courses of action in helping to sustain healthy populations or help those species recover. Assessment efforts of marine mammals and protected species populations, their abundance and distribution, will be continued in order to determine which species are most at risk and to adjust management priorities as needed.

MRCM Activity 2.2: Work with partners to continue the assessments of coral reef communities and other benthic habitats in the Monument. Monument managers will work with scientists to develop a better understanding of coral reef communities, benthic habitats, and features in the Monument. This process will include the documentation of temporal and spatial variability of species in coral reef ecosystems and other habitat types. Ecosystems like those found in the Monument, which have not been heavily impacted by fishing and other human activities, serve as excellent models of a healthy ecosystem and what newly designated protected areas may want to emulate or work towards.

MRCM Activity 2.3: Identify management options to maintain ecological integrity for species and systems considered vulnerable to climate change. Monument managers recognize that climate change may impact the biological diversity, abundance, and distribution of the Monument's living marine resources. It is not reasonable to attempt to maintain static conditions in a changing environment. Instead, we will adopt an approach of maintaining ecological integrity, defined as "*the ability of an ecological system to support and maintain a community of organisms that has a species composition, diversity, and functional organization comparable to those of natural habitats within a region*."[4] This means conservation strategies should maintain the "wholeness" of an ecosystem, while taking into account future changes.

MRCM Strategy 3: Identify threats to endangered species, fisheries, habitats, and geologic features found in the Monument. Effective management of the marine resources in the Monument will require a greater knowledge of potential threats. By providing access to the Monument, the threat from fishing-related damage, groundings, oil spills, and marine debris will increase. These threats, as well as others, will have to be identified for the management team to develop new BMPs to mitigate their impacts.

MRCM Activity 3.1: Identify key species or functional groups on which to focus management efforts. Although a list of conservation targets has been identified (*p. 132*), certain species or functional groups within a community are at greater ecological risk because of such things as late maturation or lower fecundity. Monument managers will work with our partners to identify which species or functional groups are at greatest risk and therefore require more directed management effort to ensure their health and the health of the ecosystem.

MRCM Activity 3.2: Work with partners to develop long-term monitoring projects to determine how natural and anthropogenic events outside of the Monument impact the resources over time. Monument managers will work with the scientific community to conduct long-term monitoring of Monument ecosystems to determine how natural and anthropogenic events outside of the Monument impact resources inside the Monument, and to identify species that have greatest resilience or vulnerability to these disturbances.

MRCM Strategy 4: Identify measures to minimize threats to the Monument resources. Monument managers will research threat reduction measures that sustain healthy ecosystems and processes that enhance the prospects for natural recuperation and replenishment in ways that are appropriate for the context and conditions of the local environment. Measures may include restricting human access to sensitive areas and enforcing more stringent biosecurity protocols. Proposed Best Management Practices (BMPs) are provided in Appendix E.

MRCM Activity 4.1: Implement and refine BMPs to protect endangered and threatened marine species, habitats, and geologic features. Protected species are at risk from many man-made and environmental threats. Monument managers will research threats impacting Monument species, and determine the most effective mitigation strategies. Actions will be developed in order to provide immediate help to the most vulnerable species, while steps will be taken to address long-term protection of these populations.

MRCM Activity 4.2: Investigate the feasibility and necessity of deploying remote surveillance technologies to aid in resource protection. If deemed necessary and feasible, Monument managers will develop a proposal to cover all aspects of acquiring these tools, from acquisition to deployment and monitoring costs. A dual benefit technology that may be feasible is the possible modification of Ecosystem Acoustic Recorders (EARs) currently used by NOAA PIFSC to monitor real-time vessel and animal activities.

MRCM Activity 4.3: Facilitate efforts to reduce and minimize fishery bycatch and incidental mortality in the Islands Unit. Monument managers will research new fisheries gear technology and/or methods that minimize the bycatch and mortalities of seabirds, turtles, cetaceans and other marine resources. Managers will assist in the documentation and analysis on the level of interactions of these species with fishing gear to establish the extent of the bycatch threat, and to determine measures that will minimize fishing gear interactions.

MRCM Strategy 5: Work with the MTMAC to include traditional knowledge into the management of the Monument. Traditional ecological knowledge is gained by centuries of first-hand observation and experience and can augment western scientific data.

MRCM Activity 5.1: Solicit advice from SHPO and cultural groups on traditional knowledge pertaining management of marine resources. Monument managers will work with the MTMAC to engage the SHPO and local community for their input and involvement in marine resource conservation in order to include traditional knowledge in the decision-making process and on-going management.

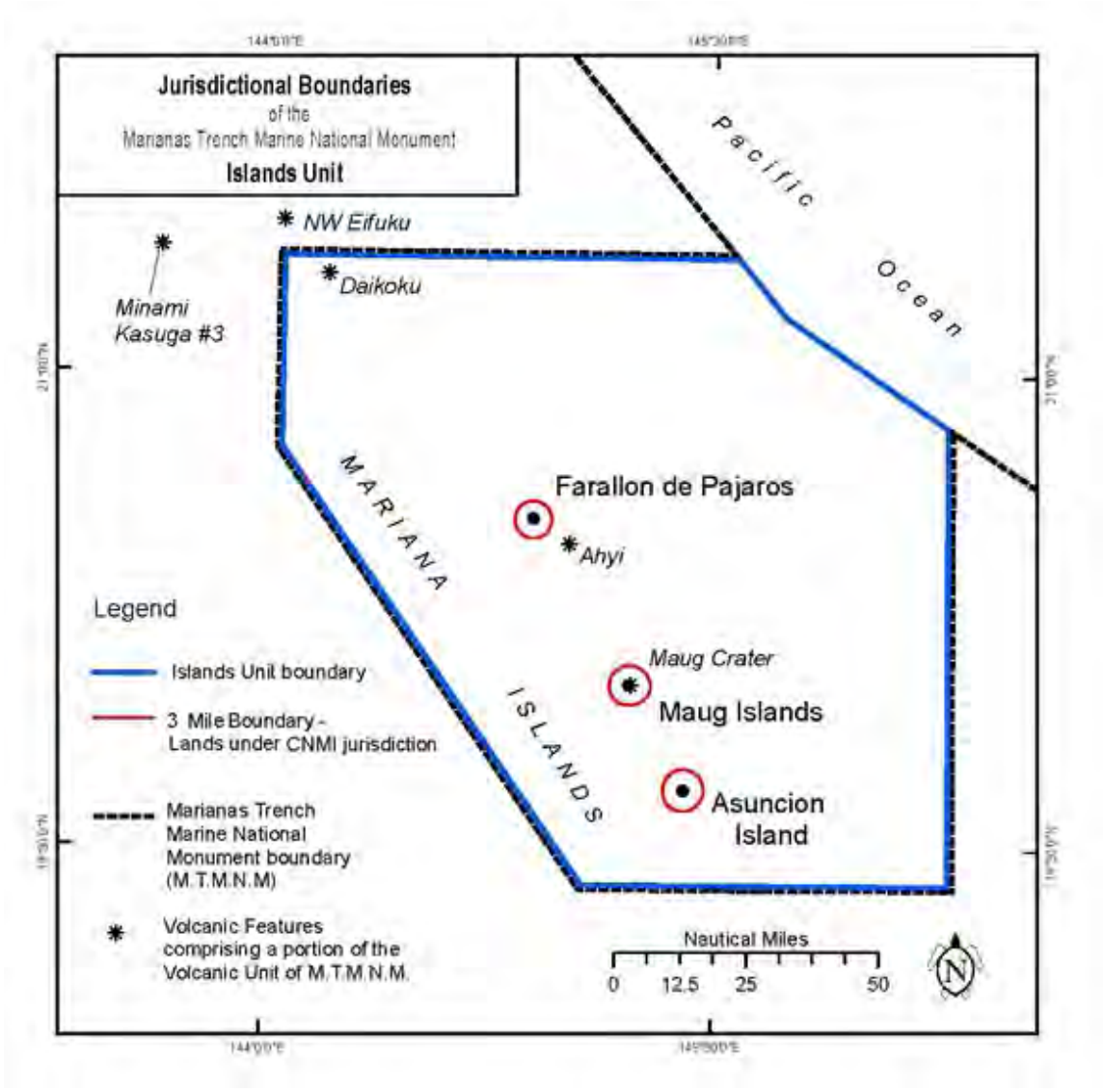
Table 2.3 MRCM Action Plan Strategies and Activities

	Project Title	Alt 1	Alt 2	Alt 3
MRCM Strategy 1	Coordinate and promote Monument-related non-commercial fishing and scientific research.			
MRCM Activity 1.1	Work with partners to provide access for activities related to sustainable non-commercial fishing and exploration and research that preserves the marine resources of the Monument.	✓	Short-term	(1)
MRCM Activity 1.2	Work with partners and the scientific and local communities to monitor and assess the impacts from authorized Monument activities.		Short-term	(1)
MRC Activity 1.3	Review the data and records from authorized fishing activities in the Monument and assess compliance with marine resource conservation needs.		Short-term	(1)
MRCM Strategy 2	Assess the status of endangered species, fisheries, habitats, and geologic features of the Monument.			
MRCM Activity 2.1	Work with partners to conduct population studies for marine mammals and T&E species, and CNMI species of concern.	✓	Short-term	(2)
MRCM Activity 2.2	Work with partners to continue the assessments of coral reef communities and other benthic habitats in the Monument.	✓	Short-term	(1)
MRCM Activity 2.3	Identify management options to maintain ecological integrity for species and systems considered vulnerable to climate change.		Mid-term	(2)
MRCM Strategy 3	Identify threats to endangered species, fisheries, habitats, and geologic features found in the Monument.			
MRCM Activity 3.1	Identify key species or functional groups on which to focus management efforts.		Short-term	(1)
MRCM Activity 3.2	Work with partners to develop long-term monitoring projects to determine how natural and anthropogenic events outside of the Monument impact the resources over time.		Mid-term	(3)
MRCM Strategy 4	Identify measures to reduce or minimize threats to the Monument resources.			
MRCM Activity 4.1	Implement and refine BMPs to protect endangered and threatened marine species, habitats, and geologic features.		Short-term	(1)
MRCM Activity 4.2	Investigate the feasibility and necessity of deploying remote surveillance technologies to aid in resource protection.		Mid-term	(2)
MRCM Activity 4.3	Facilitate efforts to reduce and minimize fishery bycatch and incidental mortality.		Long-term	(3)
MRCM Strategy 5	Work with the MTMAC to include traditional knowledge in the management of the Monument.			
MRCM Activity 5.1	Solicit advice from SHPO and cultural groups on traditional knowledge pertaining to management of marine resources.		Short-term	(3)

2.3.3 Coordination of Management, Access, and Permitting Action Plan

Introduction

Managing a protected area as large as the Monument requires innovative approaches to protected area governance. The Monument is not only exceptionally large and deep, it is also segmented and widespread, and contains arguably the most unique and diverse features and ecosystems of any marine protected area in the world—with a conservation purpose and requirements to facilitate scientific exploration as well as traditional cultural uses. To meet this governance need, the Proclamation describes and lays out the federal management roles and responsibilities in the Monument, including provisions for consultation within the federal agencies, as well as consultation with the CNMI government. The territorial submerged lands around Maug, Farallon de Pajaros and Asuncion (also known as the NISL) are under CNMI authority, with management responsibility delegated to USFWS and NOAA. Within the Islands Unit, the Commonwealth territorial sea extends from low water line at the three northern islands, seaward 3 nmi. The federal area of the Islands Unit extends from the CNMI boundary, out seaward covering approximately 12,367 nmi^2, and includes the Daikoku and Ahyi seamounts. Both the Volcanic Unit/Marina Arc of Fire Refuge and Trench Unit/Refuge are solely under federal jurisdiction.



Need for Action

Marine Protected Area management entails various actions and management tools to meet the purposes of the designation. Direct management actions may include activities such as restoring habitats after some type of degradation or injury; manipulation of habitats to provide desired conditions for enhanced conservation benefit; endemic or native species reintroductions after overharvest or extirpation; and regulating and permitting public use of resources to ensure the uses support or comply with management conservation mandates. Management tools that are utilized to inform, support, or augment conservation management may not have a "direct" effect on Monument features or resources, but often have greater "indirect" effects and conservation benefit. For example, outreach and education programs create an informed constituency which may improve compliance with regulations and can teach the next generation about the protected resources, thus creating an informed public who is actively engaged in stewardship of their Monument. Scientific exploration, research, inventories, and monitoring provide necessary science to track the status, condition, and trends of resources and processes while also informing sound management decisions and protection. Administration and maintenance are necessary to pay the bills, and keep equipment running and operational.

The direct management actions and indirect management tools are also opportunities for the agencies to coordinate between their respective jurisdictions. This Coordination of Management, Access, and Permitting (CMAP) Action Plan lays out activities and strategies to develop this coordination of management between USFWS, NOAA, and CNMI; as well as consultation with other federal agencies and non-federal partners. The CNMI is referred to as a coordinating "agency" in this CMAP action plan.

Coordination of Management

The Proclamation also calls for a coordination of management between federal and territorial governments for the areas transferred around the three northern islands. As such, we are considering "coordination of management" to mean that CNMI, NOAA, and USFWS will coordinate with each other and harmonize existing and future agency statutes, rules, regulations, and directives to create a single approach to managing this incredible water and landscape. Weaving together unique agency authorities in a comprehensive, complimentary manner, coordination of management conveys a higher degree of engagement than simple consultation in accordance with the NEPA. We intend to coordinate to find efficiencies and synergies while maintaining the rights and responsibilities of each agent. The complexity of multiple governmental agencies at both federal and territorial jurisdictions necessitates a succinct process for the coordination of management and more importantly – for clear channels for the public to access for their stewardship, use, and involvement with the Monument.

The Mariana Trench Monument Advisory Council, MTMAC, is chartered through the Proclamation, to "provide advice and recommendations on the development of management plans and management of the Monument." As specified in the Proclamation, the MTMAC is currently comprised of five members: three representatives of the government of the CNMI, one representative each from the DOD and USCG. The MTMAC participated in the development of this MMP. When re-convened, the MTMAC is expected to continue advising on overall Monument management at regular intervals to best represent the local communities and serve the Monument Management Coordination Team.

Clearinghouse

The American public expects its government to be user-friendly, efficient, and cost-effective. The Monument will be managed to meet these expectations. In establishing the Monument, the President

assigned management responsibilities to the Departments of the Interior and Commerce (delegated to the USFWS and NOAA, respectively). With the transfer of its territorial waters, CNMI has a lead role in management within 3 nmi of Maug, Asuncion, and Farallon de Pajaros. The CNMI Government may assume full or partial management responsibility for these waters in accordance with the MOA for Coordination of the Management of the Monument's Submerged Lands.[††] The land areas of these islands are wildlife sanctuaries managed by the CNMI DLNR.

For those who would like to visit the Monument, the USFWS will serve as the clearinghouse for information and lead a coordinated review process with NOAA and CNMI. The primary public interface of the Monument will be a single website managed by the USFWS. In addition to providing greatest clarity to the public, a single point of contact for the Monument is the most cost-effective approach. Although permitting is the emphasis of this action plan, information requests may also include inquiries from elected officials, the media, students, etc.

Joint Permitting

It is the goal of the three agencies to issue a single Joint Monument Permit (JMP) to cover all aspects of the requested activity (e.g., access, sustenance fishing, and the primary activity), even though technically multiple agencies may have unique authorities that apply to the requested activity. The clearinghouse website will contain a JMP application that will cover the needs of all three agencies. This one-step process with agency processes occurring seamlessly behind-the-scenes is the most user-friendly. However, it should be noted that other Trust Resource consultations may be required under other Federal and/or CNMI law, such as the Endangered Species Act of 1973, Marine Mammal Protection Act, or Migratory Bird Treaty Act of 1918.

Once received, requests for permits or other information will be automatically shared by the USFWS with NOAA and CNMI. Depending on the nature of the request, the appropriate agency will lead the review and processing of the proposed activity on behalf of all three agencies. This will provide requesters with a single point of contact throughout the process, with all inter-agency work handled internally by the lead agency. It should be noted that it is likely that permit requests will touch upon the respective responsibilities of two or all three of the agencies. USFWS will permit activities in the Trench Unit/Refuge and Volcanic Unit/Arc of Fire Refuge with Special Use Permits (SUP). NOAA Fisheries will issue Monument fishing permits. CNMI will authorize access to Maug, Farallon de Pajaros, and Asuncion islands. Regulations for non-fishing activities in the Islands Unit are in development. All approved activities will be included in the proposed JMP issued to the applicant.

The USFWS, NOAA, and CNMI propose to use a modified version of its already approved NWRS SUP. It will include the NOAA and CNMI logos and "Marianas Trench Marine National Monument." It will include questions pertaining to whether any non-commercial fishing activity is proposed; specific questions about where the activity is proposed (e.g., in CNMI waters); and contain all required stipulations, conditions, and BMPs. The form will also include appropriate approvals and signature lines for each agency.

Monument managers will develop BMPs for biosecurity control measures, which will be issued with each perspective permit, whether for fishing, research, or for traditional cultural purposes. The prospective Monument visitor will be expected to comply with the BMPs to minimize the risk of

[††] Upon assuming such management responsibilities, the CNMI Government agrees to manage the Northern Islands Submerged Lands in accordance with the MOA for Coordination of the Management of the Monument's Submerged Lands; consistent with the purposes and requirements of Proclamations 8335 and 9077, the Commonwealth Constitution, other applicable laws, and provisions of the Patent.

invasive species introductions. The recommended BMPs identified in Appendix E will be stipulated in each permit until replaced with updated BMPs.

In recent times there has been an increased emphasis on user fees. That is, that those who use government services or benefit from taxpayer assets should contribute more toward the upkeep and provision of those services. NOAA is authorized under the MSFCA to collect a fee to cover the administrative costs incurred in issuing fishing permits. Additionally, the USFWS is charged with recovering the costs of administering permits. Therefore, a permit fee schedule will be negotiated by the MMCT members concurrent with the development of the JMP.

Activities that Don't Require Permits
Innocent passage is permitted under the Proclamation, and so no permit or fee is required for innocent passage through any portion of the Monument. Innocent passage does not include stopping or the use of any gear (e.g., fishing, scuba diving, in-water scientific or sampling instruments, out-of-water scientific or sampling instruments such as LiDAR, etc.).

Per the Proclamation, no permit is required for response to emergencies, or conducting national security or law enforcement activities. This includes DOD and USCG activities to fulfill their respective agency missions; activities; and responses being led or coordinated by the USCG acting on its own authorities or as part of a larger Unified Command (for multi-agency response) structure. Similarly, the proclamation does not restrict scientific exploration or research activities by or for the USFWS or NOAA, and so permits are not required for these activities. As part of a proposed Memorandum of Understanding (MOU), permits would not be required for collecting film footage for educational purposes by or for the USFWS, NOAA, or CNMI government, and the agencies will comply with all applicable laws and mandates (i.e., ESA, MSA, etc.) and with the best management practices contained within this management plan.

CMAP OBJECTIVE: Provide coordination of management between jurisdictions to emphasize good government ethos: management will be efficient, cost-effective, and user-friendly.

CMAP Strategy 1: Establish a Monument Management Coordination Team to facilitate coordinated management of the Monument within one year of MMP publication.
Coordination of management is prescribed in the Proclamation, in particular for the Islands Unit. USFWS and NOAA are required to consult with each other in their respective management responsibilities. The agencies will create a Monument Management Coordination Team (MMCT) of USFWS, NOAA, and CNMI Monument managers that will meet on a fixed schedule to promote communication and coordination between the agencies. The meetings are for inter-governmental discussions and are not intended to be public meetings.

> **CMAP Activity 1.1: Prepare and sign a Memorandum of Understanding (MOU) that identifies agreed upon management roles and responsibilities shared between USFWS, NOAA, and CNMI.** Within 6-months of completing the final MMP, the agencies will craft a MOU that identifies their respective roles as provided in the Proclamation, the management role of the CNMI following the transfer of its territorial waters in the Islands Unit, a communication process and protocol for responding to access requests, and coordination with the MTMAC.

CMAP Activity 1.2: Prepare an annual "State of the Monument" report. By March of each year, the MMCT will prepare a concise report that summarizes the past calendar year's major accomplishments and challenges. This report will be used to keep senior agency personnel, elected officials, and the general public informed about the status of the Monument.

CMAP Activity 1.3: Within one year of MMP publication, assess and determine format and frequency of MTMAC meetings with the MMCT. The MMCT will establish the frequency of routine meetings with the MTMAC and consider whether to recommend additional members to the MTMAC who represent other federal agencies and/or territorial governments.

CMAP Strategy 2: Consolidate all Monument permits into a single Joint Monument Permit and a single Monument permit application within one year of MMP publication. For all Monument-specific activities that require a permit, the public will only fill out a single application and will receive a complete JMP package that covers all the proposed activities.

CMAP Activity 2.1: In consultation with NOAA and CNMI, USFWS will modify the existing approved SUP to serve as the JMP. The agencies will set a fee schedule for the JMP as allowed by their respective authorities.

CMAP Strategy 3: Develop a single public portal (website) to eliminate duplication of effort within one year of MMP publication. In consultation with NOAA and CNMI, USFWS will develop a Monument website and "How to Contact Us" information as the public interface that equally represents NOAA and the CNMI.

CMAP Activity 3.1: Work with USFWS Visitor Services to modify existing website to include NOAA & CNMI logos. The website link will be added to the NOAA and CNMI websites so all prospective Monument visitors are directed to the same JMP application.

Table 2.4 CMAP Action Plan Strategies and Activities

	Project Title	Alt 1	Alt 2	Alt 3
CMAP Strategy 1	Establish a Monument Management Coordination Team to facilitate coordinated management of the Monument within one year of MMP publication.			
CMAP Activity 1.1	Prepare and sign a MOU for management roles and responsibilities shared between USFWS, NOAA, and CNMI.		Short-term	(1)
CMAP Activity 1.2	Annually, prepare a brief "State of the Monument" report on the status of the Monument and implementation of the MMP.		Short-term	(2)
CMAP Activity 1.3	Assess and determine format and frequency of MTMAC meetings with the MMCT.		Short-term	(3)
CMAP Strategy 2	Develop a joint Monument permit and a single permit application for all Monument activities that require a permit within one year of MMP publication.			
CMAP Activity 2.1	In consultation with NOAA and CNMI, USFWS will modify the existing approved SUP to serve as the JMP.		Short-term	(1)
CMAP Strategy 3	Develop a single public portal (website) to eliminate duplication of effort within one year of MMP publication.			
CMAP Activity 3.1	Work with USFWS Visitor Services to modify existing website to include NOAA & CNMI logos.		Short-term	(1)

2.3.4 Sustainable Non-commercial Fishing Action Plan

Introduction

Fishing plays an important role in the daily lives of Pacific Islanders for sustenance, commerce, recreation, and cultural purposes. The Proclamation acknowledges the important connection between Pacific Island fishers and the Islands Unit of the Monument. It states that Monument management plans shall provide for "*traditional access by indigenous persons*" and that subsistence, recreational, and traditional fishing shall be managed as a sustainable activity, but that commercial fishing is prohibited within the Islands Unit of the Monument. In addition to fish, collection or harvest of crustaceans (e.g. crabs, lobsters, shrimp) or molluscs (e.g. snails, octopus, clams) is also considered "fishing."

Sustainable fishing is defined as "*fishing activities that do not cause or lead to undesirable changes in the biological and economic productivity, biological diversity, or ecosystem structure and functioning from one human generation to the next*."[5] By limiting fishing activities strictly to non-commercial ventures and by granting fishing permits only to the residents and businesses of the CNMI and Guam, fishing activities within the Islands Unit will not cause undesirable changes to Monument ecosystems. The difficulty in reaching such remote fishing locations, and the cost-prohibitive nature of traveling to the Islands Unit, considered with the infrequent amount of non-commercial fishing travel that has occurred in the recent past, indicates that non-commercial fishing within the Monument will be a sustainable activity for generations to come.

Subsistence fishing has many definitions. One provided by the Western Pacific Fishery Management Council (WPFMC) is "*fishing to obtain food for personal and/or community use rather than for profit sales or recreation*."[6] Schumann and Macinko provide another definition: "*subsistence activities are those actions that contribute to the continued functioning of various essentially non-material aspects of everyday life*" and also includes the cultural values that contribute to a way of life.[7] Although "tradition" and "traditional" are words used to describe practices rooted in the past, these practices may undergo modifications over time, and do not exactly mirror the past in terms of contemporary materials or methods. This is the nature of culture and its associated traditions as an evolving aspect of society. "Traditional" activities in the Monument might be enabled by contemporary fishing gear, however, the way the gear is used often relates to fishing practices that were developed by a community over the course of centuries spent interacting with a particular environment.

Bigeye tuna in the waters of the Monument. Photo: NOAA

Parameters for subsistence, recreational, and traditional fishing activities within the Monument were developed by the WPFMC. The WPFMC has authority over fisheries in the Pacific Ocean EEZ for Hawai‘i, American Samoa, Guam, and CNMI, in accordance with the MSA, hence their role in regulatory development. The WPFMC adopted an ecosystem approach in developing the Mariana Archipelago Fishery Ecosystem Plan (FEP) to manage fishery resources around the CNMI and Guam. Ecosystem management recognizes the interconnectivity of organisms within an ecosystem, including the link between ecosystems and humans.

When implemented effectively, this form of management maintains or improves the overall health of the ecosystem rather than individual elements within it, and contributes to a resilient, diverse, and abundant marine environment.

The regulatory development process for the Monument began in 2009. In 2010, the WPFMC held public meetings on Saipan, Rota, and Tinian to develop the sustainable non-commercial fishing management measures described in the Proclamation. Amendment 3 to the Mariana Archipelago FEP was finalized in 2013, and published in the Federal Register, 50 CFR Part 665, which defines management measures for sustainable non-commercial fishing in the Islands Unit.

Need for Action

The need for a sustainable non-commercial fishing action plan is to protect marine resources while facilitating continued connections between the people of the Mariana Archipelago and the Monument. In the CNMI and Guam, fishermen have long been held in high esteem in their communities, and their catch frequently plays an important role in ceremonies and cultural festivities. The practice of sharing one's catch with family and friends is common throughout the Pacific; it maintains connections among family members and across the larger community, and links present day activities to deeply rooted cultural values. One member of the Mariana fishing community explains that visits to the waters around Maug, Asuncion, and Farallon de Pajaros, along with the fishing legacies that keep these places alive in the minds of people today "*makes you feel like you are actually an islander*."

Fishing traditions associated with the Monument are summarized in a PISFC report: *Traditional Fishing Patterns in the Marianas Trench Marine National Monument*. Trips to the waters in the Islands Unit are not profit-making ventures according to oral history interviews with fishermen and others living in the Mariana Archipelago. Instead, fishers go to the waters around Maug, Asuncion, and Farallon de Pajaros to maintain the cultural tradition of fish sharing among the fishing crew, among the crew's families and friends, and among community members. The waters around the northern islands are considered to be abundant with resources, indicative of island life, and free. Fishers feel intimately connected with generations of ancestors who also fished in these waters, shared their catch, and consumed the fish at important religious and ceremonial events. It is also clear from PIFSC's findings that most activities in the Islands Unit involve fishing. Even if fishing is the not the primary purpose for going (in the case of a research trip for example) fishing occurs on almost every trip for food consumption while out at sea.

Fishing Permit Process

A fishing permit is required to fish in the Islands Unit; when the Joint Monument Permit process is in place, BMPs will be included with the JMP. Until then, a fishing permit may be obtained through NMFS.

To apply for a fishing permit, applicants go online to www.fisheries.noaa.gov/permit/marine-national-monument-fishing-permit and follow the instructions under "How to Apply." After NMFS approves the permit, the permit and a logbook will be mailed to the applicant. A Compliance Guide for Fishing in the Marianas Trench, Pacific Remote Islands, and Rose Atoll Marine National Monuments is available for download at: www.fisheries.noaa.gov/pacific-islands/resources-fishing/regulation-summaries-and-compliance-guides-pacific-islands.

SNF Objective: Manage fisheries resources to maintain healthy populations, while permitting sustainable non-commercial fishing (identified as recreational, subsistence, or traditional indigenous fishing) in the Islands Unit.

SNF Strategy 1: Improve information about fisheries stocks status within the Monument. It is important for Monument managers to have baseline information on fisheries stocks because to date, little is known about the amount of fish that exist in the Islands Unit where people will be conducting sustainable non-commercial fishing. This baseline data will also be useful for other areas of resource management including research and exploration; climate change data; and the creation of education and outreach materials.

> **SNF Activity 1.1: Acquire baseline data about fishery populations.** Monument managers will partner with the PIFSC to conduct research and determine baseline data about fishery populations that inhabit the submerged lands and water column.

SNF Strategy 2: Assess fisheries landings from the Islands Unit to ensure sustainable harvests and maintain effective regulations on an annual basis. 50 CFR Part 665.14 explains that the vessel owner of fishing vessels engaged in sustainable non-commercial fishing in the Islands Unit of the Monument are required to keep a logbook with a complete record of catch, effort, and other data on paper report forms and that the logbook must be submitted to the Regional Administrator within 30 days of the end of each fishing trip.

> **SNF Activity 2.1: Track the landings and species from submitted logbooks to better inform management decision-making.** Data on all fish species and fish quantities caught in the Islands Unit of the Monument will be entered into a spreadsheet to track fishing patterns over time. Monument managers will review the logbooks and enter fisheries data into the spreadsheet on an annual basis.

SNF Strategy 3: Identify threats to fisheries resources and develop management actions in the Islands Unit to ensure sustainable, healthy fish stocks (coral reef, bottom fish, and pelagic species) are maintained. The purpose for gathering fisheries baseline data in the Islands Unit and for monitoring the catch data submitted by vessel owners is to determine if any fisheries resources are at risk from non-fishing related issues (such as climate change) or at risk from overfishing. This information will assist resource managers in developing management actions that will maintain or improve the status of fisheries resources.

> **SNF Activity 3.1: Analyze fisheries data to guide management actions for sustainable fishery stocks.** Data gathered in SNCF Activities 1.1 and 2.1 will be analyzed to extrapolate trends in fisheries resources, identify any associated threats to the maintenance of fisheries populations, and assess the resilience of fisheries stocks in the Monument. Monument managers will work with researchers to accomplish a comprehensive data analysis.

SNF Strategy 4: Provide the residents of CNMI and Guam with easy access to permit applications, record forms, log books, and other Federal fisheries information. Currently, information related to fishing within the Monument can be found online. The PIRO Sustainable Fisheries Division (SFD) Website is an essential resource for fishers wishing to conduct sustainable non-commercial fishing in the Monument.

SNF Activity 4.1: Incorporate the sustainable non-commercial fishing permit application into the new JMP application. All proposed Monument activities will be covered under a single application within one year of MMP publication.

SNF Activity 4.2: Establish locations in the CNMI and Guam where fishers can go to find JMP applications and Monument-related fishing information. The MMCT will identify locations where permit applications and other fisheries information can be obtained, in addition to online access. Monument managers will partner with government agencies in the CNMI and Guam have Monument fishing information available at their offices.

Table 2.5 SNF Action Plan Strategies and Activities

	Project Title	Alt 1	Alt 2	Alt 3
SNF Strategy 1	Improve information about fisheries stocks status within the Monument.			
SNF Activity 1.1	Acquire baseline data about fishery populations.	✓	Short-term	(2)
SNF Strategy 2	Assess Federal fisheries landings from the Islands Unit to ensure sustainable harvests and maintain effective regulations on an annual basis.			
SNF Activity 2.1	Track the landings and species from submitted logbooks to better inform management decision-making.		Short-term	(4)
SNF Strategy 3	Identify threats to fisheries resources and develop management actions in the Islands Unit to ensure sustainable, healthy fish stocks are maintained.			
SNF Activity 3.1	Analyze fisheries data to guide management actions for sustainable fishery stocks.		Mid-term	(4)
SNF Strategy 4	Provide the residents of CNMI and Guam with easy access to permit applications, record forms, log books, and other Federal fisheries information.			
SNF Activity 4.1	Incorporate the sustainable non-commercial fishing permit application into the new JMP permit application.		Short-term	(1)
SNF Activity 4.2	Establish locations in the CNMI and Guam where fishers can find JMP applications and Monument-related fishing information.		Mid-term	(3)

Tony Flores shows the impressive size of this eight-banded grouper. Tony uses tape on his index fingers to prevent the thin, strong braided line from cutting into his hand when the big fish bite and pull unexpectedly. Photo: NOAA

USCG Cutter Assateague. Photo: USCG

2.3.5 Surveillance and Enforcement Action Plan

Introduction

Education and outreach is the primary method to achieve compliance with regulations, however, surveillance and law enforcement are needed to ensure protection of Monument resources. The NOAA Office of Law Enforcement (OLE), USFWS OLE, and CNMI Law Enforcement (LE) personnel work in collaboration with the USCG to ensure compliance with applicable laws in Monument waters. Satellite imagery and vessel monitoring systems (VMS) are used to monitor US EEZs in the Pacific for violations of US fisheries; illegal, unreported, and unregulated fishing; living marine resources; T&E species: and marine mammal regulations.

All large-scale U.S. vessels fishing in the EEZ must install a VMS device that transmits the vessel's movement and global position coordinates to a monitoring center via secure satellite communication channels. Travel patterns are tracked by the NOAA OLE Pacific Division. This real-time data is received and jointly monitored by the USGC. This information is also available to U.S. vessel owners in the Mariana Islands to encourage voluntary compliance with fishing regulations. Vessel owners can see near real-time positional data for their vessels in relation to the boundaries of the Monument and fishery closure areas using a secure internet connection through Google Earth™ mapping software, modified to include VMS data.

Need for Action

The USCG is the principle agency with aircraft and vessels capable patrolling the Monument and responding to violations of federal maritime laws. With the USCG assets based in Guam, the response time to reach Monument waters is greatly extended. The logistical constraints associated with reaching the most remote areas of the Monument was one of the issues which prompted the DOD to enter into a MOU that allows NOAA and USCG law enforcement boarding teams to travel on US Navy ships. This enhances the teams' ability to make direct contact with vessels conducting unauthorized activities in these remote waters. Maximizing the OLE's regional surveillance capabilities would provide the most efficient and feasible methods to monitor and enforce the laws within the Monument.

The first step toward regulation compliance requires that the general public have access to accurate Monument boundary information. Existing resources used by vessel owners and vessel captains must be updated to include information about the Monument in order to achieve increased compliance with regulations. This will allow vessel owners to self-regulate their activities and voluntarily avoid violating protected marine areas. The Monument boundaries are shown in U.S. Coast Pilot®10 [‡‡] and Electronic Navigation Charts (ENCs).[§§] Both chart systems require a certain level of technology in order to be accessed. To expand the user base and deter unintended illegal activities within the Monument, other widely available navigational formats should be identified and Monument boundaries verified.

SAE Objective: Ensure compliance with environmental laws and regulations for the protection of marine resources within the Monument.

SAE Strategy 1: Incorporate Monument information and regulations to existing interagency agreements and integrate Monument-specific protections into mapping tools. The Monument will be integrated into existing interagency agreements so that all agencies are clear on their roles and responsibilities. Additional interagency agreements may become necessary in order to adequately regulate Monument activity.

> **SAE Activity 1.1: Integrate the Monument into interagency agreements and evaluate the necessity for additional interagency agreements.** Monument managers, in collaboration with OLE personnel, will review existing interagency agreements and determine the need to establish additional formal agreements between agencies to enhance the effectiveness of law enforcement in the Monument.
>
> **SAE Activity 1.2: Ensure that Monument boundaries are accurately depicted on official nautical charts and investigate the availability of additional formats.** The Monument boundaries and regulatory information will be verified when official ENCs and U.S. Coast Pilot®10 nautical guides are updated. We will explore the feasibility of modifying other navigational tools to include Monument boundaries.

SAE Strategy 2: Analyze vessel traffic data to assess the need for additional surveillance within the Monument. Existing data about vessel traffic in the region will be analyzed in order to anticipate travel patterns and identify unauthorized activity. The cost and benefits of a data analysis will be shared across multiple aspects of Monument management.

> **SAE Activity 2.1: Conduct a ship travel assessment to inform compliance and enforcement needs in Monument waters.** U.S. and foreign ship travel assessments are needed to determine the location of origin, frequency, purpose and type of vessels that travel to the Monument. A vessel traffic analysis will aid enforcement agencies in prioritizing enforcement needs, utilizing resources, and locating areas where increased monitoring could curb illegal activity in the Monument.

[‡‡] https://nauticalcharts.noaa.gov/publications/coast-pilot/index.html
[§§] https://www.nauticalcharts.noaa.gov/charts/noaa-enc.html

SAE Activity 2.2: Assess effectiveness of Google Earth™ VMS data sharing
Real-time location information is provided to U.S. vessel owners to encourage voluntary compliance with fishing regulations. This Google Earth™ initiative will be evaluated to determine if it helped reduce violations and if the tool's current format for describing prohibited areas and other regulations is useful and clear. The data will inform future enforcement operations and will aid in determining if improvements are needed to enhance the surveillance and monitoring of U.S. vessel activity.

SAE Strategy 3: Consider suitable programs, tools, and technologies to augment effective law enforcement. Monument managers seek to find common ground among agencies, communities, and industries, to foster a sense of stewardship toward Monument ecosystems. A variety of advanced technologies are available to augment the USCG air, ship, and OLE VMS operations in a wide range of costs, and could be managed cooperatively between partnering agencies.

SAE Activity 3.1: Investigate the feasibility and necessity of deploying remote surveillance technologies to aid in resource protection. This activity applies to both the SAE and MRCM action plans. Monument managers and law enforcement partners will identify possible technologies and identify whether or not the acquisition of remote technologies is necessary. A dual benefit technology that may be feasible is the possible modification of EARs currently used by PIFSC to monitor real-time vessel and animal activities.

Table 2.6 SAE Action Plan Strategies and Activities

	Project Title	Alt 1	Alt 2	Alt 3
SAE Strategy 1	Incorporate Monument information and regulations to existing interagency agreements and integrate Monument-specific protections into existing boundary and mapping tools.			
SAE Activity1.1	Integrate the Monument into existing interagency agreements and evaluate the necessity for additional interagency agreements.	✓	Short-term	(1)
SAE Activity1.2	Ensure that Monument boundaries are verified in updates of official NOAA nautical charts and U.S. Coast Pilot® 10.	✓	Short-term	(1)
SAE Strategy 2	Analyze vessel traffic data to assess the need for additional surveillance within the Monument			
SAE Activity2.1	Conduct a ship travel assessment to inform compliance and enforcement needs in Monument waters.		Short-term	(4)
SAE Activity2.2	Assess effectiveness of Google Earth™ VMS data sharing.		Mid-term	(4)
SAE Strategy 3	Consider suitable programs, tools, and technologies to augment effective law enforcement.			
SAE Activity3.1	Investigate the feasibility and necessity of deploying remote surveillance technologies to aid in resource protection.		Long-term	(3)

2.3.6 Marine Invasive Species Control Action Plan

Introduction

An invasive species is defined as an organism that is introduced to and established in a new environment where it is not native or outside its normal range, and whose presence is likely to cause economic, human health, or environmental damage in that ecosystem.[8] A species must become established, not merely introduced, in a new location for it to be considered invasive. Common attributes of invasive species include fast growth, rapid reproduction, lack of natural predators in the new environment, high dispersal ability, and the ability to adapt to changing environmental conditions which allow them to establish in new habitats and often displace native species. To date, invasive species have caused unprecedented impacts to economic development and the health, agriculture, trade and tourism industries with an estimated global cost of about $1.4 trillion annually, which represents 5% of the economy.[9]

Governments around the world address marine invasive species in different ways. Australia is a leader in marine invasive species control. Their multi-agency programs cooperate to exclude unwanted organisms at the border and control incursions within the country via a rapid detection and eradication program. The United States is in the process of developing an assessment and regulation plan. Prompted by the military buildup on Guam, DOD lead development of the *Regional Biosecurity Plan* (RBP) for Micronesia and Hawai‘i to assess potentially invasive species that could enter new habitats through U.S. military vectors and pathways. It is a comprehensive analysis of transportation mechanisms and species movement between Guam, the CNMI, the Federated States of Micronesia, the Republic of the Marshall Islands, Palau, and Hawai‘i. The RBP notes an overall lack of marine system biosecurity regulations and capacity, resulting in a minimal likelihood of intercepting marine risks at ports of entry. Resolving the current lack of attention to marine system biosecurity across the region should be a high priority each of the individual jurisdictions to address threats from marine biological invasions.

Pathways and Vectors

Pathways are the routes by which species are transported from one location to another. Vectors are the modes by which species are transported, such as boats, planes, and livestock. Invasive species dispersal can occur via 1) natural movements, e.g. carried by fish, algae, marine mammals, and ocean and wind currents; 2) anthropogenic transfer through ship ballast water, sediments, hull fouling, marine debris; and 3) fisheries-related items and activities such as docks, grounded or abandoned vessels, yachts, kayaks, and recreational gear. Once invasive species are established in marine ecosystems, they can be nearly impossible to eliminate.[10] The most effective strategies for preventing impacts are interception or removal of the vector.

The primary pathways and vectors for invasive species introductions to the Monument are aircraft and water vessels transiting from one location to another across the Pacific and marine debris floating along currents. Helicopters and fixed-wing aircraft are used by biologists and members of military to travel in and around the Mariana Archipelago as they conduct surveys and transport equipment and supplies. Vessels, including research ships, yachts, inter-island traders and ferries, and fishing boats pass through Monument waters. These mechanisms can carry marine invasive species, inadvertently distributing organisms to other Pacific Islands and the Monument via ballast water, sediments, hull fouling, and fishing gear.

Marine biological-invasions can also be caused by changing local conditions. Across the Pacific, shipwrecks have been found to spur the growth of invasive organisms. For example, decomposition of sunken steel fishing vessels at Palmyra Atoll enriched the surrounding the seawater with iron, leading to the growth of invasive organisms. A notable example of a marine invasive species is the corallimorph *Rhodactis howseii*. Although *R.howseii* is a native species, it can take advantage of human-altered habitat and significantly change the natural habitat by aggressively outcompeting native corals with a smothering growth that leads to the phenomenon known as black reef. Black reef, if unchecked, can completely suffocate other coral species and eventually destroy the reef.

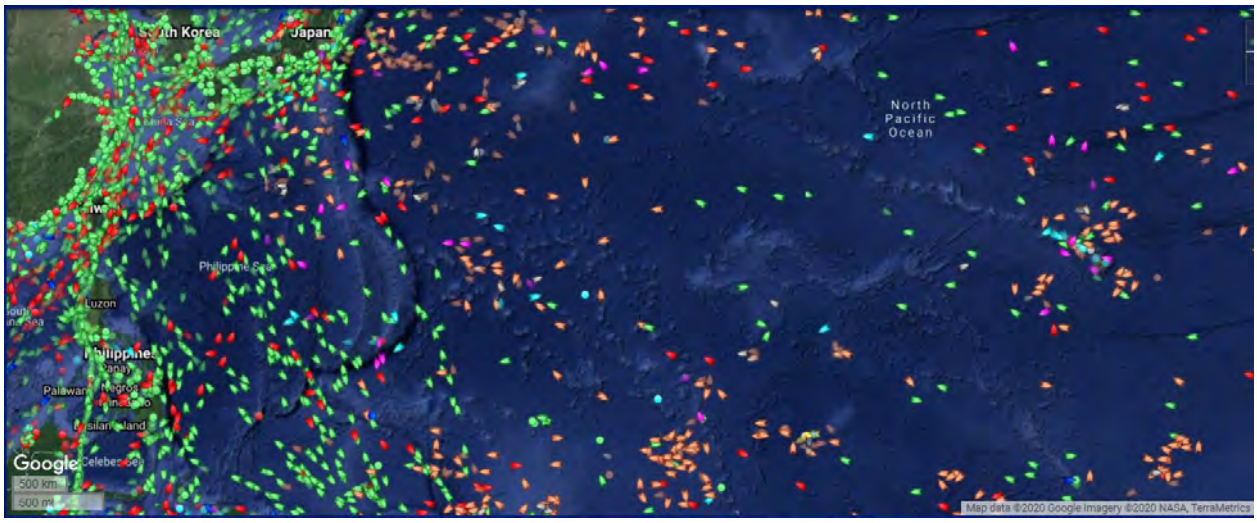
The 2011 Japan Tsunami and the 2013 Hurricane Sandy demonstrated that natural disasters also facilitate the creation and movement of marine debris with the associated potential for invasive species transfer. A Regional Preparedness and Response Workshop held in August 2012 addressed biofouling and invasive species pertaining to Japan Tsunami Marine Debris (JTMD). *Response Protocols for Biofouled Debris and Invasive Species Generated by the 2011 Japan Tsunami* were developed from the multi-agency and stakeholder discussions. The response protocols include public communication materials on the subject of JTMD, a reporting system so information across states and countries is shared, risk assessment guidelines to assist with decision making and response efforts, and management options that clarify agency jurisdictional roles and responsibilities.

Deep ocean research submersibles and remotely operated vehicles (ROV) used for research and exploration are another potential vector for invasive species in the Trench Unit/Refuge, Volcanic Unit/Arc of Fire Refuge, and Islands Unit of the Monument. One could easily assume that life forms are unable to survive the extreme pressure change from the sea surface to the ocean floor or vice versa, but in June 2012, the National Science Foundation reported otherwise. The submersible vehicle, *Alvin*, transferred *Lepetodrilus gordensis*, a type of marine snail, from a deep hydrothermal vent habitat. During a research expedition in the deep water vents of the Gorda Ridge, located off the coast of Oregon and California, 38 limpets attached themselves onto the *Alvin*. The limpets were not discovered until after another deep-sea dive into a non-limpet habitat further north in the Juan de Fuca Ridge, almost 400 miles away.[11]

Scientists concluded that the limpets survived the inadvertent transfer from one extreme environment to another. Biologist Janet Voight explains that diseases specific to biological communities at hydrothermal vents are not well studied and the implications for invasive species from vent environments are unknown. "*It is clearly possible to accidentally introduce a species – and any potential diseases it may carry— from a deep-sea vent to a new location*," says Voight,"*It reveals the potential risk of human-driven change to ecosystems, even those ecosystems most of us will never see*."[11]

Need for Action

The United Nations Conference on Trade and Development (UNCTAD) reports there were 95,402 registered commercial ships transporting about 11 billion tons of cargo across the global ocean in 2019.[12] This underscores the risk of invasive species transport from shipping related vectors, particularly via ballast water and hull fouling. Add the number of ferries, cruise vessels, military ships, yachts, pleasure craft and fishing vessels and the risk of transport escalates.



Commercial marine traffic in the Pacific, live marinetraffic.com screenshot captured 7 July, 2020. *Source: MarineTraffic*

Current data on the status of marine invasive species (MIS) in the Monument is limited to surveys conducted through the Marianas Archipelago Rapid Assessment and Monitoring Program (MARAMP). Six expeditions documented the conditions and processes influencing coral reef ecosystems at Asuncion, Farallon de Pajaros, and Maug between 2003-2017. The MARAMP observations indicate that no introduced coral, invertebrate, algae or fish species were found in the Monument. However, full assessment of the data that was gathered during the 2017 trip has not been completed. Analyzing the existing data would provide a clearer picture about any potential for MIS. Strategies to assess the presence of MIS and to assess the pathways, vectors, and prevention methods for species introductions are identified below. Results will enable managers to identify the most appropriate prevention protocols and if feasible, response and research initiatives.

MIS Objective: Prevent the establishment of invasive species by protecting the Monument from species introductions and rapidly respond in the event of a species introduction to the Monument.

MIS Strategy 1: Develop marine invasive species prevention BMPs and Biosecurity Protocols for all Monument visitors. Due to the remote location of the Monument, eradication of an introduced marine species would be extremely costly if not impossible. Thus, preventing species introduction is crucial for the maintenance of healthy monument ecosystems. BMPs and Biosecurity Protocols will provide Monument visitors with the necessary information and thorough instructions to prevent MIS introductions.

> **MIS Activity 1.1: Review existing marine invasive species prevention measures and BMPs to establish standard protocols.** MIS prevention methods and BMPs for ballast water, hull fouling, and gear sterilization are currently in use by NOAA vessels when conducting activities in all the Pacific Monuments. These and other MIS prevention protocols and BMPs, such as those used by the Papahānaumokuākea Marine National Monument, the Phoenix Islands Protected Area, and other existing BMP protocols will be examined to determine the utility and effectiveness for application in the Monument.

MIS Activity 1.2: Develop a reference guide for Monument visitors that explains BMPs developed in MIS Activity 1.1. Inform all potential Monument visitors about the BMPs and biosecurity protocols by providing them with a reference guide about maintaining a clean hull, fishing gear, and research instrument cleaning and sterilization procedures in a simple and concise manner.

MIS Strategy 2: Assess the number of vessels transiting the Monument waters, the purpose of their passage, travel patterns and primary pathways, and isolate potential vectors for species introductions. U.S. and international ship travel assessments to determine the location of origin, frequency, purpose, and type of vessels that travel to the Monument are needed to ascertain potential MIS pathways and levels of risk for introductions. Common vessel characteristics will be identified using spatial data and maps to enable analysis of common vessel corridors and temporal patterns of activity in the Pacific region.

MIS Activity 2.1: Identify vector pathways, and assess spatial and temporal water vessel and aircraft traffic patterns. Monument managers will identify potential harbors and airports of origin for water vessels and aircrafts, and analyze the pathways that approach Monument boundaries. These sites of origin and vectors will be assessed for invasive species occurrence, and then prioritized by risk based on probable vessel travel to the Monument. Possible data sources include the USCG, the International Comprehensive Ocean-Atmospheric Data Set and the WPFMC and DOD Micronesia Biosecurity Plans.

MIS Strategy 3: Assess the need for a vessel inspection process in Guam & CNMI for invasive species. Monument managers will consider the need for and logistical feasibility of establishing an inspection process. If the vessels conducting these activities are not identified as threats to Monument resources, this strategy and corresponding activity will be disregarded. Any inspection process will be tailored for effectiveness in the areas threatened by activity based on the conditions that are deemed appropriate.

MIS Activity 3.1: Review trip data and determine whether the Monument would benefit from vessel inspections for Guam & CNMI boaters. If vessels conducting Sustainable Non-commercial Fishing; Exploration and Research; or other permitted activities in the Monument are identified as MIS threats to Monument resources, Monument managers will determine whether a vessel inspection program can be implemented in CNMI and Guam.

MIS Strategy 4: Confirm the presence or absence of invasive species in the Monument. Preliminary results from the past MARAMP surveys have not identified the presence of MIS in the Monument. However, the data collected and reviewed to make this determination is a snapshot in time - the time and date of the observation cruise. Also, a review of existing reports, surveys, and relevant peer-reviewed and gray literature is needed to determine the presence or absence of MIS in other areas of the Monument. This will provide a robust baseline for long-term management, from which coral reef status and trend analyses can be implemented.

MIS Activity 4.1: Analyze the MARAMP towed-diver survey data to verify the presence or absence of invasive species and establish a baseline for marine invasive species in the Monument. Results from the PIFSC 2003–2017 MARAMP archived benthic towed-diver surveys will be analyzed in detail to confirm the absence of MIS in the Monument. In order to preserve the ecosystems, Monument managers need to know which resources are resilient;

which ones are vulnerable to MIS and/or introduced disease; and, whether or not invasive species are a problem that already exists in the Monument. A comprehensive analysis of archived, existing survey data will be conducted to inform management actions to promote resilience and assess feasible response options where possible.

MIS Activity 4.2: Develop a database that identifies marine species (including marine alga and micro-organisms) in the Monument, prioritizing known invaders in the tropical and subtropical Pacific marine environment. Monument managers will develop a database where MIS Monument data will be entered. This database will be compatible with the global invasive species database developed by The Nature Conservancy making it searchable online and widely accessible through well-known forums once complete. Monument managers will concentrate efforts on identifying any known invaders in the tropical and subtropical Pacific marine environment.

MIS Strategy 5: Develop a marine invasive species observation plan and support existing observation activities. An observation program is necessary to detect MIS introductions, assess impacts, and identify potential methods for containment and eradication in the case of species introduction. A remote surveillance program is not feasible, so Monument managers will work with the PIFSC staff to consider expanding the MARAMP surveys to include more detailed MIS surveillance and enlist the voluntary assistance of Monument visitors who can perform MIS observations.

MIS Activity 5.1: Create a marine invasive species observation program for researchers to aid in detecting potential introductions. Monument managers will collaborate with researchers who are going to the Monument, and request that they make select observations based on the type of project being executed, to supplement the MARAMP observation cruises that occur every two years. Observations made by as many trained researchers as possible will enable early detection, increasing the potential for effective containment and eradication of introduced species before they become established.

MIS Activity 5.2: Develop a response plan if a species introduction is identified. Monument managers will research and develop a possible course of action in the event an invasive marine species introduction is identified. This will entail collaborating with local and national agencies to pool resources and address the issue.

MIS Strategy 6: Continue to research initiatives across the Pacific to achieve marine invasive species prevention. New tools or methods may be required to effectively prevent the spread of invasive species. Resource managers will identify gaps in available MIS prevention and response best management practices and technologies as they arise and work with partners to conduct research and implement management actions.

MIS Activity 6.1: Maintain communication with partners and remain informed of global marine invasive species developments. Monument managers will remain in close correspondence with scientists and advocacy and community groups to participate in the prevention of MIS globally. Learned lessons from relevant Pacific initiatives will be considered for application in the Monument as part of an adaptive management approach toward MIS prevention.

Table 2.7 MIS Action Plan Strategies and Activities

	Project Title	Alt 1	Alt 2	Alt 3
MIS Strategy 1	Develop a marine invasive species prevention best management practices protocol for all Monument visitors to use.			
MIS Activity 1.1	Review existing marine invasive species prevention measures and BMPs to establish standard protocols.	✓	Short-term	(2)
MIS Activity 1.2	Develop a reference guide for Monument visitors that explains BMP developed in MIS Activity 1.1.		Short-term	(2)
MIS Strategy 2	Assess the number of vessels transiting the Monument waters, the purpose of their passage, travel patterns and primary pathways, and isolate potential vectors for species introductions.			
MIS Activity 2.1	Identify vector pathways, and assess spatial and temporal water vessel and aircraft traffic patterns.	✓	Short-term	(1)
MIS Strategy 3	Assess the need for and the feasibility of a marine invasive species inspection process.			
MIS Activity 3.1	Review trip data and determine whether the Monument would benefit from vessel inspections for Guam & CNMI boaters.		Short-term	(1)
MIS Strategy 4	Confirm the presence or absence of invasive species in the Monument.			
MIS Activity 4.1	Analyze the MARAMP towed-diver survey data to verify the presence or absence of invasive species and establish a baseline for marine invasive species in the Monument		Mid-term	(3)
MIS Activity 4.2	Develop a database that identifies marine species (including marine alga and micro-organisms) in the Monument, prioritizing known invaders in the tropical and subtropical Pacific marine environment.		Mid-term	(3)
MIS Strategy 5	Develop a marine invasive species observation plan and support existing observation activities.			
MIS Activity 5.1	Create a marine invasive species observation program for researchers to aid in detecting potential introductions.		Mid-term	(3)

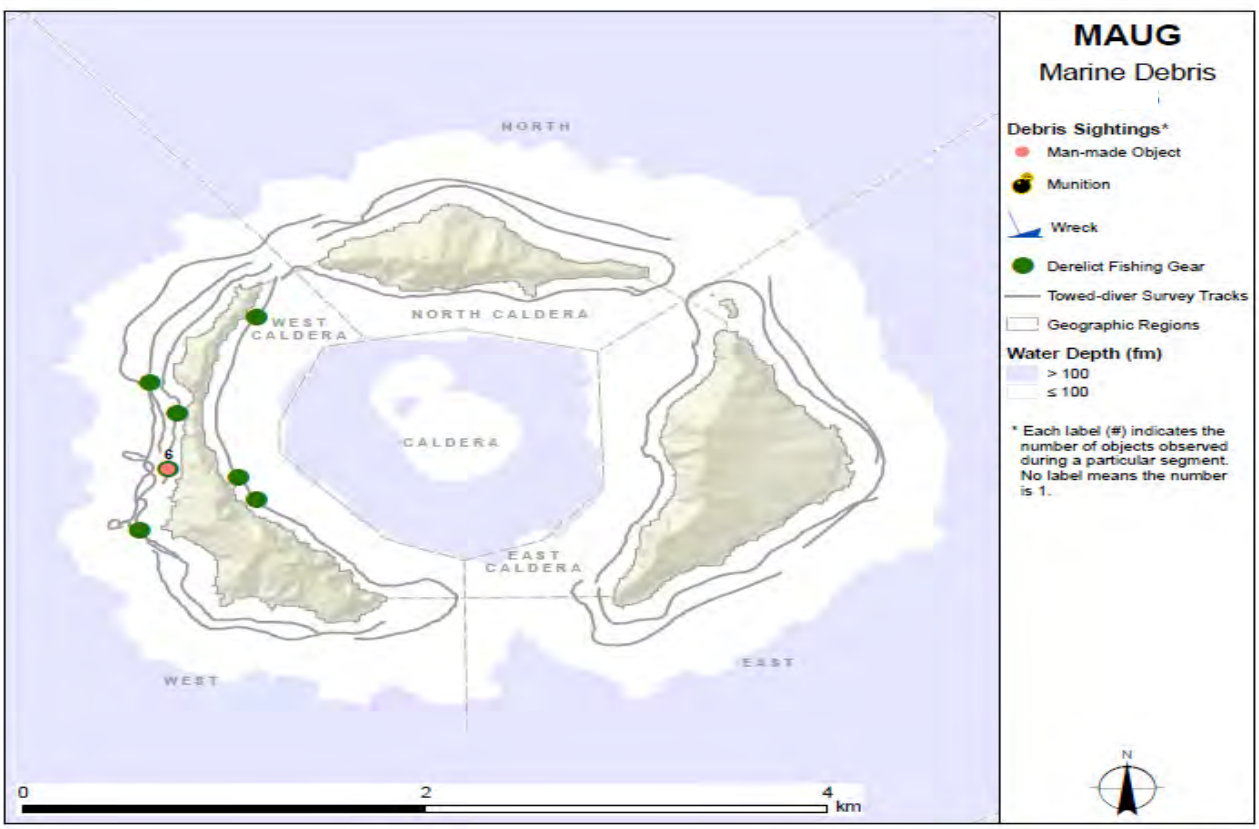
2.3.7 Marine Debris Action Plan

Marine debris on the shoreline of Maug. Photo: NOAA

Introduction

Marine debris is an ongoing global issue and one of the most widespread pollution problems facing the oceans and waterways. Marine debris is defined as any persistent solid material that is manufactured or processed and directly or indirectly, intentionally or unintentionally, disposed of or abandoned into the marine environment. Plastics, Styrofoam™, derelict fishing gear and derelict vessels are common types of non-biodegradable debris that litter the marine ecosystems.

It is not only an unsightly problem; marine debris causes damage to coral reefs and other marine habitats. Injuries and deaths of numerous marine mammals and birds are caused ever year by marine debris, either because the animals become entangled in it or mistakenly eat it as prey. Most marine debris is so small it is not visible floating on the water surface. Small suspended pieces are easily ingested by animals in the ocean or on the coast once the debris reaches shore. Plastics are especially troublesome because the synthetic material is able to absorb, concentrate, and deliver toxic compounds to animals that ingest them. The map below shows known areas of concern for marine debris on the shores of the West Island of Maug, on the boundary of the Monument and the wildlife conservation reserve. Derelict fishing gear is a dominant form of marine debris in the Islands Unit.



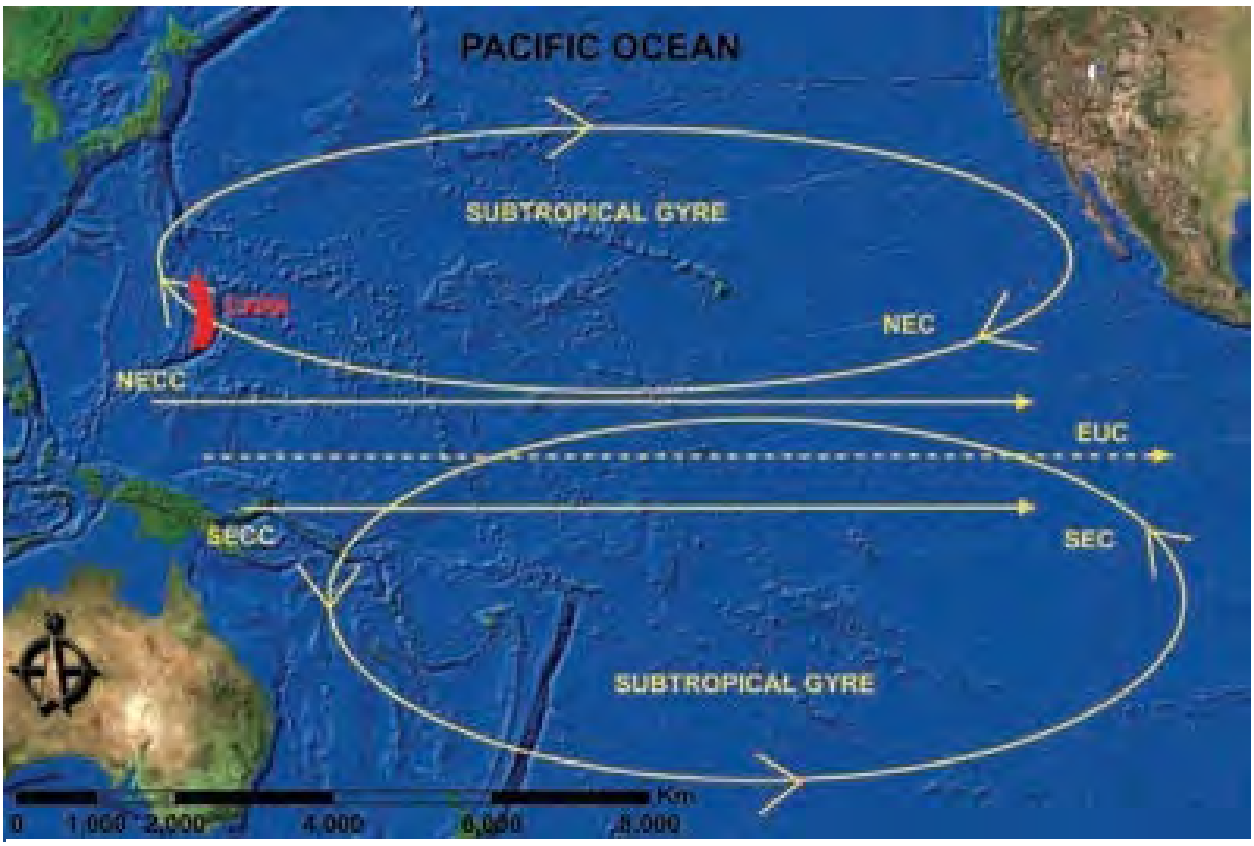
Source: NOAA

Need for Action

Marine debris is a potential transport mechanism for non-native species and chemical hazards, is a threat to human health and safety, and has economic impacts on navigation, tourism, and marine resources. The purpose of the Marine Debris Action Plan is to establish a framework for activities that will reduce the impacts of marine debris within the Monument. Physical entanglement in nets and plastic objects threaten marine animals and coral habitats. Ingested marine debris, particularly plastics, is found in necropsies performed on birds, turtles, marine mammals, and fish.

Humpback whale entangled in derelict fishing gear. Photo: AP

Winds and ocean currents play a dynamic role in circulating marine debris around the globe. Once a slowly degrading and highly buoyant item such as a food wrapper or plastic bottle enters the ocean, it can travel hundreds, even thousands of miles along wind and water currents. Large ocean current systems that flow around a central point are called gyres. Gyres are driven by wind, temperature, and the earth's rotation. They circle around huge areas of the ocean following along the continental coastlines. Since the Monument areas are uninhabited, marine debris found there mainly originates from fishing fleets, maritime transportation, former military activities, and land-based debris from populated areas of neighboring countries. Advancing stewardship among members of the commercial and recreational fishing and cruise line industries necessitates the provision of relevant information and incentives.



Pacific Ocean gyres. Mariana Archipelago is highlighted in red on this map. Source:NOAA

MD Objective: Remove existing debris and reduce the likelihood of additional debris from entering the Monument.

MD Strategy 1: Decrease potential incidences of grounded and abandoned vessels in the Monument. Vessels that are grounded and/or abandoned in the Islands Unit are a major threat to Monument resources. Grounded vessels cause physical damage to coral reefs and chemical damage from the release of oil, fuel, and other hazardous materials. Abandoned vessels cause reef abrasion and chemical impacts due to metal corrosion, iron deposition, and other chemical by-products. Because of the Islands Unit's remote location, vessels abandoned there may be stranded for long periods of time until resources for removal are available, which only exacerbates the impact of derelict vessels upon marine habitats. One way to reduce risk of vessel groundings is to develop navigation aids that pinpoint the location of Monument features on navigation charts.

MD Activity 1.1: Update navigation aids with Monument boundary and feature information. Monument managers, along with partner agencies, will work to continually update the Ocean Coast Survey Electronic Navigation Charts and the Coast Pilot®10 to include Monument boundaries and information about other potential navigational hazard sites located within the Monument. This activity will increase mariner awareness about vessel hazards in the Monument so vessel grounding can be avoided.

MD Activity 1.2: Assess the need and value of establishing International Maritime Organization Protection Measures for the Islands Unit. Based on findings of the threats, ship traffic analysis, accidents and incidents, Monument managers will determine the need to submit a proposal to the International Maritime Organization (IMO) to establish Particularly Sensitive Sea Areas and associated protective measures. Such measures fall into two general categories: 1) Navigational Aids (ships' routing systems and ship reporting systems); and 2) Discharge Restrictions (special areas and emission control areas).

MD Strategy 2: Decrease incidences of fishing gear and solid waste disposal in the Mariana Archipelago that could drift into Monument waters.
Ocean-based sources of marine debris in the Monument include fishing gear and solid waste from maritime activities and the commercial and recreational fishing industries. Nets, monofilament, fishing lures, plastic bags, and galley waste are examples of common items that deliberately or accidently become marine debris from water vessels. Best management practices can prevent most items from going overboard and are easily incorporated into boating regiments.

MD Activity 2.1: Modify and circulate waste management education materials to Monument visitors. Informing mariners about fishing materials and BMPs designed to reduce impact upon ocean resources and providing incentives for proper gear disposal on land are needed to prevent gear from being disposed at sea. This will be accomplished through an outreach project, conducted in coordination with regional resource management agencies that emphasizes BMPs for waste minimization and proper waste management. Existing materials in the *Marine Debris 101* series include:

- *The Boaters Guidebook to Marine Debris and Conservation;*
- *Marine Debris Legislation and Policy; and*
- *Reeling in Marine Debris.*

MD Activity 2.2: Conduct outreach workshops in the CNMI and Guam about fishing gear loss solutions. This activity encourages fishermen to adopt fishing practices and gear that reduce the risk of gear loss. Many people who participate in fishing activities are aware of the problems associated with derelict gear, but do not know where to locate on-land disposal facilities or recognize the value in alternative low-impact fishing gear. Monument managers will work with community partners to conduct workshops with commercial and recreational fishers covering gear loss issues; providing information about where to purchase alternative supplies and where to recycle potential debris items.

MD Activity 2.3: Develop protocols to prevent marine debris from U.S. fishing fleets that fish in the CNMI and Guam EEZs and partner with them for removal incentives. In partnership with WPFMC, the Monument managers will develop an inventory of commercial fishing vessels operating in waters adjacent to the Monument that will include vessel size, gear used, and home port. The input from the inventory and MD Activity 2.2 workshop will be used to identify feasible options to monitor and prevent accidental or intentional loss of gear, such as permanent identification of fishing gear, incentive programs for recovered debris, and disposal and recycling programs at ports. Monument managers will partner with other marine debris organizations to formulate incentives for vessels to participate in marine debris removal (if the item is identifiable and non-hazardous to remove) and disposal programs in compliance with transport regulations.[16]

MD Strategy 3: Develop a process to inventory and remove marine debris in the Islands Unit. Managers will establish a marine debris data detection and reporting system for Monument visitors including scientists, USCG, researchers, and fishermen. Effective reporting systems are needed to increase the ability for visitors to report the location of marine debris accumulations to inform managers on quantity, type, and location of marine debris observed. An inventory of marine debris will be maintained and prioritized for removal.

MD Activity 3.1: Establish a marine debris data gathering procedure for the Islands Unit. A specific form would be developed for the Islands Unit using the NOAA *Marine Debris Shoreline Survey Field Guide* as a model. The marine debris identification guide and form would be supplied to visitors as part of their JMP.

MD Activity 3.2: Consider using remote monitoring technology to address marine debris. Monument managers will work with partners to explore the efficiency and effectiveness of remote sensing marine debris at sea, near shore, and shoreline environments. Using remote sensing for marine debris surveys may be efficient and reduce surveillance costs, but testing and evaluation work is needed to determine if this technology is realistic. When proof of concept flights for unmanned aerial systems are complete, and if they prove capable of the task, a cost analysis will be conducted to determine feasibility of using this technology in the Monument for marine debris surveillance.

MD Activity 3.3: Work with partners to establish a centralized, inter-agency marine debris inventory and response fund. Monument managers will work in collaboration with local and National partners to acquire funding to have the marine debris surveys reinstated on the MARAMP cruises and ultimately to remove marine debris in locations where it's identified as a priority.

Table 2.8 *MD Action Plan Strategies and Activities*

	Project Title	Alt 1	Alt 2	Alt 3
MD Strategy 1	Decrease incidences of grounded and abandoned vessels in the Monument.			
MD Activity 1.1	Update navigation aids with Monument boundary and feature information.		Short-term	(1)
MD Activity 1.2	Assess the need and value of establishing International Maritime Organization Protection Measures for the Islands Unit.		Mid-term	(2)
MD Strategy 2	Decrease incidences of fishing gear and solid waste disposal in the Mariana Archipelago that could drift into Monument waters.			
MD Activity 2.1	Modify and circulate waste management education materials.		Long-term	(3)
MD Activity 2.2	Conduct outreach workshops in the CNMI and Guam about fishing gear loss solutions.	✓	Mid-term	(3)
MD Activity 2.3	Develop protocols to prevent marine debris from U.S. fishing fleets in the CNMI and Guam EEZs and partner with them for removal incentives.		Long-term	(4)
MD Strategy 3	Develop a process to inventory and remove marine debris in the Islands Unit.			
MD Activity 3.1	Establish a marine debris data gathering procedure.		Long-term	(1)
MD Activity 3.2	Consider using remote monitoring technology to address marine debris.		Long-term	(2)
MD Activity 3.3	Work with partners to establish a centralized, inter-agency marine debris inventory and response fund.		Long-term	(3)

2.3.8 Emergency Response & Natural Resource Damage Assessment Action Plan

Introduction

In the event of an emergency or natural disaster in the Monument, the response must be aligned with the National Response Framework (NRF), which details the U.S.'s approach for all types of disasters and emergencies. It is built on scalable, flexible, and adaptable concepts to align key roles and responsibilities across the U.S. This Framework describes specific authorities and best practices for managing incidents that range from local emergencies to large-scale events or catastrophic natural disasters. The NRF outlines the core capabilities required to respond to an incident and further describes how response efforts integrate with those of the other mission areas. The response scenarios described on subsequent pages all correspond with the NRF.

Catastrophes such as oil spills from drilling operations, plane crashes, offshore shipping traffic and grounded vessels can affect hundreds of miles of ocean or coastlines and potentially threaten the survival of corals, fishes, seabirds and other marine resources. Damage from disasters may worsen over time and cause further environmental consequences if there isn't an emergency response and natural resource damage assessment (NRDA) plan to remove hazardous substances or debris.

The USCG uses special skimmers to contain and recapture fuel spills. Photo: Gary Chalker/USCG

A USCG Federal on Scene Coordinator (FOSC) responds to shipwrecks, marine debris, oil and chemical spills. In consultation with USFWS and NOAA Office of Response and Restoration, the FOSC initial assessment determines applicable authorities, the action needed, what funding can be used, and, what methods of vessel removal or pollution mitigation are appropriate under the circumstances. Once a course of action is determined, Managers work closely with the FOSC to execute the appropriate removal and disposal action plan.[***]

In certain situations, oil pollution may not be the primary environmental concern. For example, grounded vessels may damage coral, sea grass, other sensitive marine habitats, and irreplaceable historical and cultural marine resources. Threats from abandoned vessels include antifouling paints, nutrient enrichment from rusting steel, the introduction of marine invasive species, as well as fouling organisms on the hull. Fishing gear or other marine debris that may entangle marine life is a hazard if the vessel is allowed to deteriorate in place.

Key response priorities for Monument managers in the case of grounded vessel include:

- Identify and Prioritize Resources at Risk
- Evaluate Protective Measures and Cleanup Strategies
- Facilitate Post-Cleanup Evaluations
- Manage ESA Consultation and Essential Fish Habitat Issues
- Ensure Consultation Requirements for the ESA, MMPA, MSA and NHPA are met.
- Ensure enforcement of the Migratory Bird Treaty Act to protect seabirds and other protected species.

[***] Guidance documents to help deal with spills of oil and petroleum products are available at: https://response.restoration.noaa.gov/oil-and-chemical-spills/oil-spills/resources/fosc-guide.html

Natural Resource Damage Assessment

The Natural Resource Damage Assessment (NRDA) team of scientists, economists, and attorneys work with the emergency response agencies and Monument managers to assess marine and terrestrial environmental damage to determine a restoration plan in the event of a catastrophe to implement the following three step process:

1) Preliminary Assessment, where the natural resource managers collect time-sensitive data and review scientific literature about the released substance and its potential extent, severity, and affect upon the resources.
2) Injury Assessment and Restoration Planning, where economic and scientific studies are conducted to quantify the injuries to natural resources and identify potential restoration projects. The studies are also used to prepare alternative approaches to speed the recovery of damaged resources including compensation for their loss until recovery as part of the restoration plan.
3) Restoration Implementation, where the NOAA DARRP, USFWS, and CNMI agencies work with the public to select and implement the appropriate restoration project(s). Examples of restoration include coral transplantation and restocking to accelerate recovery of coral reef habitats, replanting wetlands, or species recovery and monitoring.

The NRDA process may sound simple but understanding the complex natural ecosystems, the services they provide, and extent of resource damage, followed by the development of feasible and effective restoration plans can be a challenge.

Need for Action

Grounded vessels typically threaten to or actually spill oil, fuels, and/or other hazardous substances that may cause harm to human safety and the environment. The health of coral reefs, fishes, seabirds, cetaceans, turtles, and protected species are threatened until the vessel and associated materials are removed. In addition to accidental vessel groundings, devastating natural disasters call for emergency response teams to intervene. A local response and assessment strategy should be developed to identify regional response funding sources, trained personnel, and other resources for the Monument in the event of an emergency or natural disaster. This action plan must align with the existing NRF.

A shipwreck at Palmyra Atoll NWR resulted in an outbreak of ***Rhodactis howesii****. Photo: Thierry Work/USGS*

Remote MPAs are at a high risk for vessel groundings due to the lack of lighting, aids to navigation, or other indications that signal shallow depths or coral reefs in the vicinity. A 1991 shipwreck on the remote Palmyra Atoll NWR released iron minerals causing an outbreak of *Rhodactis howesii* to spread over a 650 ft radius of coral reef. That event underscores the need to respond, assess, and address the environmental consequences of catastrophe before those consequences compound.[13] Shipwrecks at Palmyra Atoll and Kingman Reef were removed in 2014. Although the coralimorph is gone from the original infestation area where the wrecks were removed at Palmyra, it continues to spread to other reefs around the atoll.

ERDA Objective: Respond effectively to emergencies under the National Response Framework and to assess and restore any damages to Monument resources.

ERDA Strategy 1: Provide the USCG with a Monument Contingency Plan and additional tools to enable a streamlined response and damage assessment in the event of an emergency in the Monument. Monument managers will collaborate with agencies and organizations involved in emergency response in the Pacific region, including: Mariana Islands Area Committee (responsible for emergency response planning regarding spill preparedness and consists of industry, federal, and local agency representatives); the FOSC, who coordinates the activities of the Area Committee and assists in the development of a comprehensive Area Contingency Plan; the USFWS, and the NOAA Office of Response and Restoration. Together, an ERDA protocol and Monument Contingency Plan will be developed and added to the USCG Marianas Islands Area Contingency Plan (MIACP).

ERDA Activity 1.1: Prepare a Monument Contingency Plan to supplement the MIACP. The MIACP functions as the master plan for response and planning coordination regarding discharges of oil and releases of hazardous substances in CNMI and Guam. Monument managers will draft a Contingency Plan containing a Monument ERDA protocol according to the USCG MIACP format sections 100-900 and include:

- Mission, execution, planning, logistics, finances, etc.
- Preparation of Environmental Sensitivity Indices for the waters around Maug, Asuncion, and Farallon de Pajaros
- Response plans for non-Incident Command System emergencies
- Response drills and training plans for emergency response personnel

This Monument Contingency Plan will then be submitted as an appendix to the MIACP.

ERDA Activity 1.2: Prepare an Environmental Sensitivity Index (ESI) for the Monument's Islands Unit. ESI maps are important tools used in assessing potential damage to resources. They provide a concise summary of coastal resources that are at risk during an emergency situation or natural disaster. Examples of at-risk resources include birds, shellfish beds, and coral reefs. Additionally, ESI maps can be used by planners before an accident happens to identify vulnerable locations, establish protection priorities, and identify cleanup strategies. ESI atlases are available for most of the coastal regions of the United States, including Saipan, Tinian, Rota, Aguijan, and Guam.[14] Monument managers will prepare ESI maps for the waters and submerged lands that constitute the Islands Unit as part of the Monument Contingency Plan.

ERDA Activity1.3: Prepare a NRDA representative contact list. NRDA representatives for the Monument will be identified along with their contact information, roles, and responsibilities. Monument managers will prepare a NRDA contact list, update it annually, and have it available for the USCG.

ERDA Strategy 2: Ensure preparation, response, and training needs are met for the proper implementation of an ERDA protocol in the Monument. Monument managers will consult emergency response agencies to accomplish the following tasks:

- Identify training resources - including personnel, distance learning capabilities, and equipment.
- Promote appropriate trainings by using local examples and by working with diverse organizations and agencies with intimate knowledge about the Monument region.
- Encourage collaborative training efforts within agencies and across organizations through sharing of regional training opportunities.

ERDA Activity2.1: Monument managers will collaborate with the PRiMO coalition to identify training and funding needs associated with the ERDA protocol. The Pacific Risk Management 'Ohana (PRiMO), a coalition of organizations with a role in hazard risk management in the Pacific region, are leading discussions to address issues pertaining to funding sources, training requirements, and other ocean policy issues in the Pacific Region.[†††] Monument managers will work with the PRiMO team to ensure that emergency response and preparedness requirements are met in the event of a natural or human-induced hazard in the Monument.

Table 2.9 ERDA Action Plan Strategies and Activities

	Project Title	Alt 1	Alt 2	Alt 3
ERDA Strategy 1	Provide the USCG with a Monument Contingency Plan and additional tools to enable a streamlined response and damage assessment in the event of an emergency in the Monument.			
ERDA Activity 1.1	Prepare a Monument Contingency Plan to supplement the MIACP.		Short-term	(2)
ERDA Activity 1.2	Prepare an Environmental Sensitivity Index (ESI) for the Monument's Islands Unit.		Mid-term	(2)
ERDA Activity 1.3	Prepare a NRDA representative contact list.		Short-term	(2)
ERDA Strategy 2	Ensure preparation, response, and training needs are met for the proper implementation of an ERDA protocol in the Monument.			
ERDA Activity 2.1	Monument managers will collaborate with the PRiMO coalition to identify training and funding needs associated with the ERDA protocol.		Mid-term	(3)

[†††] https://coast.noaa.gov/primo/

2.3.9 Exploration and Research Action Plan

Introduction

The oceans cover more than 70% of the Earth's surface, carry about 50% of the global primary production and support the greatest biodiversity on the planet. Events in the open ocean affect humans everywhere on a daily basis. By heat transfer, ocean currents regulate global weather patterns that influence living conditions both at sea and on land. The ocean is one of the first places where changing temperatures, sea level rise, and ocean pH provided evidence of Earth's changing climate. Marine habitats rank amongst the most intense carbon sinks in the biosphere, holding up to 54 times more carbon that the atmosphere. This marine-stored carbon is called blue carbon. If degraded, blue carbon ecosystems can become sources of carbon, releasing stored carbon back to the atmosphere in the form of CO_2.

Many major environmental events, such as earthquakes and tsunamis, originate on the ocean floor; sometimes with disastrous effects on human communities along the coastal zone. Oceans supply humanity with resources from fisheries to marine biotechnology to minerals and renewable energy. Oceans provide social and economic goods and services, marine transportation and security, and coastal protection, as well as the economic services from tourism and recreation. The oceans may provide answers about the origin of life on Earth and the possibility of life elsewhere.

Only an estimated 5% of the global oceans has been explored, with the majority of this research comprised of studies on the upper photic zone of the ocean's water column and along the coastlines. With an average depth of 2.36 miles, the ocean floor is generally inaccessible except with advanced technology, which often comes with a high cost. Despite the obstacles, scientists and explorers identify a pressing need to study the deep portions of the ocean. Research and exploration allow scientists to make better predictions about weather events, climactic changes, and the future of marine resources; which inform management actions for resource conservation and fishing policies. Better knowledge of climate impacts on the marine environment is vital for improved forecasts. This is essential for broader economic prosperity, security and well-being. It also allows communities to prepare for future environmental scenarios.

Research, scientific collecting, and surveys (collectively called "research") may be conducted throughout the Monument by independent researchers, partnering agencies, and educational groups. "Research" is defined as follows:

- Research: Planned, organized, and systematic investigation of a scientific nature.
- Scientific collecting: Gathering of natural resources or cultural artifacts for scientific purposes.
- Surveys: Scientific inventory or monitoring.

R/V Onnuri researchers with FWS Resource Monitor.
Photo: USFWS

Exploration and Research in the Mariana Arc System

Exploration and research into the deep ocean of the Mariana arc system gained momentum during the 1980s with the production of large-scale mapping using multi-beam and side-scan sonar, and manned underwater vehicles. Research operations had a subduction zone emphasis in the 1990s; followed by both manned and un-manned submersible dives as technological innovations enabled unprecedented excursions into the ocean depths.[15] Today, research in the Mariana arc system is conducted by many entities including NOAA's Pacific Marine Environmental Laboratories, the U.S. Geological Survey (USGS), several Universities, as well as foreign institutions and agencies.

Research on the most infamous feature in the Monument, the Mariana Trench, has been limited due to the extreme pressure that occurs in the ocean depths, the technological constraints of equipment, and the high cost of working in these extreme conditions. As of July 2020, only twelve people have reached the Challenger Deep. The first was in January 1969 by the bathyscaphe Trieste, which was manned by Lt. Don Walsh, of the U.S. Navy and Jacques Piccard. Film director and inventor James Cameron made the descent in 2012 aboard the Deepsea Challenger. Explorer Victor Vescovo piloted a series of expeditions on the Limiting Factor in 2019 and 2020; including dives by the first woman, astronaut and oceanographer Kathy Sullivan; and by Kelly Walsh, the son of Lt. Don Walsh. Other expeditions have occurred in the Trench via remotely operated vehicles and unmanned landers that reach the seafloor and can collect data with automated instruments.

Research covering other areas of the Mariana arc system (i.e. magmatic arc, backarc, forearc) spans a variety of subjects from the geology of vents and seeps to the composition of chemosynthetic biological communities. Trench research includes geological aspects and processes as well as recent increased interest in bacterial life forms that support chemosynthetic communities and may hold answers about the origins of life. The waters of the Mariana Arc are unique among ocean ecosystems, and offer immense opportunities for new knowledge to emerge across disciplines.

Need for Action

The need for exploration and research (E&R) in the Monument stems from the need to understand the natural processes at work, and how these processes will affect Monument resources. Research can inform management actions, assist in tracking resilience of the Monument resources, and help coastal communities prepare adaptive and/or mitigation measures to protect their coastlines. The world's oceans are negatively impacted by rising temperatures, SLR, and changes in the physical and chemical composition of its environments. Researchers recording marine species' responses to a rapidly changing environment have observed shifts in the ranges and numbers of certain marine species populations.[21] These trends are expected to increase as ocean temperatures rise and cause greater variation in marine life migration patterns, isolation of population segments, and even elimination of species from parts of their range.

Coral reef ecosystems appear to be particularly vulnerable to the rapid changes occurring in the world's oceans. Research indicates rising ocean temperatures are responsible for coral bleaching events, which have significantly affected coral habitats worldwide. This is important because coral reefs are the foundation of tropical near shore ecosystems, and protect islands from the surrounding ocean. Protecting coastlines will become an even bigger problem as the ocean continues to warm. It is likely that warmer ocean temperatures will result in an increase in frequency and intensity of tropical storms. Powerful, more frequent storms, coupled with SLR, may have potentially devastating impacts on coastal communities because of the damage from strong winds, storm surges, and the beach erosion that generally accompanies these events.

Rising sea-levels are already threatening to inundate low lying areas around the world. This is displacing residents of coastal communities and causing the loss of unique coastal habitats. Rapidly rising sea levels are also likely to result in the "drowning" of many coral reefs. Most coral species have a narrow depth tolerance, the depth that provides the optimum wavelength of light for the life-sustaining photosynthetic algae that they house. If sea levels rise faster than corals can grow, they may find themselves in depths where the wave-length of light available is insufficient for photosynthetic activity.

The Quest 4000 ROV for deep-sea exploration. Photo: NOAA

Globally, fish provide 3 billion people with nearly 20% of their daily protein intake, and 4.3 billion people with approximately 15% of their daily protein intake.[23] Much of the protein consumed around the world on a daily basis comes from near shore coral reef habitats, especially reefs that sustain subsistence-based communities. When a coral reef dies, there is always a corresponding loss in the associated marine life. This loss results in a reduction in resources available to those most vulnerable, primarily fishing communities whose diets, traditions, and economies are integrally tied to coral reefs.

Association with Other Regional Science and Management Plans

The *Comprehensive Wildlife Conservation Strategies* and subsequent *Wildlife Action Plans* for the CNMI and Guam identify the species of greatest conservation need in the region of the Monument from a local perspective. The marine environment is of utmost importance to the residents of the CNMI and Guam. Many of the species appearing on the list of species of special concern are there at the suggestion of the public. These species, along with T&E species, have been identified as conservation targets for the Monument.

Many of the strategies and activities in this action plan are designed to understand the changing marine environment and complement coordination efforts with the PIFSC and local government agencies in CNMI and Guam. The PIFSC regularly prepares five-year science plans which have the goal of describing and prioritizing research needs for the Mariana Archipelago. In addition, the PIFSC prepares regional science implementation plans. The *Marianas Archipelago Ecosystem Action Plan, 2014-2019* and the *Marianas Trench Marine National Monument Ecosystem Implementation Pla*n were used to address science needs and support management decisions throughout the Marianas Islands.

The activities proposed herein are consistent with the PIFSC science plans to assist with management decisions guidance. Common research themes between the PIFSC plans include: collecting oceanographic, biological, and geochemical data; conducting assessments and surveys of the marine resources in the Monument; identifying and implementing novel approaches to research or management; and identifying opportunities to partner with the broader scientific community and the general public.

E&R Objective: Offer society a deeper understanding and a breadth of knowledge about the complex ecosystems and physical, geological, and biochemical processes of the Marianas Trench Marine National Monument through scientific research and exploration, while ensuring Monument resources are not degraded.

E&R Strategy 1: Work with partners to assess the current state of knowledge about the resources in the Monument, and to prioritize research to fill in the gaps. An assessment will be performed to determine which data are currently available on the resources in the Monument, and to identify areas where information may be missing. By gaining an understanding on the current state of the information available, Monument mangers will be better equipped to manage the resources of the Monument, and will be able to identify areas to focus efforts on filling information gaps.

E&R Activity 1.1: Complete a review of the current scientific literature of research that has occurred in the Monument, and make it available to the public on an appropriate internet site(s). A literature review will help to guide future research by allowing Monument mangers to determine where research and exploration has taken place in the past. This understanding will also help to protect the resources in the Monument by providing information on those areas that have been the subject of repeated efforts, and to identify those areas where information is lacking.

E&R Activity 1.2: Review current data to determine the abundance and distribution of the marine resources in the monument, and the location of geological features found in the Monument. Accurate data on the abundance and distribution of marine resources and the geological features of the Monument will help to guide future management efforts in the Monument by identifying those resources or areas that are at greater risk to from permitted activities or from outside influences.

E&R Activity 1.3: Collect available spatial data sources to determine the distribution of the various habitats, geological features, and biological resources. The available spatial data on the Monument's resources and features will be collected and made accessible to the scientific community and the public through an appropriate internet site(s). Spatial information is a valuable tool in resource management since it is readily understandable and transferable. Long-term spatial data sets are especially important in providing insights to trends on expansion or contraction of the distribution patterns of habitats and biological resources that can be found in the Monument.

E&R Activity 1.4: Conduct a vulnerability assessment to understand potential climate change scenarios. A basic vulnerability assessment will be performed for the Monument, where the sensitivity, exposure, and adaptive capacity of species and systems are examined. "*A Framework for Vulnerability Analysis in Sustainability Science*" provides a basic outline for an assessment and pinpoints the essential components that should be analyzed to determine vulnerabilities in an ecosystem.[23] This document will be used as a template to inform the assessment. Identifying vulnerabilities is important, as they can lead to the loss of key ecosystem structures or functions, are likely to occur, and will occur in the shortest timeframe.

E&R Strategy 2: Work with partners to study, explore, and conserve the features and resources of the Monument. Future exploration and research in the Monument will be essential for the proper care and management of its resources and features. Monument mangers will assist with the efforts of our partners to study and explore the Monument, and then use that data and information to direct our efforts at conservation and preservation of the resources and features within its boundaries.

E&R Activity 2.1: Work with partners to conduct scientific studies on the characteristics of the Monument's unique processes and resources. Many of the features and resources of the Monument are unique or are rare outside of its boundaries, so data are often limited. This lack of data can make it difficult to properly manage these features and resources. Because many of these features and resources are inaccessible (depth) or isolated (distance), future research will require careful planning. Monument managers will identify ways to assist efforts to study and explore within the Monument boundaries.

E&R Activity 2.2: Work with partners to characterize the ocean basins and resources in the Monument. Ocean basins are the section of the ocean floor that extends seaward from continental margins. Ocean basins make up about seventy percent of the ocean floor, and cover about half the earth's surface. Because of their distance from shore, and their depth below sea level, ocean basins house much of the unexplored parts of the ocean. Likewise, the resources that exist there are largely unknown. However, exploration in these deeper environments is becoming more frequent as technological advances make it feasible. Monument managers will work with partners and researchers to identify features and resources in the Monument's ocean basin.

E&R Activity 2.3: Characterize geological, physical, chemical, and biological ocean processes, communities, and environments. One primary condition for successful resource management is that managers must clearly understand the extent of the resources for which they are responsible, the environments that are present for those resources, and the factors that impact both. Research that investigates the Monument's biological and physical environments will be prioritized, so that managers can make informed decisions regarding Monument resources living at various ocean depths.

E&R Activity 2.4: Develop a geo-referenced system of documentation that tracks locations and types of exploration and research activities in the Monument. Tracking the location and type of activities through a geo-referenced database will aid in management, monitoring, and coordination of scientific exploration and research. In particular, the datasets could be quickly sourced, areas of potential duplicate effort identified, and cumulative impacts evaluated over time. Data obtained will provide information on the nature, extent, and location of research projects. Such a database could also be used to inform outreach activities through the generation of summary reports and maps.

E&R Activity 2.5: Identify and establish long-term study sites at appropriate locations within the Monument. Monument managers will work with researchers to establish appropriate study sites, and assist in efforts to conduct consistent observation and data collection over long periods of time. Long-term data series are important in identifying environmental trends, especially as they relate to large-scale events such as global warming

and ocean acidification. The remote ecosystems in the Monument can serve as baseline study sites, against which other more heavily impacted areas can be compared.

E&R Activity 2.6: Locate areas within the Monument that demonstrate potential for climate change resilience. Some areas of the Monument may be less affected by climate change. The lack of human presence there contrasts with the neighboring, more populous southern islands. Thus, the Monument may serve as a comparative example of a healthy ecosystem, or a potential bank of resources.

E&R Strategy 3: Work with partners to identify opportunities to implement novel approaches to management of the Monument and to find ways to further collaboration with the scientific community and the general public. To properly explore, monitor, and conserve the features and resources of the Monument will require adopting new or novel approaches, continuing our collaboration with existing partners and cultivating new ones. Monument managers will identify and implement ways to utilize innovative technology, traditional knowledge, or any other viable method that can be used to successfully manage the Monument.

E&R Activity 3.1: Convene a team of Technical Advisors who can aid Monument managers in evaluation of research proposals and management activities. Much of the scientific research in the Monument is cutting-edge; never before explored sites in the Trench Unit/Refuge and Volcanic Unit/Arc of Fire Refuge are being researched using advanced technology. In order to evaluate potential impacts and better understand management applications, the MMCT would convene a team of technical experts.

E&R Activity 3.2: Convene a working group to identify key climate change research questions. Research and monitoring data that are needed to effectively plan for climate change will be identified through a working group who will identify key research questions. A potential question for the working group to address is whether or not the proper climate change indicators are being measured at the needed intervals and locations.

E&R Activity 3.3: Consider establishing sites where only low-impact research would be conducted, in order to maintain ecosystem integrity. Monument managers, in conjunction with the team of technical experts, may determine that setting aside certain areas, such as a vent site in the Volcanic Unit/Arc of Fire Refuge, for low-impact research is optimal for conservation and sustainable-use purposes. Setting aside certain areas would apply the precautionary approach (that is, erring on the side of caution) to preserving these unique ecosystems.

E&R Activity 3.4: Identify opportunities to use advanced underwater technologies such as: ROVs; autonomous underwater vehicles; and ocean gliders to increase the pace, scope, and efficiency of exploration and research. Although research ships are the most recognizable platforms for accessing isolated sites; the development of cost effective, technological innovations are providing researchers with unprecedented access, and allow for long-term observations. Some of these innovations include: stationary observation systems (moorings and bottom-supported platforms), and mobile observation systems (submersibles, remotely-operated vehicles, and autonomous underwater vehicles, drifters, gliders). These cutting-edge technologies are alternatives to the standard platforms commonly used for research purposes today.

Table 2.10 E&R Action Plan Strategies and Activities

	Project Title	Alt 1	Alt 2	Alt 3
E&R Strategy 1	Work with partners to assess the current state of knowledge about the resources in the Monument, and to prioritize research to fill in the gaps.			
E&R Activity 1.1	Complete a review of the current scientific literature of research that has occurred in the Monument, and make it available to the public on an appropriate internet site(s).	✓	Short-term	(3)
E&R Activity 1.2	Review current data to determine the abundance and distribution of the marine resources in the monument, and the location of geological features found in the Monument.		Short-term	(3)
E&R Activity 1.3	Collect available spatial data sources to determine the distribution of the various habitats, geological features, and biological resources.		Short-term	(3)
E&R Activity 1.4	Conduct a vulnerability assessment to understand potential climate change scenarios.	✓	Short-term	(1)
E&R Strategy 2	Work with partners to study, explore, and conserve the features and resources of the Monument.			
E&R Activity 2.1	Work with partners to conduct scientific studies on the characteristics of the Monument's unique processes and resources.	✓	Short-term	(1)
E&R Activity 2.2	Work with partners to characterize the ocean basins and resources in the Monument.	✓	Short-term	(1)
E&R Activity 2.3	Characterize geological, physical, chemical, and biological ocean processes, communities, and environments.	✓	Short-term	(2)
E&R 1. Activity 2.4	Develop a geo-referenced system of documentation that tracks locations and types of exploration and research activities in the Monument.		Mid-term	(3)
E&R Activity 2.5	Identify and establish long-term study sites at appropriate locations within the Monument.		Long-term	(3)
E&R Activity 2.6	Locate areas within the Monument that demonstrate potential for climate change resilience.		Long-term	(4)
E&R Strategy 3	Identify opportunities to implement novel approaches to management of the Monument and to find ways to further collaboration with the scientific community and the general public.			
E&R Activity 3.1	Convene a team of Technical Advisors who can aid Monument managers in evaluation of research proposals and management activities.		Mid-term	(3)
E&R Activity 3.2	Convene a working group to identify key climate change research questions.		Mid-term	(3)
E&R Activity 3.3	Consider establishing sites where only low-impact research would be conducted, in order to maintain ecosystem integrity.		Long-term	(2)
E&R Activity 3.4	Identify opportunities to use advanced underwater technologies such as: ROVs; autonomous underwater vehicles; and ocean gliders to increase the pace, scope, and efficiency of exploration and research.		Mid-term	(2)

Mural at Tanapag Elementary School, Saipan, depicting Carolinian culture. Photo: Pacific Worlds

2.3.10 Cultural & Maritime Heritage Action Plan

Introduction

Cultural and maritime heritage are the legacy of the connection between people and the ocean. Cultural and maritime heritage activities seek to preserve and protect valuable historical, cultural, and archaeological resources within our marine environments. Cultural and maritime heritage encompasses not only physical resources such as historic shipwrecks and prehistoric archaeological sites, but also archival documents and oral histories. It can also include the stories of indigenous cultures that have lived and used the oceans for thousands of years. The study of these resources adds an important dimension to the understanding and appreciation of historical and present day ocean customs in the CNMI and Guam.

A brief overview of cultural and maritime history of the CNMI and Guam is included in **Chapter 5**. More detailed reports are provided in other reference documents. The *Maritime History and Archaeology of the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands* was prepared under contract for the CNMI government in 2009[3] (funding for this project was provided by a Historic Preservation Fund Grant, administered by the U.S. National Park Service).The *Micronesia: Submerged Cultural Resources Assessment* documents Cultural & Maritime Heritage resources across the Mariana Archipelago. However, additional research is needed for us to better understand the Cultural & Maritime Heritage specific to the Monument. The remoteness of the Islands Unit is a challenge to fully surveying the area for potential maritime cultural sites.

To assist with the maritime cultural heritage analysis and surveys, the NOAA Office National Marine Sanctuaries, Maritime Heritage Program staff will provide expertise and support. The program staff provides stewardship and maritime heritage resource compliance at thirteen National Marine Sanctuaries and will work in partnership with the Monument managers to implement the management strategies and activities.

Need for Action

Fishing traditions associated with the Monument waters are well documented, and are actively practiced among the CNMI and Guam communities.[25] One of the most important threats to maritime cultural resources is the inadvertent damage (accidental anchor damage, etc.) and intentional damage (looting, theft) to historic properties underwater. This further requires that Monument managers identify activities that have the potential to harm, destroy, or diminish the value of maritime heritage resources, and take steps to ensure that these activities are managed in such a way as to protect and preserve the Monument's heritage resources. There is also a need to encourage traditional ecological knowledge of maritime heritage among the Chamorro and Carolinian communities in the CNMI and Guam so the unique characteristics of a long and rich Cultural & Maritime Heritage are maintained within the region.

CMH Objective: Protect and preserve historic resources and encourage the continuation of maritime cultural connections to the Monument.

CMH Strategy 1: Collaborate with Chamorro and Carolinian communities, the CNMI Division of Historic Preservation Office, the Guam Historic Resources Division, and other interested groups to identify the indigenous and colonial Cultural & Maritime Heritage resources related to the Monument. In close coordination with the State Historic Preservation Officers (SHPOs) for CNMI and Guam, Monument managers will work with cultural practitioners and scholars to identify and characterize the Cultural & Maritime Heritage of the Monument. This research will be used to assess the potential locations of submerged vessels, aircrafts, and artifacts that may exist in the Monument. Field surveys to document and inventory the physical heritage sites will also be conducted when possible in order to evaluate the condition of the maritime heritage resources. These physical site surveys will be planned in conjunction with other research operations in the Monument. Oral histories and interviews may be conducted to learn more about the intangible maritime heritage associated with the Monument.

CMH Activity 1.1: Establish partnerships with indigenous communities to conduct culturally appropriate maritime heritage research and activities. In close coordination with the SHPOs for CNMI and Guam, a partnership will be proposed with the indigenous communities to jointly identify and characterize the cultural heritage resources within the boundaries of the Monument. Should these communities agree to engage with Monument managers in such a partnership, information collected through this collaborative effort regarding places with indigenous cultural significance will be subject to plans or agreements that address public access, confidential treatment of certain information (which will be reflected in the publicly-available inventory and characterization), and cultural proprietary information belonging to the indigenous communities. This collaborative process will guide and inform preservation and management decisions.

CMH Activity 1.2: Connect with Federal Agencies managing the Maritime Heritage Grants program to determine eligibility for Maritime Heritage funding and seek out non-Federal interest groups (non-profit organizations, universities) for potential research projects. The United States Maritime Administration (an agency of the United States Department of Transportation) and the National Park Service administer the National Maritime Heritage Grants Program within the DOI. It provides funding for education and

preservation projects designed to preserve historic maritime resources and to increase public awareness and appreciation for the maritime heritage of the United States. The grant is funded through a percentage of the proceeds from the sale or scrapping of obsolete vessels of the National Defense Reserve Fleet. All grants awarded must be matched on a 1-to-1 basis with non-Federal assets.

CMH Activity 1.3: Identify, characterize, and inventory Cultural & Maritime Heritage resources located in the Monument using a GIS-based inventory program. Monument managers will partner with interested parties to conduct an in-depth literature review of documents that cite shipwrecks, historical voyages, and ocean trade routes where maritime heritage sites might be partially or completely submerged within the boundaries of the Monument. This process entails a review of oral history accounts, and seabed mapping and/or other remote survey information that has been collected for the submerged lands of the Monument. The University of Guam (UOG) and other institutions with a Marine Archeology program may be a good source for enthusiastic researchers.

A study of seafaring voyages throughout the Pre-Latte, Latte, Spanish, German, Japanese, and American periods to identify migration patterns and navigational methods associated with the Monument waters will be conducted in close collaboration with the SHPOs for CNMI and Guam, researchers, and cultural experts. This process will include archival research; a literature review; and oral history interviews with elders, scholars, practitioners, and navigators with a particular emphasis on Chamorro and Carolinian voyage routes that may have included passage through what is now the Monument.

CMH Activity 1.4: Develop a Cultural & Maritime Heritage preservation and protection program for historic resources in the Monument. Following the identification and characterization of maritime heritage resource sites, a program plan will be developed for the Monument in close coordination with the SHPOs for CNMI and Guam. Collaboration with the indigenous communities establishing policies and strategies for preservation, protection, and management of these resources will be vital. The program plan will include, but not be limited to, an analysis to determine if the resources are historic and eligible for listing on the National Register. The preferred policy option will be preservation in situ, as recommended by the United Nations Organization for Education, Science and Culture (UNESCO) Convention on the Protection of the Underwater Cultural Heritage (2001) which defines in situ protection as "the preservation of underwater cultural heritage sites in its original location."[27]

However, research will be planned to determine whether the site should be preserved in situ or whether all or portions of the site should be subject to recovery in accordance with federal archaeological program standards and requirements. In particular, this will be consistent with Section 110 of the NHPA and the analysis will comply with 36 CFR Part 800 "Protection of Historic Properties" and include cultural consultations with Chamorro and Carolinian community members so cultural protocol is followed and indigenous points of view guide the process of handling items of material culture if any are located in the Monument. If the analysis finds that a portion of these resources are suitable for recovery, plans and cost estimates to carry out retrieval work will be prepared.

CMH Strategy 2: Facilitate development of interpretive programs on the Monument's Cultural & Maritime Heritage. In close coordination with the SHPOs for CNMI and Guam, Monument managers will collaborate with scholars and navigators who know the Mariana waters, as well as educators in the Mariana Archipelago to develop a Cultural & Maritime Heritage interpretive program featuring a range of education materials and outreach events about the Monument's maritime traditions. The interpretive program will be made available to the visitor contact station(s) when such space is established.

CMH Activity 2.1: Prepare Educational materials to augment Cultural & Maritime Heritage programs. Monument managers will facilitate the development of educational materials featuring the maritime heritage associated with the Monument to augment existing National Maritime Heritage programs. Cultural connections such as the navigational history, migration patterns, fishing patterns and ocean-related material culture between the residents of the Mariana Archipelago and the Monument will be highlighted.

CMH Activity 2.2: Coordinate Cultural & Maritime Heritage outreach programs with educators and community organizations. Monument managers will collaborate with educators and community organizations in the development of Cultural & Maritime Heritage outreach programs for audiences of all ages. The purpose of this activity is to engage diverse Mariana communities in the maritime heritage of their region.

Table 2.11 CMH Action Plan Strategies and Activities

	Project Title	Alt 1	Alt 2	Alt 3
CMH Strategy 1	Collaborate with Chamorro and Carolinian communities, the CNMI Historic Preservation Office, the Guam Historic Resources Division, and other interested groups to identify the indigenous and colonial Cultural & Maritime Heritage resources related to the Monument.			
CMH Activity 1.1	Establish partnerships with indigenous communities to conduct culturally appropriate maritime heritage research and activities		Short-term	(1)
CMH Activity 1.2	Connect with Federal Agencies managing the Maritime Heritage Grants program to determine eligibility for funding and seek out non-profit organizations and universities for potential research projects.		Mid-term	(2)
CMH Activity 1.3	Identify, characterize, and inventory Cultural & Maritime Heritage resources located in the Monument using a GIS-based inventory program.		Mid-term	(3)
CMH Activity 1.4	Develop a Cultural & Maritime Heritage preservation and protection program for historic resources in the Monument.		Mid-term	(3)
CMH Strategy 2	Facilitate development of interpretive programs for the Monument's Cultural & Maritime Heritage.			
CMH Activity 2.1	Prepare educational materials to augment Cultural & Maritime Heritage programs.		Mid-term	(3)
CMH Activity 2.2	Coordinate Cultural & Maritime Heritage outreach programs with educators and community organizations.		Mid-term	(3)

2.3.11 Ocean Literacy, Environmental Education, and Public Outreach Action Plan

Introduction

Ocean literacy is defined as "an understanding of the ocean's influence on you – and your influence on the ocean."[28] Developing ocean literacy requires a place-based approach that highlights existing ocean knowledge within a community, and offers new knowledge about the ocean to be discovered through intergenerational and interdisciplinary engagement. Ocean literacy encourages localized public involvement, supports existing connections held by a community to the ocean, and aims to strengthen those connections to the ocean through education and outreach programs.

Environmental education is defined as a process designed to teach citizens and visitors the history and importance of conservation and the biological and the scientific aspects of our nation's natural resources. Environmental education can help develop a citizenry that has the awareness, knowledge, attitudes, skills, motivation, and commitment to work cooperatively towards the conservation of the Nation's environmental resources.

Public outreach is two-way communication between Monument managers and the public to promote involvement, and influence attitudes and actions, with the objective of improving joint stewardship of our natural and cultural resources. Outreach includes but is not limited to the following:

- Community relations
- Local government relations
- Relations with local wildlife agencies
- Relations with Federal partner agencies
- Congressional relations
- Corporate relations
- News media relations
- Non-government organizations relations
- Relations with constituent groups
- Environmental education and interpretive activities
- Public involvement
- Traditional public information activities such as workshops, open houses, etc.
- Information products, such as brochures, leaflets, exhibits, videos, etc.
- Web-sites, distance learning programs, and social media

Monument managers have an important role as facilitators in the exchange of interdisciplinary knowledge through a variety of programs that benefit CNMI, Guam, and the broader Pacific region. While the Monument is part of national heritage, the Monument is also part of local communities. Monument staff, volunteers, and partners should design programs to reflect community values and traditions that align with and/or complement agency missions. What connects one or a small group of individuals to wildlife, natural resources, and conservation might not hold true for others. The need to respond to how people want to learn about wildlife, conservation, and ocean stewardship should include the use of newer technologies to complement the program delivery methods program effectiveness.[29]

Formal education and informal education, coupled with outreach opportunities for people of all ages are instrumental in achieving ocean literacy. The overarching intention of this action plan is to cultivate ocean literacy among members of the public so they can make informed decisions and adapt to an ever changing environment by applying interdisciplinary resource management practices specific to their region. Much can be learned from the time-tested ocean knowledge held by the people of the Mariana Archipelago as well as the scientists conducting research in the region. Creating the space for diverse communities to come together and exchange knowledge about the ocean will open a dialogue for collaborative resource management. A shared motivation to interact sustainably with the marine environment can serve as a foundation for new partnerships and community driven initiatives. Additionally, Monument programs should build relevant connections to people within their communities.

Need for Action

Public scoping sessions held on Guam, Rota, Tinian, and Saipan in 2012 confirmed the interest local communities have in participating in management decisions and activities. They want to see increased dialogue between management agencies, non-government organizations, and community members. This requires Monument managers to engage with other natural resource managers, environmental advocacy groups, and educators in the development of public materials and programs; and to utilize a visitor contact station or "informational hub" through which to offer public ocean literacy programs, environmental education, and interpretive information.

Although physical access to the Monument is logistically challenging, access to information about the Monument region should be available to the people of the Mariana Archipelago in order to link the Monument to the communities nearby. The archipelago's inhabitants have a long history with the areas within the Monument and it should remain a part of their cultural heritage. Monument managers can contribute to this process by providing meaningful information to the general public, and engaging the public through research endeavors. The need to connect the people to the Monument through information was expressed by many who participated in the scoping process.

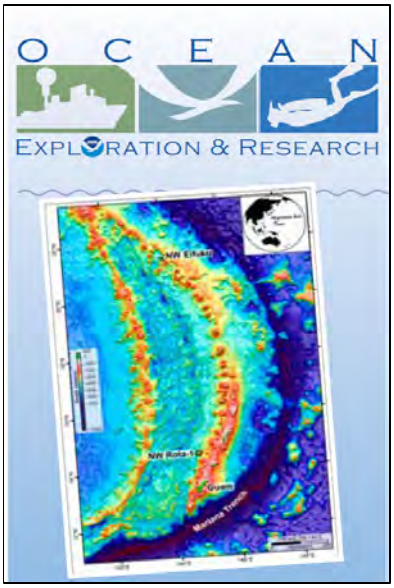
The health of Monument ecosystems depends upon healthy interactions between humans and the natural environment. It is crucial for visitors to the Monument; such as fishers, tourists, and water sport enthusiasts who traverse Monument waters as well as researchers who conduct studies within Monument boundaries, to know they are in a national marine monument and for them to know appropriate and prohibited activities. One effective way to achieve voluntary compliance is to provide people with enough information to make responsible environmental decisions.

The Ocean Literacy Campaign

Along with economic potential, ocean literacy programs contribute to the diversification of ocean sciences through the inclusion of multiple perspectives. The Ocean Literacy Campaign began with the collaboration between hundreds of scientists and educators, and has published a collection of educational resources for grades K-12.[30] These resources factor in the average baseline knowledge of continental U.S. students in grades kindergarten through twelve, with the intention of advancing ocean knowledge through curriculum. Coastal communities in the U.S. have assumed the responsibility of producing localized resources for students growing up around specific ocean environments. Because the frame of reference for islanders in CNMI and Guam will be different than those living in continental United States, there is a need to embrace local ocean knowledge and support the continued application and evolution of indigenous knowledge for the success of an ocean literacy program in the region.

Environmental Education

A quality environmental education program is a vital component to achieve the Monument goals. Inviting the public to learn more about wildlife conservation and ocean stewardship helps them become better stewards wherever they reside. Environmental education programs are designed using the foundation of a course of study, which is an ordered process or succession, such as a number of lectures or other matter dealing with a subject, or a series of such courses constituting a curriculum. Examples of courses of study that will meet the education objectives of the Monument and students may include, but are not limited to: teacher professional development, community-based service organization programs, youth group merit/activity badge requirements, summer camp themes, and adult lifelong learner seminars. Environmental education is integrated with formal school curricula that achieve specific Commonwealth, Territory, State and district standards, including a plan of instruction that details what students need to know, how they will learn the material, what the instructor's role is, and the context in which the teaching and learning take place.



Submarine Ring of Fire 2014, Ironman Expedition Education Module.

Public Outreach

Monument managers will seek to connect the local communities, visitors and the public to the natural and cultural resources of the Monument and foster appreciation and understanding. The most significant challenge is to adapt programs and delivery modes to the continually changing cultural demography. Programs and materials should be relevant to diverse audiences with varied values, beliefs, and attitudes about wildlife conservation. Public outreach efforts should facilitate awareness and provocation on many levels, from complex topics like climate change, to more basic concepts such as how healthy oceans matter to us as individuals and as a nation.[31]

OEP Objective: In collaboration with partners, develop high quality ocean literacy, environmental education, and interpretive programs that bring information about the Monument ecosystems and geologic features to diverse audiences locally and across the nation

OEP Strategy 1: Engage educators and organizations in the CNMI and Guam to support ocean literacy. Pooling available resources between multiple agencies and organizations is the most feasible method to support an ocean literacy program. This approach will eliminate duplicate efforts and increase the momentum of existing initiatives. The UOG Sea Grant in partnership with the Western Pacific Coral Reef Institute has developed a cross-disciplinary education curriculum for ocean and environmental literacy for the Guam Department of Education. Monument managers will work in tandem with existing programs at the National Sea Grant Office and the Northern Marianas College to maximize resource efficiency.

OEP Activity 1.1: Identify potential CNMI and Guam-based educators to establish a network of ocean literacy products and material contributors. Monument managers will identify potential education and outreach partners, including organizations based in CNMI and Guam, keeping in mind the need to attract diverse skill sets and funding sources

to the program. Then, agency staff will engage potential partners such as the International Pacific Marine Educators Association and Island Earth to design a network of ocean literacy and environmental education contributors.

OEP Activity 1.2: Identify gaps in ocean literacy and ocean resource-related environmental education programs and seek ways to contribute resources to existing programs. This will be a collaborative effort with regional educators to assemble an inventory of ocean literacy and environmental education activities already available in CNMI and Guam. Based on the inventory, Monument managers and partners can assess information gaps and propose a course of action to address the gaps and seek ways to contribute resources to existing programs.

OEP Strategy 2: Collaboratively develop curriculum for the Monument and Mariana Archipelago that incorporates traditional knowledge of the Carolinian and Chamorro communities.

Ocean literacy proponent Craig Strang describes the need for ocean science disciplines and materials to embrace indigenous perspectives: "*Ocean Literacy needs to be redefined to include Traditional Knowledge and youthful perspectives about the ocean. By 'Traditional Knowledge' I do not mean the secret and private knowledge that indigenous people may not want to share with outsiders, but rather I mean the universal and transcendent knowledge that indigenous people wish that all people could understand – the essential things critical to sustaining the ocean and us*."[32] OEP Strategy 2 focuses on the development of curriculum using and/or modifying existing resources, and producing new resources that accurately incorporate Chamorro and Carolinian ocean knowledge.

OEP Activity 2.1: Determine which materials should be incorporated into ocean literacy, environmental education, and public outreach programs. This means identifying existing materials, determining which ones need modification to include the Mariana Archipelago and Monument references, and new education and outreach products that should be developed.. Existing resources such as "*Island Ecology and Resource Management*" produced by the Asia Pacific Academy of Science, Education, and Environmental Management; and the booklet "*Adapting to a Changing Climate*" facilitated by the Micronesia Conservation Trust and TNC, are examples of educational resources already tailored for Micronesia, including CNMI and Guam, and would not require additional modification. Educational materials have been developed for grade levels 5-12 on climate change, energy, and marine ecosystem health with the *Okeanos Explorer* expedition findings.

OEP Activity 2.2: Collaboratively develop materials that address the 7 essential ocean principles from an indigenous point of view, and make them available in locally spoken languages. The *Okeanos Explorer*, *Ocean Literacy Essential Principles and Fundamental Concepts* will be adapted to reflect indigenous associations with the ocean, and allow learners to communicate about the ocean in meaningful ways through Chamorro and Carolinian references. Monument managers will engage educators, Chamorro, Carolinian, and Tagalog language experts, and cultural advisors in the local communities for their guidance and content expertise to meet the needs of local residents.

OEP Activity 2.3: Develop educational products featuring the Monument's unique resources to bring the Monument to the CNMI and Guam communities. Future exploration and research will reveal new information about the mysteries of the Mariana

Trench and seamounts. Findings such as these will increase collective knowledge about ocean, marine life, and climate phenomena. In collaboration with stakeholders and research partners, a variety of media will be developed to share information about Monument resources and provide access to findings from research conducted throughout the Monument.

OEP Strategy 3: Provide quality environmental education and ocean literacy programs for Mariana Islands residents and visitors complemented with distance learning tools and novel delivery tools.

OEP Activity 3.1. Identify where ocean literacy programs should be targeted to maximize community participation. Monument managers and educator partners will identify audiences where environmental education and ocean literacy programming efforts should be emphasized and provide or develop appropriate programs to reach these audiences. Monument staff will invest in training and professional development opportunities for local educators, staff, and volunteers to strengthen the quality of programs offered.

OEP Activity 3.2: Identify appropriate distance learning tools and integrate new media/technology delivery methods for environmental education and ocean literacy programs. A variety of delivery modes will be offered to maximize program reach, designing products to be accessible to the broadest range of users including: virtual fieldtrips, podcasts, interactive Web-cams, and social media apps. Due to the remote location of the Monument, web-based and mobile platforms are a critical component to effectively reach multiple audiences. Interactive kiosks will reach distant audiences. Initial locations for information delivery will include Monument visitor contact stations on Saipan and Guam.

OEP Strategy 4: Establish a visitor contact station/ multipurpose hub facility where the collective story of the Monument ecosystem is told through imagery, sounds, artifacts and scheduled programming developed for educators, students, residents, and visitors. A visitor contact station would provide an outlet for Monument-related information and a site for community activities. It would provide the opportunity for people to learn about the unique cultural, geological, volcanic, and biological features of the Mariana Archipelago and the Monument. The MTMAC initiated an early effort to establish a visitor facility; first on Saipan followed by consideration for the other locations in CNMI and Guam.

OEP Activity 4.1: Monument managers will continue to grow/expand Monument visitor contact station(s) in the CNMI and Guam, and provide support and guidance as resources permit. Monument support staff will provide technical expertise to establish training for Monument visitor contact station staff and volunteers. Sustainable funding options will be explored by Friends of the Marianas Trench and Monument managers for ocean literacy, environmental education programs to be conducted by volunteers and local educators.

OEP Activity 4.2: Develop an education and outreach ocean literacy program in partnership with Monument managers and local community experts. Incorporate multi-media formats, such as 3-dimensional models of Monument areas, educational DVD's, historical photographs, artifacts, and TED talks, as part of an interpretive exhibition program. Programs and materials will be provided in the languages spoken locally in the CNMI and Guam.

OEP Strategy 5: Promote eco-tourism, recreational, and economic ventures that are compatible with Monument ecosystems in collaboration with the Marianas Visitors Authority and other partners. The Proclamation directs Monument managers to assess tourism, recreational, and economic opportunities. No extractive practices that result in appropriation, injury, destruction, or removal of any feature of the Monument are allowed except for scientific exploration and research, where incidental appropriation, injury, destruction, or removal of features may be permitted.

OEP Activity 5.1: Establish guidelines and protocols for sustainable tourism and related economic ventures within the Monument. Monument managers will develop protocol for business operators, so business activities do not adversely affect Monument ecosystems. Once developed, these guidelines and protocols will be available on agency websites, and at CNMI and Guam contact station locations. The purpose of providing guidelines and protocols is to enable public and private sector industries an opportunity to create sustainable business models that are consistent with marine conservation and ocean literacy; and to stimulate and support viable, sustainable economic ventures that are compatible with the Monument.

Table 2.12 OEP Action Plan Strategies and Activities

	Project Title	Alt 1	Alt 2	Alt 3
OEP Strategy 1	Engage educators and organizations in the CNMI and Guam to support ocean literacy.			
OEP Activity 1.1	Identify potential CNMI and Guam-based educators to establish a network of ocean literacy products and material contributors.		Short-term	(2)
OEP Activity 1.2	Identify gaps in ocean literacy and ocean resource-related environmental education programs and seek ways to contribute resources to existing programs.		Short-term	(2)
OEP Strategy 2	Collaboratively develop curriculum for the Monument and Mariana Archipelago that incorporates traditional knowledge of the Carolinian and Chamorro communities.			
OEP Activity 2.1	Determine which materials should be incorporated into ocean literacy, environmental education, and public outreach programs.		Mid-term	(3)
OEP Activity 2.2	Collaboratively develop materials that address the 7 essential ocean principles from an indigenous point of view, and make them available in locally spoken languages.		Mid-term	(3)
OEP Activity 2.3	Develop educational products featuring the Monument's unique resources to bring the Monument to the CNMI and Guam communities.		Short-term	(3)
OEP Strategy 3	Provide quality environmental education and ocean literacy programs for Mariana Islands residents and visitors complemented with distance learning tools and novel delivery tools.			
OEP Activity 3.1	Identify where ocean literacy programs should be targeted to maximize community participation.		Short-term	(1)
OEP Activity 3.2	Identify appropriate distance learning tools and integrate new media/technology.		Short-term	(1)
OEP Strategy 4	Establish a visitor contact station/ multipurpose hub facility where the collective story of the Monument ecosystem is told through imagery, sounds, artifacts and scheduled programming developed for educators, students, residents, and visitors.			
OEP Activity 4.1	Monument managers will continue to grow/expand Monument visitor contact station(s) in the CNMI and Guam, and provide support and guidance as resources permit.	✓	Short-term	(1)
OEP Activity 4.2	Develop an education and outreach ocean literacy program in partnership with Monument managers and local community experts.		Mid-term	(2)
OEP Strategy 5	Promote eco-tourism, recreational, and economic ventures that are compatible with Monument ecosystems in collaboration with the Marianas Visitors Authority and other partners.			
OEP Activity 5.1	Establish guidelines and protocols for sustainable tourism and related economic ventures within the Monument.		Long-term	(3)

2.3.12 International Collaboration

Introduction

Oceans cover nearly three-fourths of the earth's surface; moderate climate, weather, and atmospheric conditions; produce food to feed people; and support economies around the world. Governments collaborate on ocean policy and resource management issues for the sustainable use and protection of the ocean for future generations. International conservation efforts are important to U.S. national security and economic interests because a degraded environment weakens communities and sets the stage for political instability and conflict. The United States participates in several international initiatives that are committed to marine and coastal resource protection. These initiatives include:

Our Ocean, Our Future: Call for Action

The 2017 United Nations Ocean Conference was held at UN headquarters in New York. The outcome document *Our Ocean, Our Future: Call for Action*, set a global path to sustainable management and conservation of our oceans, seas and marine resources. There are nine Communities of Ocean Action:

- Coral reefs
- Implementation of international law as reflected in United Nations Convention on the Law of the Sea
- Mangroves
- Marine and coastal ecosystems management
- Marine pollution
- Ocean acidification
- Scientific knowledge, research capacity development and transfer of marine technology
- Sustainable blue economy
- Sustainable fisheries

The Secretariat of the Pacific Regional Environment Programme

The "*Pacific Ocean Research Alliance*" focuses on coastal and pelagic oceans with an aim to source and provide marine data for decision makers, build Pacific capacity, and strengthen Ocean expert networks for Pacific island Members. The increase in knowledge, data and capacity will help informed decision making when it comes to Ocean health in the region. The Secretariat of the Pacific Regional Environment Programme is also leading partner efforts on *Marine and Coastal Biodiversity Management in Pacific Island Countries and Atolls* (MACBIO).

Big Ocean

A network of large-scale marine protected area managers, Big Ocean's goal is to improve the effectiveness of large-scale ocean management efforts by sharing information, expertise, technologies and resources. The 17 member sites of Big Ocean represent 10 countries and protect over 4 million mi^2 of marine space or more than 3% of the total global ocean. The sites range from the 56370 mi^2 Argo-Rowley Terrace Commonwealth Marine Reserve (Australia) to the 733594 mi^2 Marae Moana marine park in the Cook Islands.

The Micronesia Challenge

This initiative was launched in 2006 by the Chief Executives of the Republic of Palau, the Republic of the Marshall Islands, the Federated States of Micronesia, the CNMI, and Guam. The Micronesia Challenge goal is to effectively conserve at least 30% of the near-shore marine resources and 20% of the terrestrial resources across Micronesia by 2020.

United States Coral Reef Task Force
The Coral Reef Task Force was established by President Clinton in 1998 through Executive Order 13089 to protect, restore, and sustainably use coral reef ecosystems. The Task Force includes 12 federal agencies, seven U.S. states, territories, and commonwealths, and three Freely Associated States.

Ocean Policy to Advance the Economic, Security, and Environmental Interests of the United States
President Trump issued Executive Order 13840, "*Ocean Policy to Advance the Economic, Security, and Environmental Interests of the United States*," on June 19, 2018. The order established an Ocean Policy Committee and delineates seven policy priorities:

- Coordinating departments' ocean management
- Promoting the lawful use of the ocean
- Exercising rights and jurisdiction over the ocean
- Facilitating economic growth
- Ensuring that policies do not prevent the sustainable use of the marine ecosystems
- Modernizing the attainment and use of best available science
- Facilitating collaboration among government entities, industry, the science community, and other stakeholders.

Need for Action
The Monument protects approximately 95,216 square miles of submerged lands and waters. Habitats include coral reef ecosystems, volcanic islands submarine volcanoes and geologic features, and the some of the planet's deepest ocean trenches. Diverse fisheries resources, rare and threatened marine species, corals, marine mammals, sea turtles and seabird populations inhabit these ecosystems. The animals inhabiting this region are not confined by the Monument boundaries, which drives the need for cooperation across jurisdictions for the protection, management, and sustainable use of marine resources.

Managers of MPAs everywhere are challenged with common issues such as biological monitoring, limited law enforcement, unsustainable fisheries practices, understanding ecosystem connectivity and larval distribution, marine invasive species control, marine debris removal, ecotourism development, and research and exploration. These challenges are more easily met when scientific results, problems and solutions, resources, and knowledge are shared with other ocean management practitioners and international communities.

Managers of the Monument face many of these global MPA issues. International collaboration has the potential to improve collective knowledge about Monument ecosystems and inform management decisions to meet these global concerns. Greater collaboration between Monument managers and inter/multi-national organizations will broaden our understanding of the ecosystem functions for which we are responsible, and therefore improve our ability to effectively manage the Monument and inform resource managers elsewhere.

Pygmy killer whales. Photo: Adam Ü .

IC Objective: Promote the long-term conservation of Monument resources through national and international collaboration.

IC Strategy 1: Routinely participate in national and international ocean stewardship forums to exchange knowledge and learn new MPA policies, methods, and technologies. Monument managers will participate in international professional conferences to learn about ocean management issues, methods for combatting threats, and understanding emerging technologies. By participating in international forums, Monument managers will have the opportunity to share lessons learned. Likewise, managers will gain exposure to new and diverse management approaches that may be relevant for application in the Monument.

> **IC Activity 1.1: Participate in the Big Ocean network to incorporate relevant MPA management methods into Monument activities.** Special expertise and experiences, emerging science, and large-scale management challenges such as law enforcement are common issues among the large-scale managers of the Big Ocean Network and directly applicable to effective Monument management. Sharing professional knowledge can improve management technique results.
>
> **IC Activity 1.2: Participate in the Micronesian Challenge, Coral Reef Conservation Program, Big Ocean, and other international organizations' activities.** Monument managers will participate in the Coral Reef Task Force, the Micronesia Challenge, the Coral Reef Conservation Program, Big Ocean network, and other international organizations' activities (funding and travel authorizations permitting) to exchange information and promote the application of multidisciplinary approaches in MPA management.

IC Strategy 2: Identify international collaboration opportunities that will assist managers in maintaining or improving Monument resilience. Monument managers will investigate and pursue opportunities for collaborative research and fisheries-related activities with international agencies and organizations that may improve Monument ecosystem resilience.

> **IC Activity 2.1: Collaborate with international agencies who are conducting research and fisheries-related activities in and near the Monument.** Monument managers will work with the PIFSC and NOAA Office of Exploration and Research to identify international conservation projects and collaborations pertaining to the Monument. Monument managers will then engage international entities conducting marine conservation research in the Monument area for possible research collaboration opportunities.
>
> **IC Activity 2.2: Collaborate with national research firms who partner with international research institutions.** Monument managers will pursue collaborations with national ocean stewardship firms such as Woods Hole and the National Science Foundation who are working with international firms to expand opportunities for collaborative research and fisheries-related activities that may improve Monument ecosystem resilience.

IC Activity 2.3: Improve coordination of seabird protections in relation to fisheries management across the Federal Government and, as appropriate, engage with the international community to provide improved seabird protection in the Monument. Monument managers will engage with the international community through the following actions; 1) provide seabird population monitoring and distribution data, and information regarding bycatch avoidance to fishery management partners in the U.S. Government and to other fishing nations in the region; 2) participate in multilateral organizations such as ACAP (Agreement on the Conservation of Albatrosses and Petrels) that engage with fishing nations and those that have breeding colonies of species listed under the agreement to coordinate activity to mitigate known threats to albatrosses and petrels; 3) participate in the Short-tailed Albatross Recovery Team which has members from the U.S., Japan, and Canada to disseminate information about best practices for bycatch avoidance in fisheries in the areas adjacent to the Monument; 5) participate in scientific meetings and conferences that present scientific information about the effects of climate change on marine communities that will have an impact on seabird foraging conditions in the Monument.

IC Activity 2.4: In coordination with the USCG, develop Japanese language Monument information guides for boaters and Japanese Search and Rescue units responsible for emergency response within the Islands Unit. Monument managers will work with the USCG to have boater information guides available to Japanese Search and Rescue units in the Japanese language.

Table 2.13 IC Action Plan Strategies and Activities

	Project Title	Alt 1	Alt 2	Alt 3
IC Strategy 1	Routinely participate in national and international ocean stewardship forums to exchange knowledge and learn new marine protected area policies, methods, and technologies.			
IC Activity 1.1	Participate in the Big Ocean network to incorporate relevant MPA management methods into Monument activities.	✓	Short-term	(1)
IC Activity 1.2	Participate in the Micronesian Challenge, Coral Reef Conservation Program, Big Ocean, and other international organizations' activities.	✓	Short-term	(2)
IC Strategy 2	Identify international collaboration opportunities that will assist managers in maintaining or improving Monument resilience.			
IC Activity 2.1	Collaborate with international agencies who are conducting research and fisheries-related activities in and near the Monument.	✓	Short-term	(2)
IC Activity 2.2	Collaborate with national research firms who partner with international research institutions.		Short-term	(1)
IC Activity 2.3	Improve coordination of seabird protections and fisheries management across the Federal Government and, as appropriate, engage with the international community through agreements, conferences, and one-on-one.		Mid-term	(2)
IC Activity 2.4	In coordination with the USCG, develop Japanese language Monument information guides for boaters and Search and Rescue units responsible for emergency response within the Islands Unit.		Mid-term	(2)

References

1. Lande, R. 1995. Mutation and Conservation. Conservation Biology 9:782-791.

2. Lynch, M., J. Conery, and R. Biirger. 1995. Mutational meltdowns in sexual populations. Evolution.

3. Harwood, J. 2001. Marine mammals and their environment in the twenty-first century. *J. Mammal.* 82(3):630-640.

4. Parrish, J. D., D. P. Braun, and R. S. Unnasch. 2003. Are we conserving what we say we are? Measuring ecological integrity within protected areas. Bioscience 53:851-860.

5. NRC. 1999. Sustaining marine fisheries. Committee on Ecosystem Management for Sustainable Fisheries, Ocean Studies Board, Commission on Geosciences, Environment, and Resources, National Research Council. National Academy Press, Washington DC 164 p.

6. Western Pacific Fisheries Management Council, Fishery Ecosystem Plan for the Mariana Archipelago. Honolulu, HI 2009.

7. Environmental Protection Agency. http://www.epa.gov/glnpo/invasive/.

8. Pimentel, David, S. McNair, S. Janecka, J. Wightman, C. Simmonds, C. O'Connell, E. Wong, L. Russel, J. Zern, T. Aquino and T. Tsomondo, 2001, "Economic and environmental threats of alien plant, animal and microbe invasions", Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment , 84, p. 1-20.

9. Thresher R.E. and Kuris A.M. 2004. Options for managing invasive marine species, Biological Invasions 6: 295-300.

10. Ruiz, Gregory M. and James T. Carlton, editors. Invasive species: vectors and management strategies. Island Press, Washington, Covelo CA, London, 518 pp.

11. “Hitchhiker’s Guide to the Deep,” Cheryl Dybas, National Science Foundation. http://www.nsf.gov/discoveries/disc_summ.jsp?cntn_id=124468&org=NSF.

12. "REVIEW OF MARITIME TRANSPORT 2019". Printed at United Nations, Geneva. October 2019 – 2,409. UNCTAD/RMT/2019.

13. Work et al. 2008. Phase Shift from a Coral to a Corallimorph-Dominated Reef Associated with a Shipwreck on Palmyra Atoll. PLoS One; 3 (8): e2989 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0002989

14. http://response.restoration.noaa.gov/maps-and-spatial-data/esi-coverage-hawaii-us-territories-and-international.html.

15. Embley, R. W., E. T. Baker, D. A. Butterfield, W. W. Chadwick, Jr., J. E. Lupton, J. A. Resing, C. E. J. de Ronde, K. Nakamura, J. F. Dower, and S. G. Merle. 2007. Exploring the Submarine Ring of Fire: Mariana Arc, Western Pacific, Oceanography, 20, No. 4, 68-79.

16. Piccard, Jaques. 1960. Man's Deepest Dive, 1960. National Geographic.

17. Horey, J.E., *The Right to Self-Government.* Asian-Pacific Law & Policy Journal, 2003.

18. 8 U.S.C. 1407 - *Persons living in and born in Guam*, in *Chapter 12 Immigration and Nationality*.

19. *Profile of General Demographic Characteristics: 2010*, in *2010 Guam Demographic Profile Data*, U.S.C. Bureau, Editor. 2010.

20. *CIA World Fact Book 2014*. Available from: https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/cq.html

21. *The International Ecosystem Society*. March 27, 2015]; Available from: https://www.ecotourism.org/what-is-ecotourism.

22. Camacho, K.L., *After 9/11: Militarized Borders and Social Movements in the Mariana Islands.* American Quarterly, 2012. p. 685-713.

23. Kotowicz, D. and L. Richmond, *Traditional fishing patterns in the Marianas Trench Marine National Monument*, N.M.F.S. Pacific Islands Fish. Sci. Cent., NOAA, Editor. 2013, Pacific Islands Fish. Sci. Cent. Admin.: Honolulu, HI 96822-2396.

24. NOAA, *Results of Human Dimension Monument-Related Research*, P.I.F.S. Center, Editor. 2013.

Sulfur bubbles at NW Rota vent. Photo: NOAA

Chapter 3. Affected Environment

3.1 Physical Environment

The Mariana Islands are formed by the summits of 15 volcanic mountains that sit atop the Mariana Ridge. Located in the northwestern Pacific Ocean between the 12th and 21st parallels north and along the 145th meridian east; they are south of Japan and north of New Guinea, and form the eastern limit of the Philippine Sea. The archipelago encompasses the U.S. Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands (the northern 14 islands) and the U.S. Territory of Guam (the southernmost island). The Mariana Volcanic Arc is part of a subduction system in which the Pacific Plate plunges beneath the Philippine Sea Plate and into the Earth's mantle, creating the Mariana Trench. Six of the islands have been volcanically active in historic times, and numerous seamounts along the Mariana Ridge are volcanically or hydrothermally active. The Monument is comprised of three distinct units covering 96,714 square miles of submerged lands and waters in and adjacent to the archipelago: the Trench Unit/Refuge, the Volcanic Unit/Arc of Fire Refuge, and the Islands Unit:

Trench Unit/Refuge

The deepest known points in the global oceans are found in the Mariana Trench. The portion of the Trench that lies within the Monument is 940 nmi long and 38 nmi wide (35,720 nmi^2—about the same size as the State of Mississippi). The Trench Unit/Refuge does not include the water column, consisting solely of the submerged lands that extend from the northern limit of the U.S. EEZ in the

CNMI to the southern limit of the U.S. EEZ in Guam. Sirena Deep is the deepest point in the Monument—measuring about 6.66 mi below the ocean surface about 90 mi south of Guam.

Volcanic Unit/Arc of Fire Refuge

The Volcanic Unit/Arc of Fire Refuge includes 18 hydrothermally active seamounts (underwater volcanoes) and the submerged lands in a 1 nmi radius from the center of each. This Unit is located in the magmatic arc and Mariana Trough (backarc) portions of the Mariana Arc, and contains intriguing environmental phenomena associated with its hydrothermal vents. The volcanically active Mariana Arc is part of the "Ring of Fire," a circle of active volcanoes outlining the Pacific Ocean Basin.

Islands Unit

The Islands Unit includes the submerged lands and waters out to 50 nmi adjacent to the three northernmost Mariana Islands: Farallon de Pajaros, Maug, and Asuncion. The terrestrial lands of these islands are designated as wildlife conservation areas under the jurisdiction of the CNMI government. There are also 2 active submerged cone volcanoes within this unit, Ahyi and Daikoku.

3.1.1 Geology

The Monument is addressed according to four geological provinces with distinctive attributes: trench, forearc, magmatic arc and backarc.

Plate Tectonics and the Mariana Trench

The Monument is in the Izu-Bonin Mariana (IBM) subduction zone, where the Mesozoic Pacific Plate is being subducted under the Philippine Sea Plate into the earth's mantle at a rate of approximately 1.2 inches per year.[1] The Pacific Plate and the Philippine Sea Plate are two tectonic plates that lie at the bottom of the Pacific Ocean, forming the seabed.

When two ocean plates meet, the oldest, densest plate will curve beneath the edge of the younger, less dense plate and thrust downward into the asthenosphere layer of the earth's mantle toward the earth's center in a process called subduction. The older, denser Pacific Plate has subducted under the edge of the Philippine Sea Plate 43 million years ago, forming the Mariana Trench which cuts along the boundary between them.[2] The deepest point in the Trench is found just outside the Monument boundary in the EEZ of the Federated States of Micronesia, where Challenger Deep has been measured at an astonishing depth of about 6.67 mi below sea level.[3]

Plate tectonics and the initial process of subduction

The Mariana Trench is a non-accretionary convergent plate margin, meaning the bottom of the over-riding plate is in direct contact with the subducting plate, and no materials are accreted into the chasm – thus the Trench is not filled in by accumulating sediments. This, along with the fact that the Trench was created by the oldest Pacific Plate, helps to explain why it is the deepest of all oceanic trenches. Although very deep where the two plates collide, its deepest points occur at the junction between the Trench and the Caroline Ridge, a much younger portion of the seafloor lying to the southwest. To explain this conundrum, Fryer et al. proposed that extreme depths found in the Trench are due to a tear in the adjacent subducting Caroline Plate, causing deformation in the Pacific Plate.[4] They suggest the sub-surface tear causes unusual regional tectonics, compounding the extreme depths in the Trench.

The Mariana Trench was first identified and sampled by the *H.M.S. Challenger* expedition in 1875, producing the earliest bathymetry (underwater topography) information about the Trench.[§§] This was the first British expedition devoted to the purpose of scientific exploration. The mission was to:

- Investigate the physical conditions of the deep sea regarding depth, temperature, circulation, gravity and penetration of light;
- Determine the chemical composition of seawater at various depths, the organic matter in solution, and the particles in suspension;
- Ascertain the physical and chemical character of deep-sea deposits and the sources of these deposits; and
- Investigate the distribution of organic life at different depths and on the deep seafloor.[5]

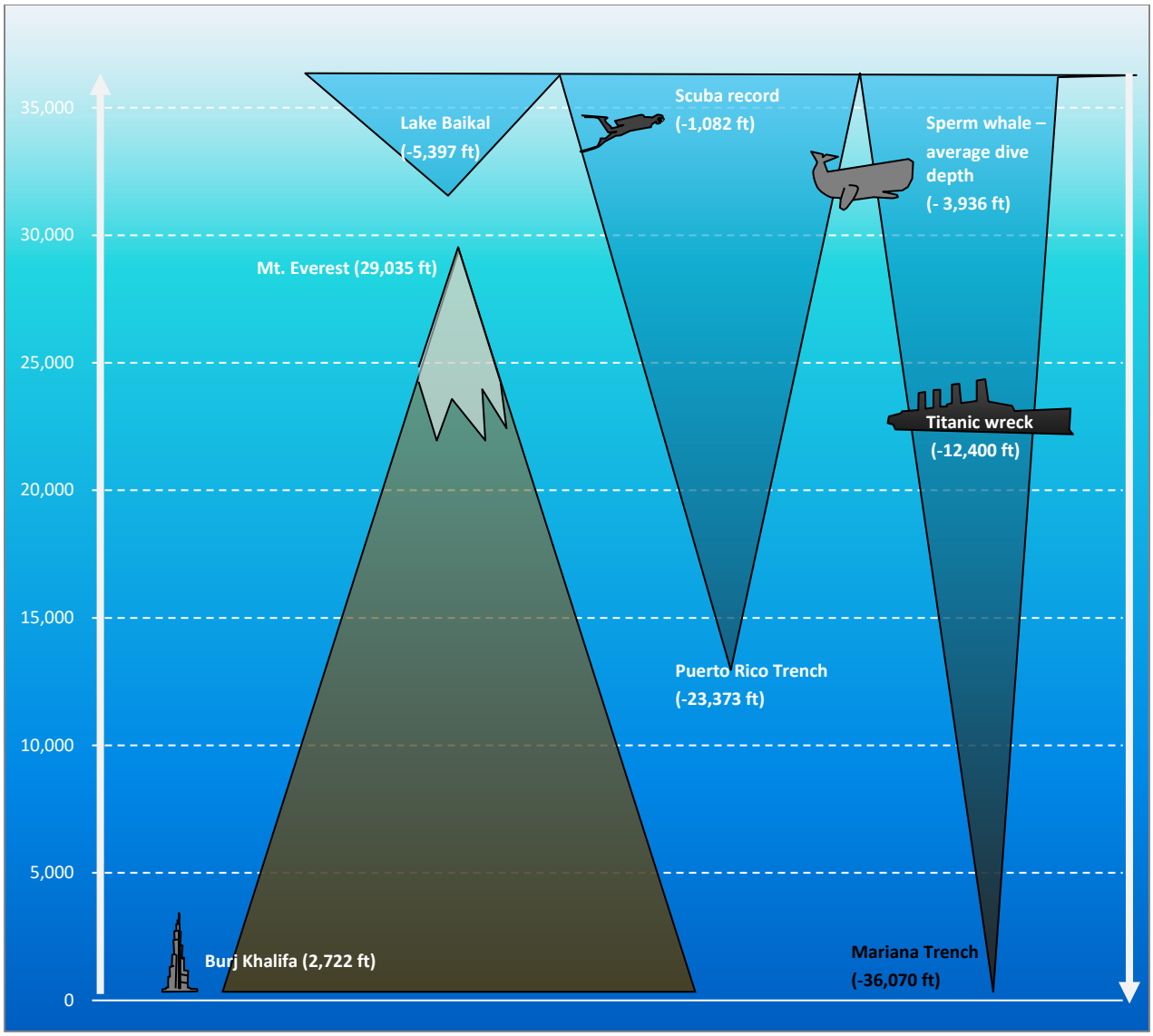
The *H.M.S. Challenger* used three data gathering techniques; sounding, dredging, and temperature reading, the crew documented an unprecedented ocean depth of 4,475 fathoms (roughly 5 mi) in the Trench on March 23, 1875.[6] The survey site was initially named the Swire Deep after Herbert Swire, a navigating sub-lieutenant aboard the Challenger, until the crew returned to England when the site was later renamed the "Challenger Deep" after the ship.[7]

Since 1875, researchers have plummeted to even greater depths in the Challenger Deep. Bathymetry results produced by manned and unmanned expeditions over the course of the 20th -21st centuries have generated a clearer picture of the submerged lands within the Monument and its surrounding areas. The Challenger Deep, which is not part of the Monument, has been recorded at varying measurements both for its depth and exact location. A bathymetric survey of Trench topography measured the Challenger Deep at 6.67 mi below sea level at latitude 11°22.927' N and longitude 142°26.258' E. Another extremely deep point in the Mariana Trench is within the Monument boundary and is called "Sirena Deep", measuring 6.66 mi below sea level.[3] Because of these extremely deep features, and the rugged terrain, the Mariana Trench is considered "*one of the roughest patches on the Earth's skin*."[8]

Sirena Deep was initially named HMRG Deep after the Hawai'i Mapping Research Group research team that first identified it on research cruises from 1997-2001. Dr. Patricia Fryer held a competition among students from Guam and CNMI to rename the HMRG Deep with the winning name submitted by Jermaine Sanders and John Meno. It was officially renamed Sirena Deep, after a legendary figure in Mariana history who was transformed into a mermaid and is believed by some to still inhabit in the deepest parts of the ocean.[9]

The NOAA *Okeanos Explorer* Deepwater Exploration of the Marianas April 20-July 10, 2016, encompassed bottomfish habitats, new hydrothermal vent sites, mud volcanoes, deep-sea coral and sponge communities, seamounts, subduction zone areas, and trench areas. New seamounts and geologic features were discovered, hundreds of different species and dozens of potential new species observed, with many new records being set for the region.

[§§] H.M.S. in the name "*H.M.S. Challenger*" stands for "Her/His Majesty's Ship" and is a prefix attached to all ships in the British Royal Navy fleet.



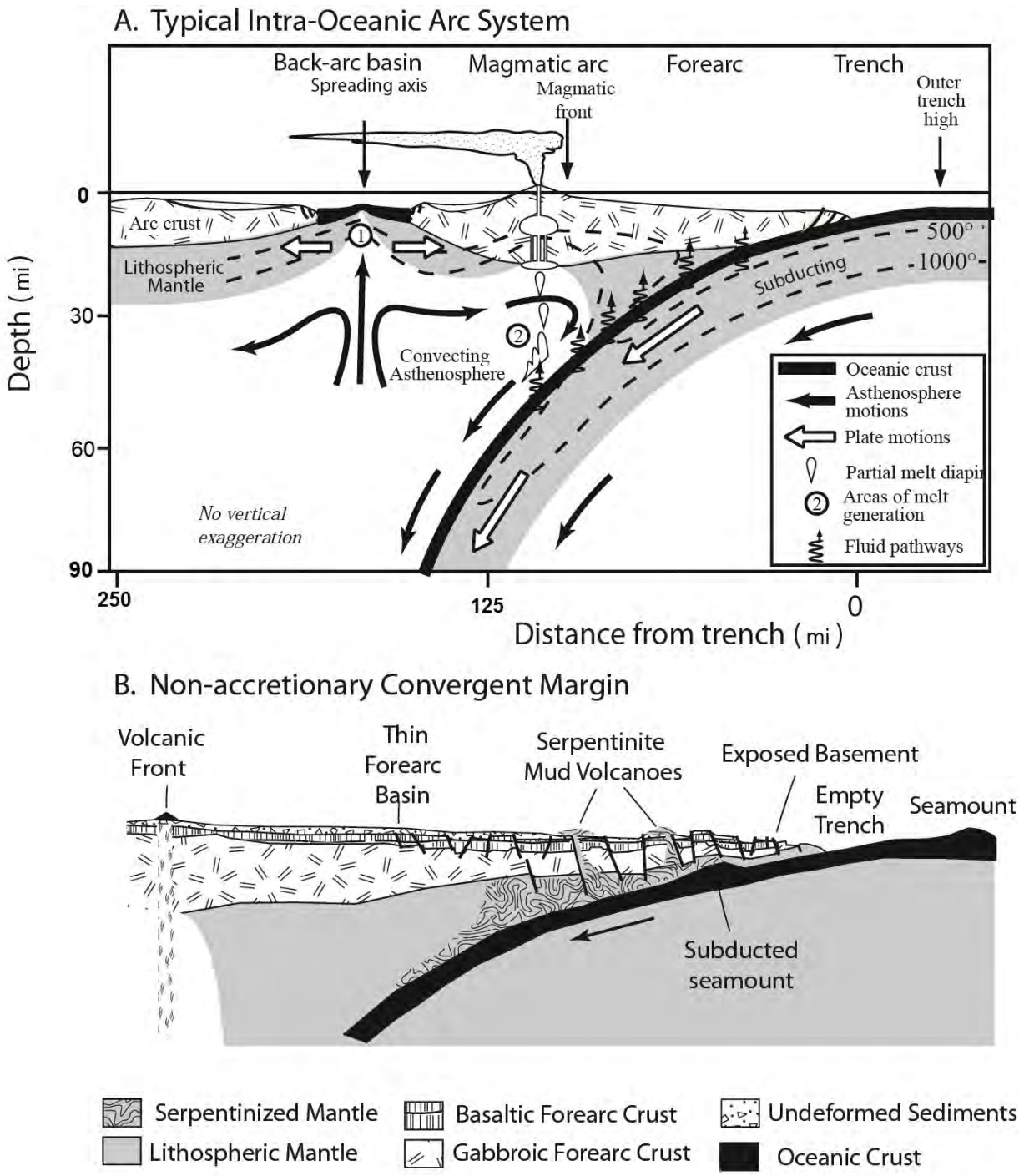
Depth of the Mariana Trench as compared to other records: the deepest depth reached by humans using scuba, the deepest diving marine mammal, the wreck of the Titanic, the Puerto Rico Trench, the deepest fresh-water lake (Baikal), the highest mountain on Earth, and the tallest man-made structure. Source: NOAA

Geology of the Mariana Forearc

The portion of the IBM subduction zone that runs parallel to the Mariana Trench is called the Mariana Forearc. It is where the two tectonic plates initially made contact on the Philippine Sea Plate between the Trench and the Magmatic Arc. Forearcs are often characterized by fracturing, serpentization, and erosion. This is the case for the eastern ⅓ portion of the Mariana Forearc seafloor where it is the most rugged; the western ⅔ portion of the Forearc is comparatively smoother.[10] The Mariana Forearc is split into northern and southern sections by the West Santa Rosa Bank Fault. Faults develop in this portion of the IBM subduction zone because the middle of the Mariana Forearc is bowing more quickly than the ends, creating an eastward bulge.[11]

As the bulge pushes outward, the trailing portions of the Forearc must stretch to fill the gap. The "stretching" creates faults that go all the way down into the earth's mantle. As the Pacific Plate is subducted, the motion creates heat and pressure which drives out water stored in seafloor sediments.

The expelled water then rises through the faults, where it reacts with certain minerals, creating a substance called "serpentine." Serpentine is less dense than water, allowing it to rise through Earth's faults until it reaches the surface and spills onto the seafloor. Over time, the oozing serpentine builds and creates a mud volcano. Mud volcanoes in the Mariana Forearc can measure 18 mi or more in diameter and upwards of 1.24 mi in height.[12]



Source: NOAA

The Mariana Forearc is the only place on Earth known to have active serpentine mud volcanoes. Mud volcanoes are of particular interest to scientists, both for the biological communities that inhabit them, and because they provide a window into processes occurring below the Earth's surface. Sixteen active serpentine volcanoes have been identified, including the South Chamorro and Conical Seamounts that flow with mud containing serpentinized peridotite and dunite rocks, among other minerals, from their summits.[10, 13]

Hydrothermal Vents

Hydrothermal vents of the Mariana Arc occur in both the magmatic arc and backarc provinces. The vents located in the magmatic arc and in the backarc are similar to geothermal hot springs that occur on land, except that they can reach much higher temperatures due to the high pressure in the deep ocean. Marine hydrothermal systems develop as water is forced through cracks in the underlying magmatic system by the high pressure of the overlying ocean. The magmatic system acts as heat source for the water that enters into the cracks. This hot fluid reaches temperatures of up to 750°F, becomes highly buoyant as the temperature rises, and quickly moves back up through available fractures. When the hot fluid (>239°F) escapes from the vent and hits the cold ocean water, it freezes and then precipitates metals that drop to the ocean floor as sulfur balls or "marbles." The mineral-rich fluid remixes with seawater near the vent surface, and forms the basis for diverse chemosynthetic ecosystems discussed in section **3.2 Biological Environment**.

Sulfur marbles, NW Rota volcano. Molten sulfur is ejected into cold seawater, where it solidifies into round drops and falls to the seafloor. Photo: NOAA

Vent Chemistry

During the 2004 Pacific Marine Environmental Laboratory (PMEL) cruise, researchers found extreme cases of magmatic gas pervading the chemical composition of hot vents in the Mariana Arc submarine volcanoes.[14] They observed magmatic sulfur dioxide (SO_2) present in fluids from the erupting vent at NW Rota mixing with seawater within the volcano. Sulfur dioxide gas reacts with water to form sulfuric acid, which is so corrosive it is capable of dissolving the surrounding volcanic rock. Researchers also found hot-spring fluids on NW Rota with a pH of 2.0 or less.[***] This is 10 times more acidic than other sampled values at mid-ocean ridge sites which typically have a pH value of 3.5-4.5. Some of the magmatic arc sites and most of the backarc hydrothermal sites produce sulfide precipitated at high temperatures, the remainder have lower temperature deposits of iron, manganese and sulfur precipitates. Many of the Mariana Trough hydrothermal systems form within linear volcanic systems and feed deep, stable hydrothermal circulation that creates high-temperature reaction zones. In some cases, depending on their location above the subducting Pacific Plate, the vents have higher levels of SO_2 and carbon dioxide (CO_2) which create very acidic environments.[15]

[***] **pH** is a measure of the acidity of an aqueous solution. Solutions with a pH less than 7 are said to be acidic and solutions with a pH greater than 7 are alkaline. Pure water has a pH very close to 7.

The Mariana Magmatic Arc

The volcanic portion of the Mariana Arc, also referred to as the 'magmatic arc', extends from 23° N to 13° N. It spans 620 nmi and includes 9 active island volcanoes and more than 50 active underwater volcanoes, making it one of the most volcanically active places on Earth.[15] The molten interior of the Earth is covered with tectonic plates that are in constant motion. Most volcanoes and earthquakes occur along the boundaries where tectonic plates are colliding or shifting apart.[16] When two plates collide, the subduction process causes the plate being subducted, in this case the Pacific Plate, to partially melt into molten rock. Molten rock is then recycled into the Earth, and is released after it rises back up to the surface as magma, simultaneously creating a chain of volcanoes through which to erupt. The chain of volcanoes in the Mariana Arc mirrors the crescent shape of the Trench because both features result from the same tectonic plate subduction.

From a geological perspective, the Mariana Arc can be divided into three parts: the 'Southern Seamount Province' lies to the west of the older islands of Guam, Rota, Tinian and Saipan; the 'Central Island Province' includes the volcanically active emergent islands from Anatahan to Farallon de Pajaros as well as several seamounts; and the 'Northern Seamount Province' extends north of Farallon de Pajaros encompassing several more seamounts within Monument boundaries.[17] The Mariana region formed at the eastern edge of the Philippine Sea Plate, at which subduction first began about 50 million years ago. The region underwent three stages of island arc volcanism and two stages of breakup. During each phase of breakup, there was a period of cessation of volcanism above sea level. The most recent break-up began approximately 10 million years ago and formed the backarc basin (the "Mariana Trough") west of the Mariana archipelago.[18]

The northern islands in the Mariana archipelago—Farallon de Pajaros, Maug, Asuncion, Argihan, Pagan, Alamagan, Guguan, Sarigan, and Anatahan—were formed in a more recent phase of subduction than islands to the south, and they are no older than 4 million years.[19] These nine northern islands are stratovolcanoes meaning they are active volcanoes composed of alternating layers of lava and ash. Since 1883, six islands have experienced volcanic eruptions, including the islands of Farallon de Pajaros and Asuncion.[20]

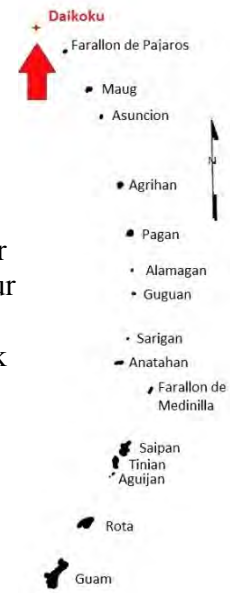
The southernmost islands (Saipan, Rota, Tinian, and Guam) are comprised primarily of thick limestone caps formed by the growth of coral reefs atop volcanic rock over at least several million years. The largest island in the arc is Guam and it exposes some excellent examples of the volcanic underinnings of these islands. The southern end of the island has the oldest volcanic rocks exposed above sea level of all the Mariana islands. These represent remnants of earlier stages of eruption of lavas on the seafloor (the Alutom formation) and some are as old as 44 million years.[18]

The Mariana Trough

The Mariana Trough stretches 800 nmi from north to south between the magmatic arc and the West Mariana Ridge. It is a portion of the ocean floor that is actively spreading. The southernmost portion of the trough, where it converges with the Trench and magmatic arc, is considered the most rapidly deforming part of the IBM arc system.[1]

Basalt, the most common rock found in spreading center troughs, as well as andesite, dacite and rhyolite are found in various mixtures at Fukujin, Daikoku, Maug, Ruby, E. Diamante, Esmerelda, Northwest Rota, and West Rota.[21] The seafloor age of each site is variable, ranging from freshly spilled lava, volcanically active (e.g., NW Rota, Ruby) to volcanically dormant or extinct (e.g., West Rota) with partial or total sediment cover.

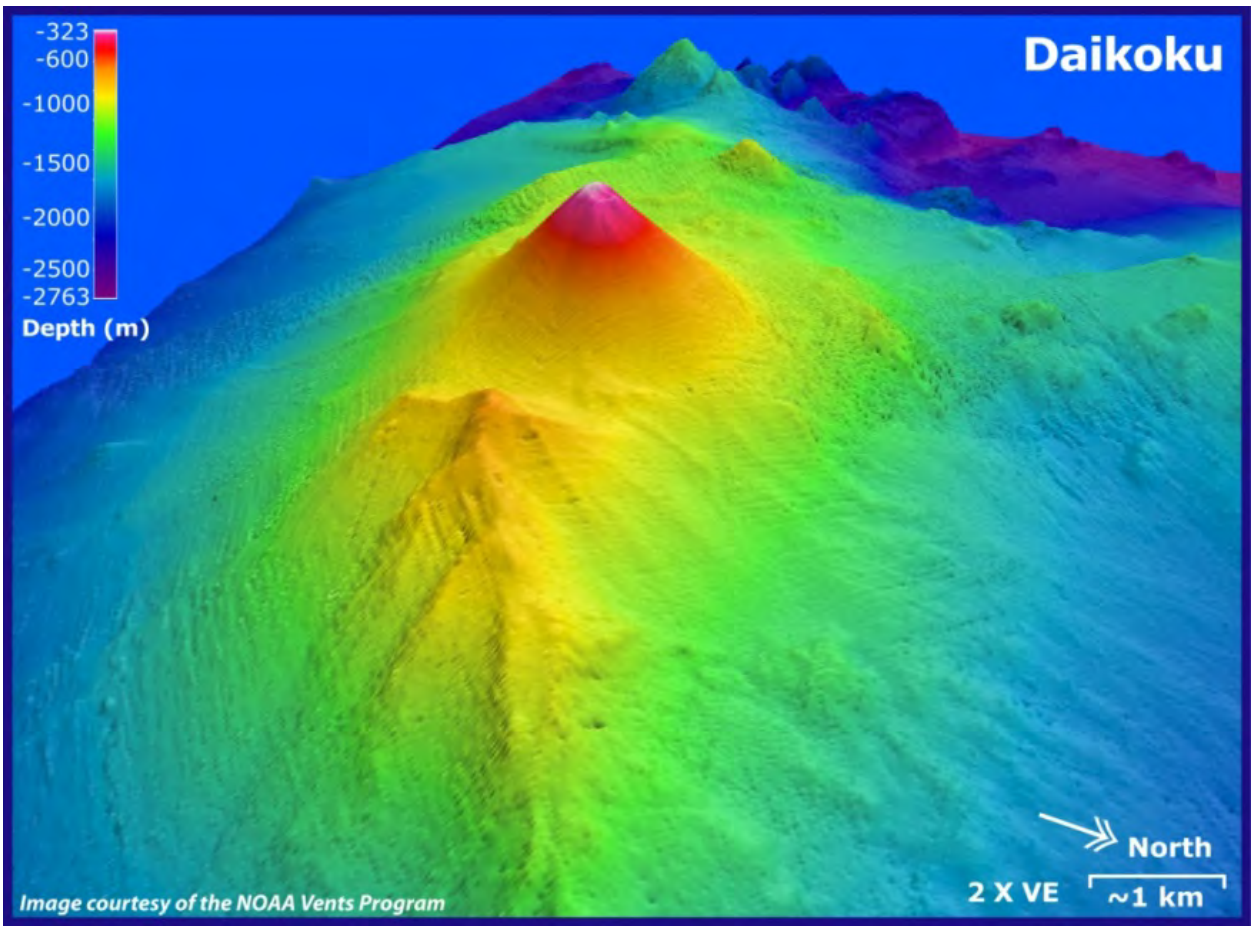
3.1.2 Islands Unit Features



Daikoku 144° 11’39” E, 21° 19’27” N
Summit Elevation: -1059 ft

Daikoku[†††] is an active composite cone volcano on an old caldera characterized by robust magmatic degassing of carbon dioxide and sulfur dioxide from its summit crater and surrounding areas. It is located ~370 nmi north-northwest of Saipan. A liquid sulfur pool, measured at ~356°F was observed at this site in 2006. Particulate sulfur with the appearance of white smoke, CO_2 gas, and liquid sulfur were bubbling up from the back edge of the sulfur pool. [15, 22, 23, 24]

Scientists found evidence that Daikoku was erupting during the 2014 Submarine Ring of Fire expedition. CTD[‡‡‡] tows showed very strong plumes coming from the top of the seamount. The plumes had high turbidity, low pH, strong anomalies in reduced chemicals and very high levels of hydrogen–a strong indicator of a submarine eruption. When Daikoku was surveyed with multi-beam sonar, a large new crater 500 ft across and 330 ft deep was found at the summit of the cone.



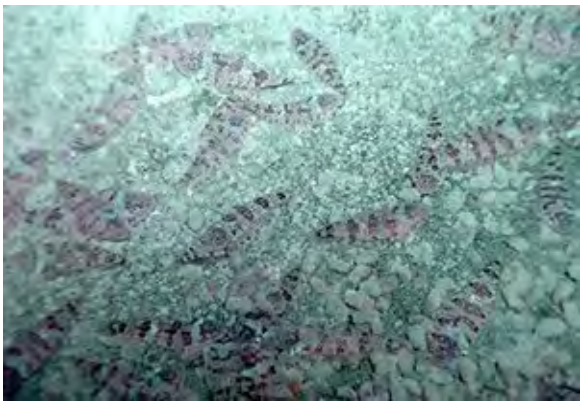
Daikoku bathymetry. Image: NOAA

[†††] Daikoku was named by Japanese fishermen for the god of earth, agriculture, farmers, the kitchen, & wealth.
[‡‡‡] “CTD” is an instrument package with sensors for measuring the conductivity, temperature and depth of seawater.

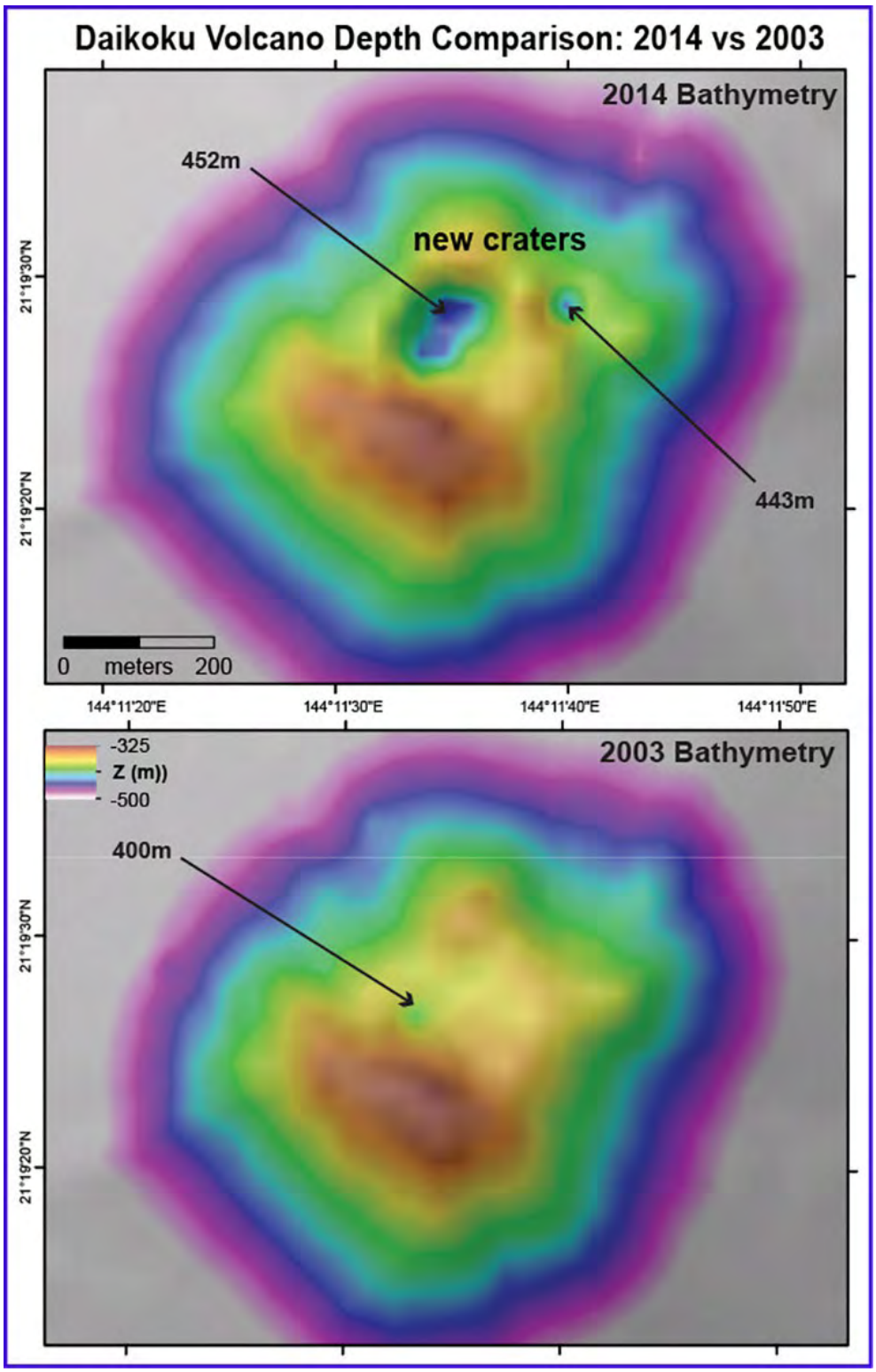
The *Okeanos Explorer* crew sent the ROV *Deep Discoverer* (*D2*) down to Daikoku in June 2016 to investigate the 2014 eruption and assess its impacts on the local ecosystem. The seafloor and slope of the seamount were covered with volcanic ash and volcaniclastics. Tube worms and anemones were observed, as well as a high density of flat fish specialized in living on the sulfur-rich ground. Plumes of likely carbon dioxide gas and sulfur were emanating from cracks and holes near the crater rim and along the lower wall of the crater.

As *D2* moved around the crater rim; barnacles, anemones, and tubeworms were documented. The bottom of the crater showed active venting, angular cobbles and boulders, and some irregular-shaped pieces of solid sulfur. Water column transects were conducted at the conclusion of the benthic exploration. Fauna observed during these transects included larvaceans, siphonophores, amphipods, and shrimp. Throughout the dive, *D2* encountered thick volcanic smoke and particulate material in the water column, supporting the hypothesis of recent activity in this area.

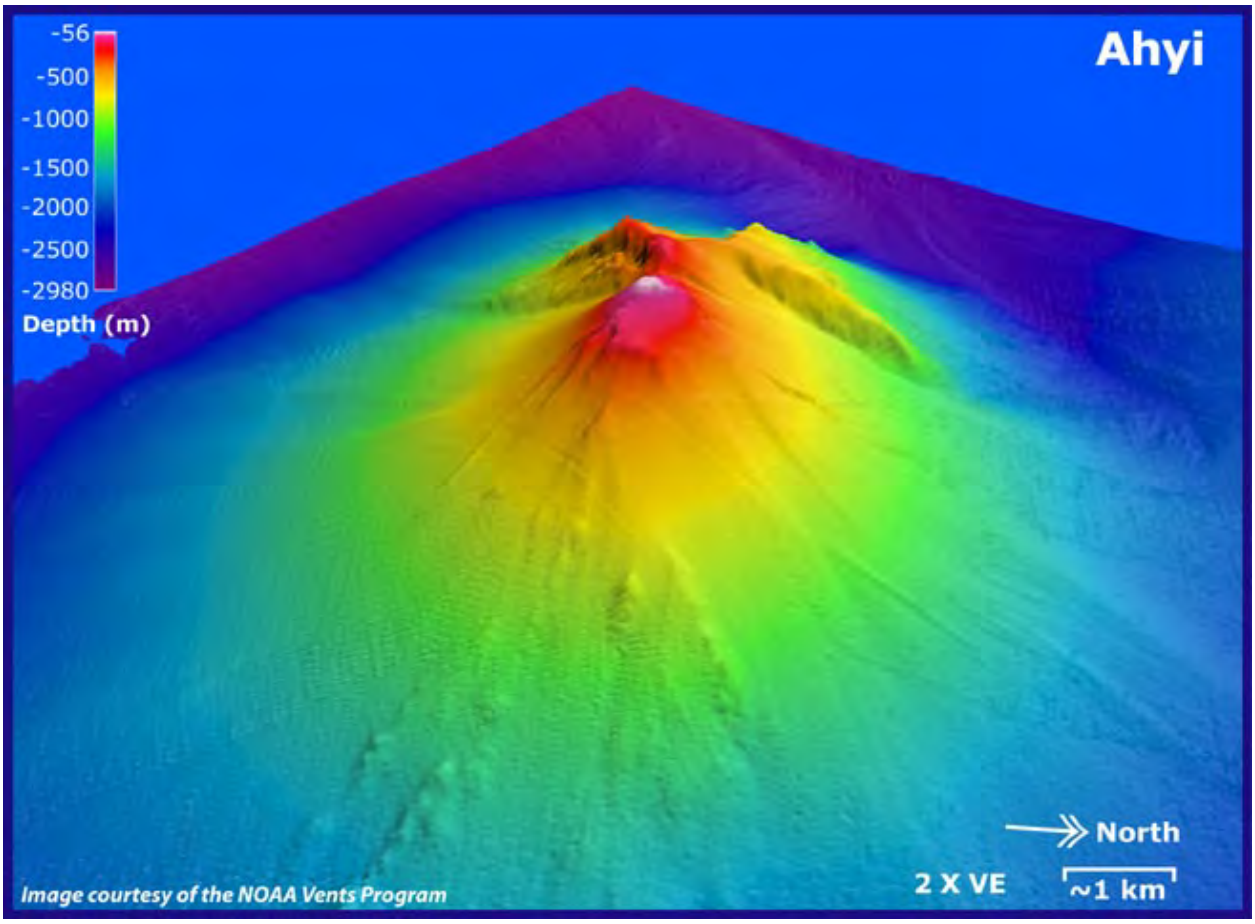
A pond of molten sulfur roils in the bottom of a small crater at Daikoku. Photo: NOAA



A new species of vent-endemic flatfish was discovered living at Daikoku seamount in 2004. Photo: NOAA

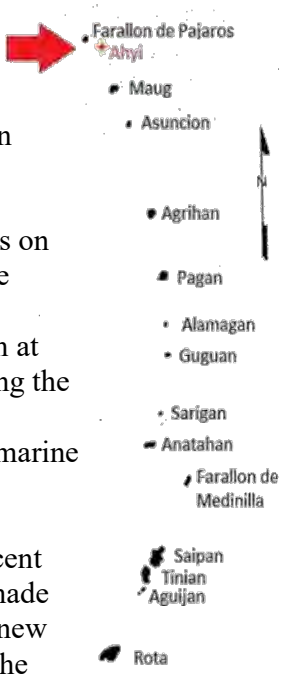


Bathymetric comparison of data collected at Daikoku in 2014 (top) and in 2003 (bottom). A large crater formed at the summit, and it was confirmed to be hydrothermally (and possibly volcanically) active. Image: NSF/NOAA.



Ahyi bathymetry. Image: NOAA

Ahyi 145° 1'45" E, 29° 26'15" N Summit Elevation: -200 ft



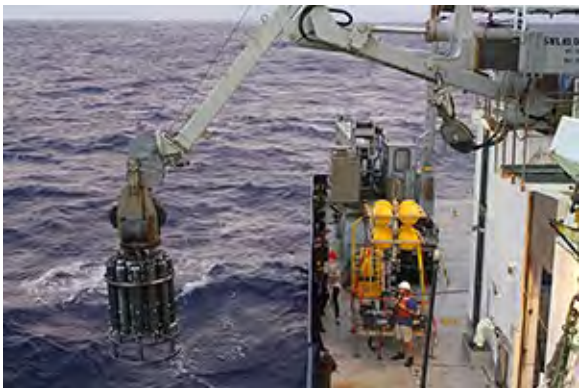
Ahyi is a young, very shallow, active cone volcano about 11 nmi southeast of Farallon de Pajaros. The summit rises to just 200 ft below the surface.[25] Water discoloration has been observed over the seamount associated with previous eruptive activity, and an explosive eruption was seismically detected in April 2001.

The most recent seismic activity began on April 24, 2014, when seismic stations on Pagan, Sarigan, Anatahan, and Saipan all began recording signals believed to be from an undersea volcano. Hydroacoustic sensors at Wake Atoll suggested that the source was at or near the Ahyi seamount. NOAA divers conducting research at Farallon de Pajaros at the same time reported hearing loud explosions and feeling the shock waves. One of the more powerful explosions was felt by the crew as it reverberated through the hull of the ship. The seismic activity indicative of submarine explosions at Ahyi seamount ended on May 17, 2014.

Repeat mapping with multi-beam sonar showed changes associated with the recent eruptive activity on the summit and south flank. The *Okeanos Explorer* crew made one ROV dive at Ahyi in June 2016 to investigate hydrothermal vents near the new crater formed in 2014 and the marine life in the area surrounding the summit. The

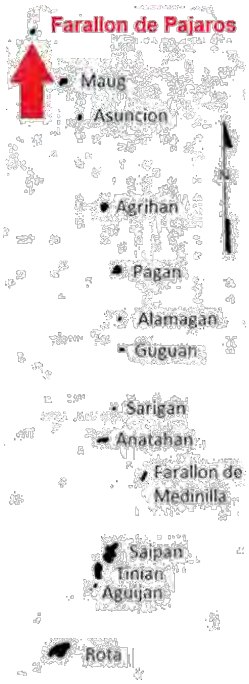
goals of this dive were to explore and characterize any evidence of change since the last eruption, sample any new lava, and assess the impacts of the eruption on the local marine ecosystem.[26]

The exploration started at a depth of 1,175 ft and found mostly fragmental material thrown out by the volcano; white sulfur mats and yellow iron mats; animals associated with hydrothermal vent environments, suggesting a vent may be nearby; and massive cliffs that form the seamounts. Interesting animal sightings included two octopuses moving across the seafloor; a deep-water sand tiger shark; a snake mackerel (a new record of occurrence in the Marianas); a cusk eel; a duckbill; a flatfish; and a colony of shrimp. Sessile organisms encountered included benthic ctenophores, a rare anemone, and a sea slug.[26]



A CTD instrument package is launched over the side of the ship to search for hydrothermal plumes at Ahyi Seamount. Photo: NOAA

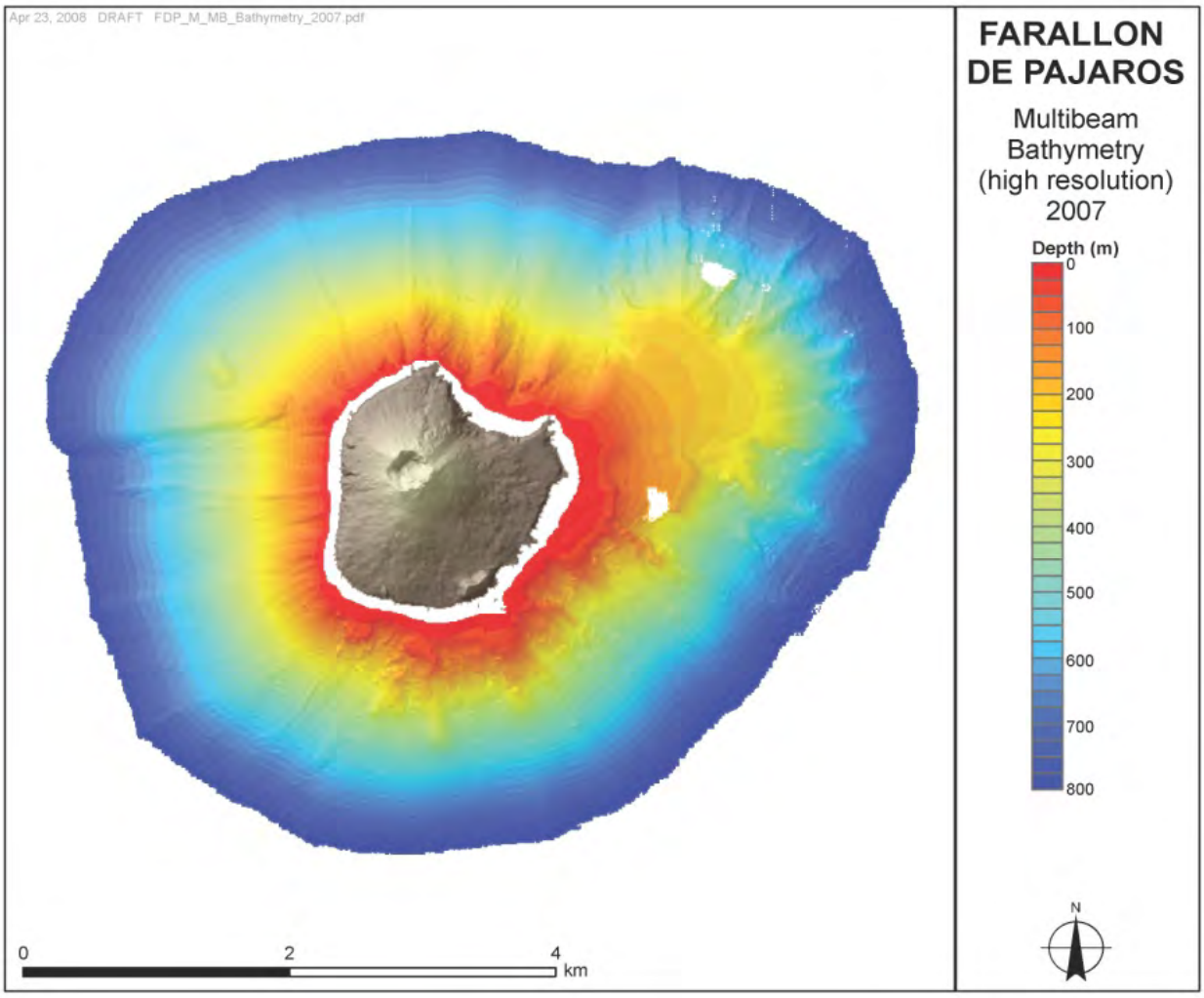
A curious octopus greets the ROV at Ahyi Seamount. Photo: NOAA



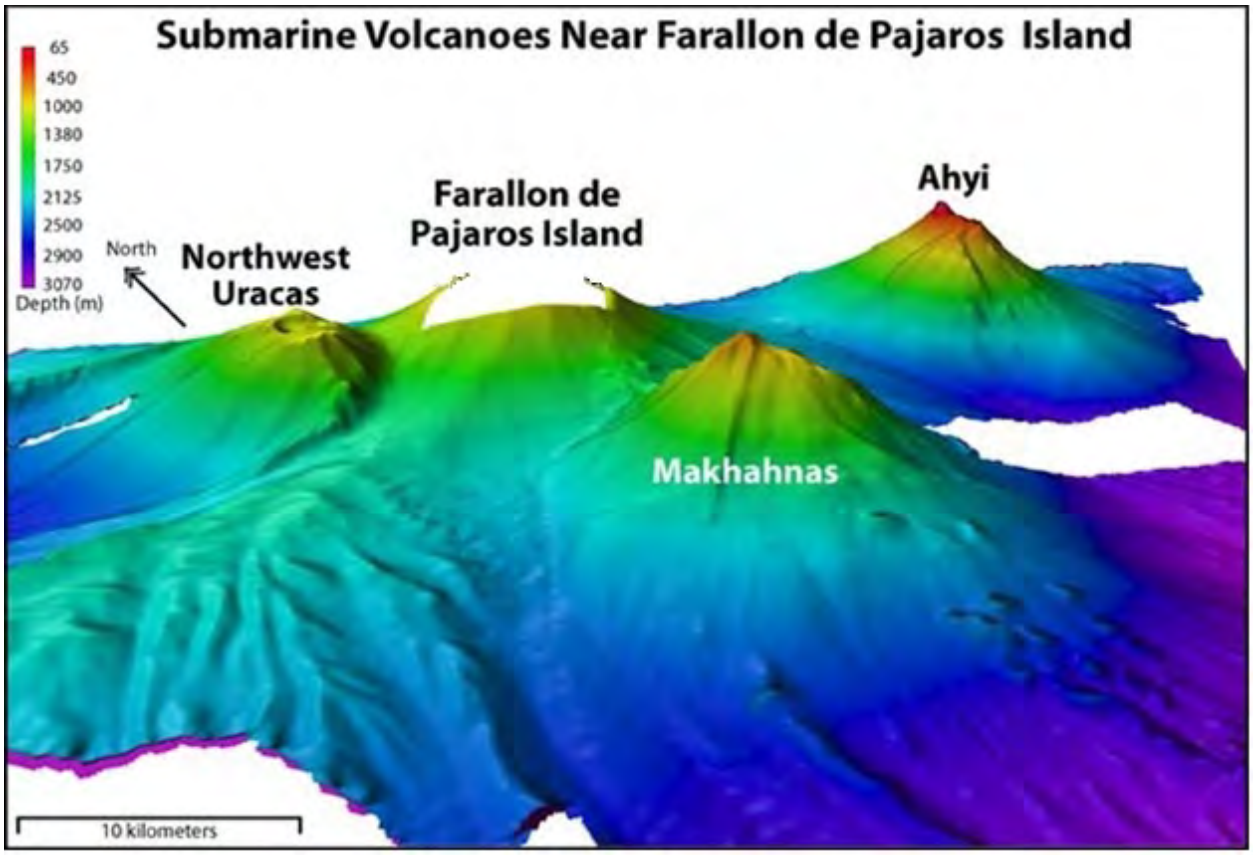
Farallon de Pajaros 144° 54’ E, 20° 31’ N
Summit Elevation: 1180 ft

Farallon de Pajaros is an island with a high volcanic cone located 315 nmi north of Saipan. The island is 1.2 mi long and 1 mi wide, with an area of about 1 mi^2. Farallon de Pajaros earned the nickname the “Lighthouse of the Western Pacific” for being the most active volcanic island in the Mariana archipelago, having erupted at least 16 times since 1864, most recently in 1978.[27] The island’s steep slopes formed by frequent lava and ash flows.

The symmetrical summit is formed by a central cone within a small caldera cutting an older edifice, remnants of which are seen on the southeast and southern sides near the coast. Lava poured not only from the summit, but also from fissures on the volcano flanks, which created platforms along the coast. Both summit and flank vents have been active at Farallon de Pajaros in recent history and much of the island is covered in lava, cinders, and ash.



Farallon de Pajaros bathymetry. Image: NOAA



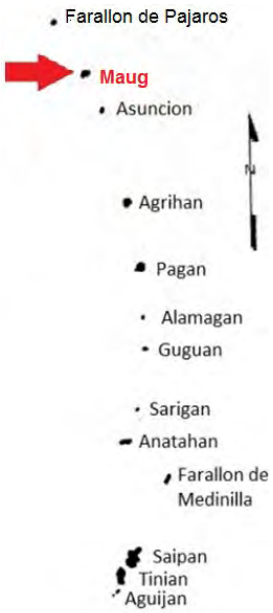
Bathymetry of the three submarine volcanoes around Farallon de Pajaros Island. The data were collected using the EM300 multibeam system mounted on the hull of the R/V Thompson. The image is 2 times vertically exaggerated. Image: NOAA

Monitoring volcanic activity on Farallon de Pajaros is difficult, given the island's remote location. USGS researchers reported "*vigorous fuming*" during a 1994 overflight, but no eruptive activity. Similar observations were made by volcanologists from the University of California during a 2009 visit.[28] Bathymetric data indicates the steep slopes of Farallon de Parajos continue into the submarine zone, over 1 mile deep. Ridges radiate perpendicular to the island, with few flat areas. Shelf areas occur at 30-130 ft and approximately at 500, 800, and 1000 ft depths. Ridges and channels descend from the steep shelf slopes.

Coral community on the slopes of Farallon de Pajaros. Photo: NOAA

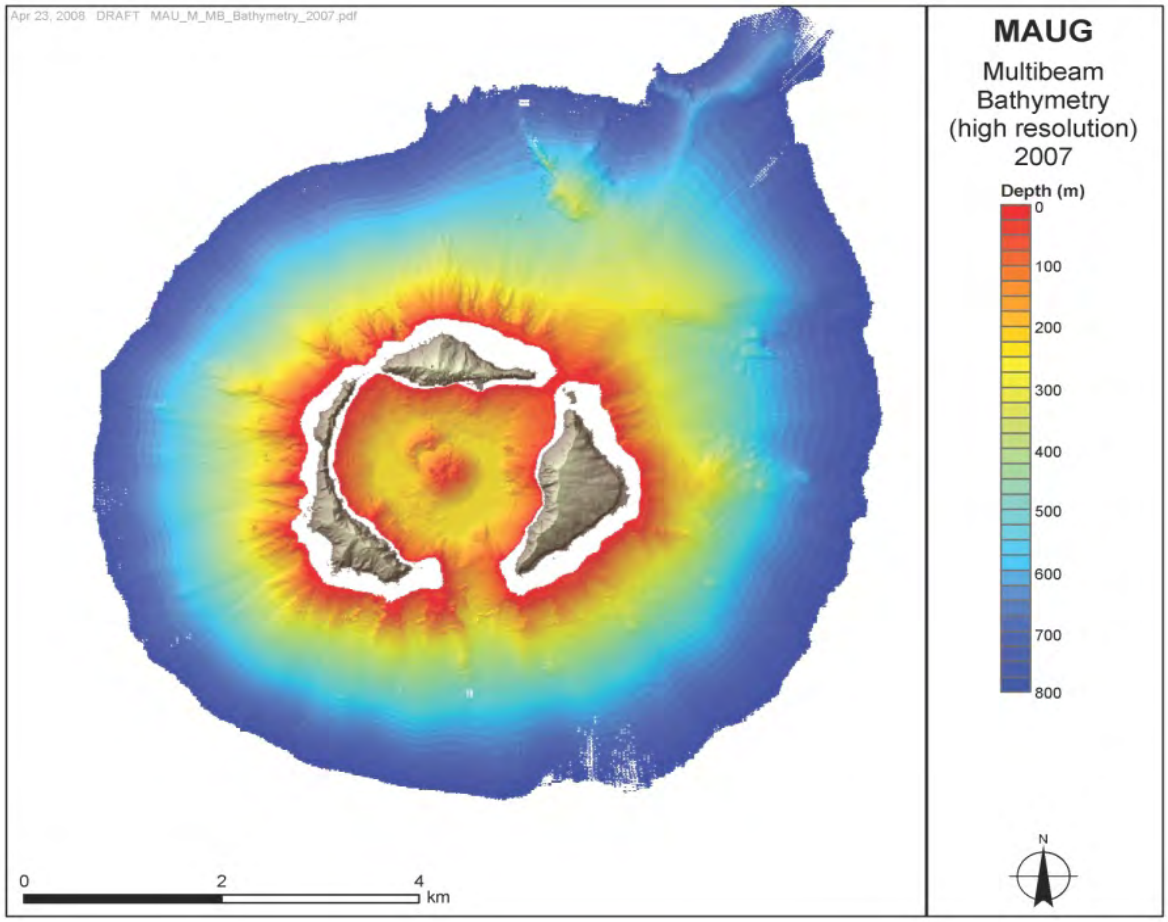
NOAA Ship Hi'ialakai at Farallon de Pajaros in 2007. Photo: R. Schroeder/NOAA

Maug 145° 13'E, 20° 2'N Summit Elevation: 744 ft



Maug is located 329 nmi north of Saipan and consists of three steep-sided, exposed islets separated by shallow-water channels. The islets are the above sea level remnants of the circular rim of what is now a largely submerged caldera at the center. The islets are individually named and go by English and Japanese names: "North" or "Kita-shima"; "East" or "Higashi-shima"; and "West" or "Nishi-shima". The three islets have a total area of approximately 0.8 mi^2. The outer shore of the three islets' diameter is 2.1 mi while the inner diameter of the submerged caldera is approximately 1.4 mi.

A caldera is formed when a volcano collapses inward after an eruption, resulting in a bowl-shaped depression at the top of a volcano. In the case of Maug, the caldera depression is flooded by sea water, creating the illusion of separate land masses above sea level. Maug's caldera-islet structure is unique in the Mariana Islands. Each islet remnant has steep cliffs made of columnar basalt. A submerged coral limestone terrace occurs at 82 ft below sea level off West Island. Inside the submerged caldera are extensive coral reefs along the shorelines and on a conical dome at the center of the depression.

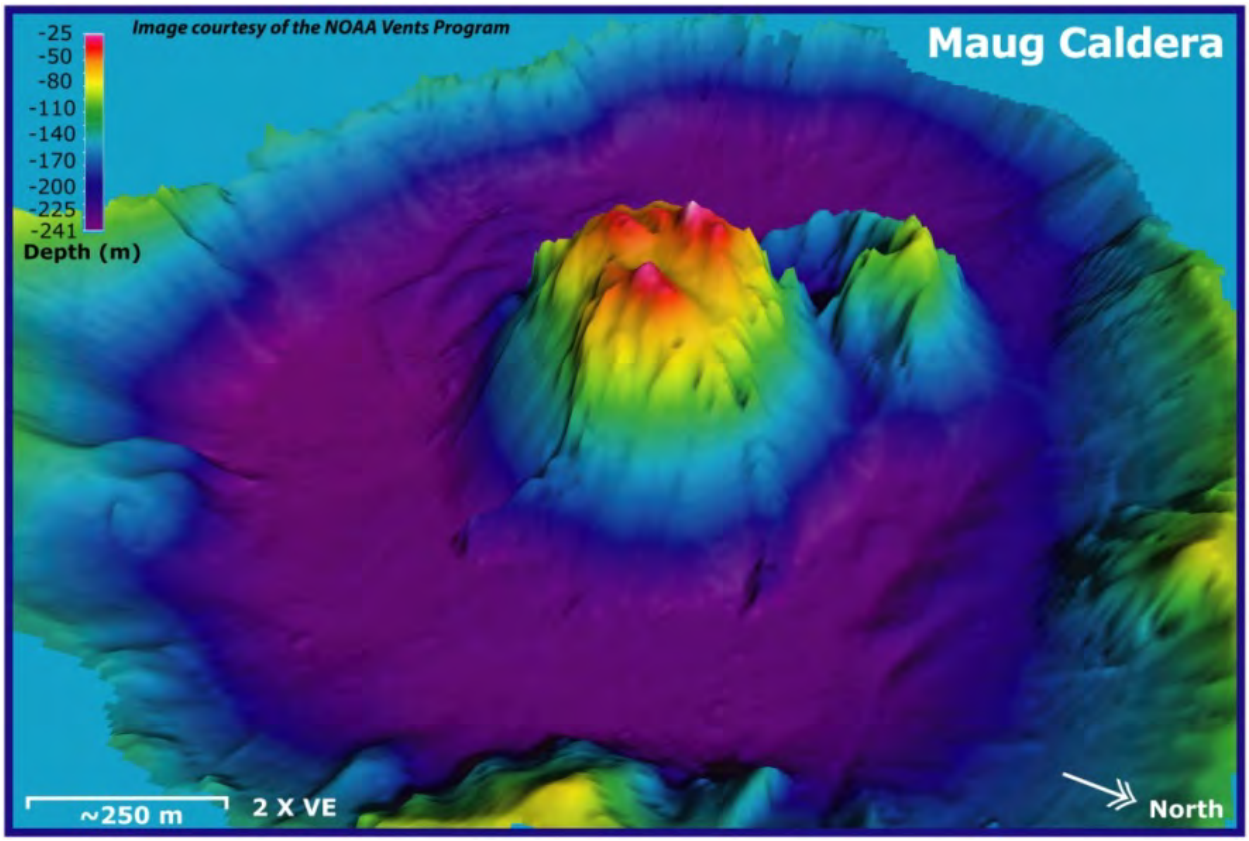


Maug bathymetry. Image: NOAA

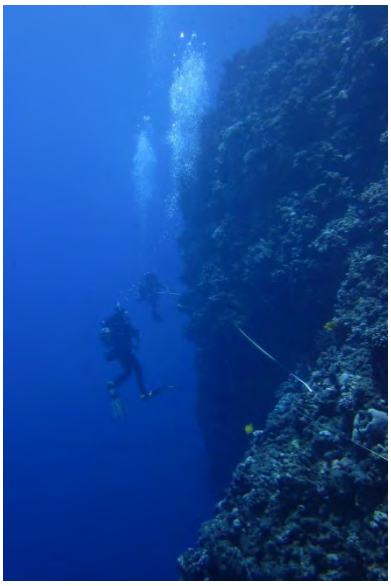
Gas bubbles rising from Maug crater. Image: NOAA

Volcanic eruptions have not been recorded for Maug since the first Western sighting of the islands by Espinosa in 1522 and recent USGS overflights have not observed geothermal activity above the ocean surface. However, NOAA expeditions have discovered hydrothermal venting on the dacite dome in the center of the caldera and along the inner shoreline of the eastern island. Those hydrothermal vents release CO_2 bubbles, which creates acidic waters in the immediate vicinity of the vents (e.g., a pH of 6.07 has been measured near the vents, versus 8.13 for the surrounding region).

Fluids exiting the seafloor at the hydrothermal vents had temperatures of 60-93°F during the *Hi'ialakai* expedition in May 2014. The coral reefs in the immediate vicinity of the hydrothermal vents and CO_2 emissions are adversely affected by the locally acidified conditions, but the surrounding areas have healthy coral cover ranging from 67-100%. This makes Maug a valuable natural laboratory for the study of ocean acidification on coral reef ecosystems. Water temperature at the vent site was 60-93°F above the surrounding subsurface water temperature.[28, 29, 30]

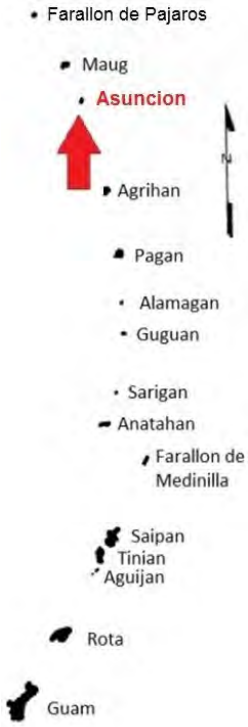


Maug Caldera bathymetry. Image: NOAA



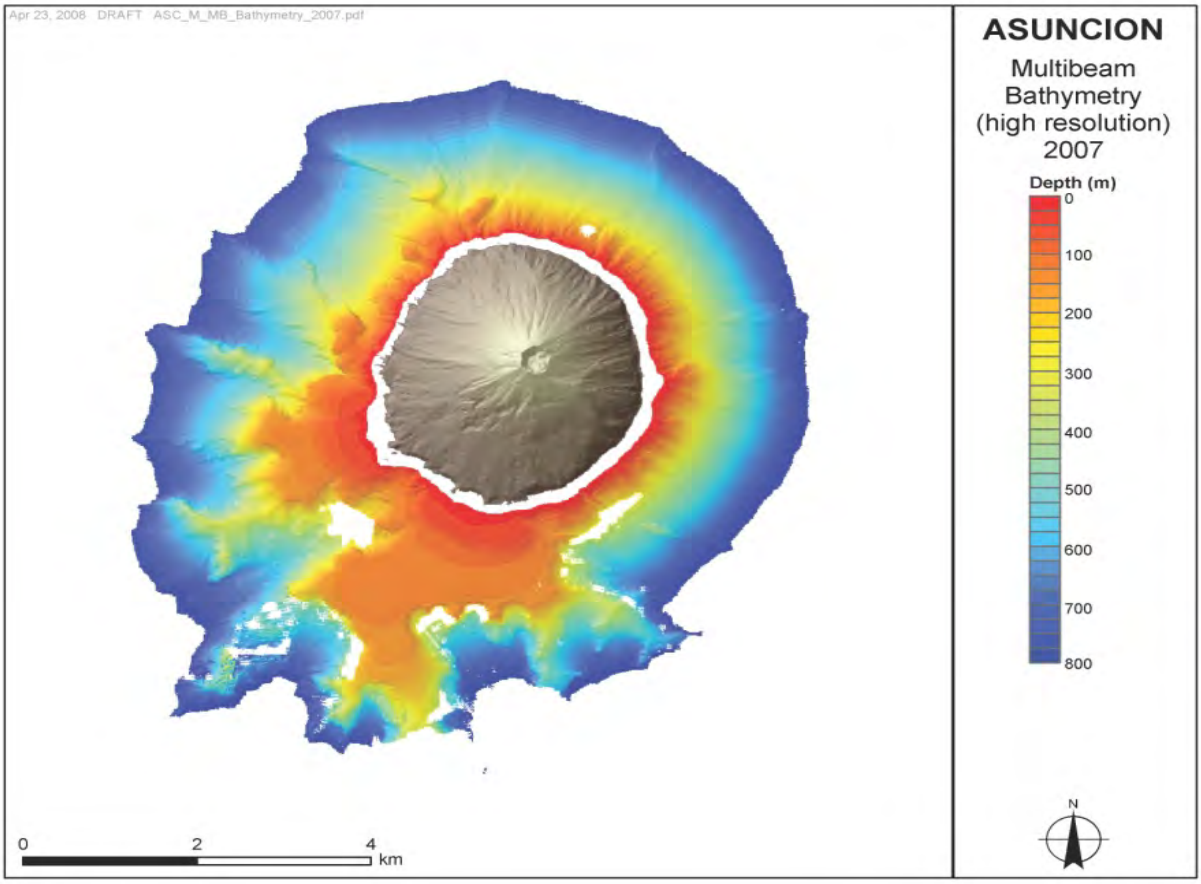
Vertical benthic REA site at Asuncion. Photo: Russell Reardon/NOAA

Asuncion 145° 14' E, 19° 41' N
Summit Elevation: 2812 ft



Asuncion is a high volcanic cone island 300 nmi north of Saipan, with an area of 2.8 mi^2. Erosion and landslides have carved into Asuncion, producing gentle slopes on the southwestern side and steep cliffs on the northeastern side. Steep flanks consisting of several terraces, broken with ridges and channels continue into the ocean to depths of about 1.4 mi. Asuncion had a confirmed minor eruption in the 1920s, preceded by a major eruption in 1906.[27, 28]

White gas plumes occasionally emerge from the top and the slopes of Asuncion. Low-level activity was observed by volcanologists in 1992 by the appearance of active fumaroles (volcanic gas vents). In 1995, USGS overflights were able to document steam rising from the summit. Several other unverified eruptions have been reported. Asuncion and Maug are connected by a deep, underwater plateau.



Asuncion bathymetry. Image: NOAA

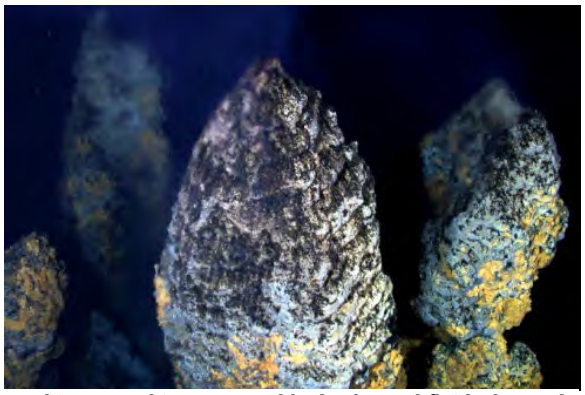
3.1.3 Volcanic Unit/Arc of Fire Refuge Features

The Volcanic Unit/Arc of Fire Refuge is comprised of the submerged lands extending in a 1 nmi circle surrounding 18 hydrothermally active seamounts and vent sites in the Mariana Trough (backarc spreading center). Rare phenomena within this unit include:

- The Champagne Vent – a hydrothermal vent field located at the Northwest Eifuku submarine volcano that emits droplets of liquid carbon dioxide at about a mile deep.
- NW Rota – where the first underwater eruption was observed in 2004.
- East Diamante caldera – the site of the shallowest 'black smoker'.[§§§]

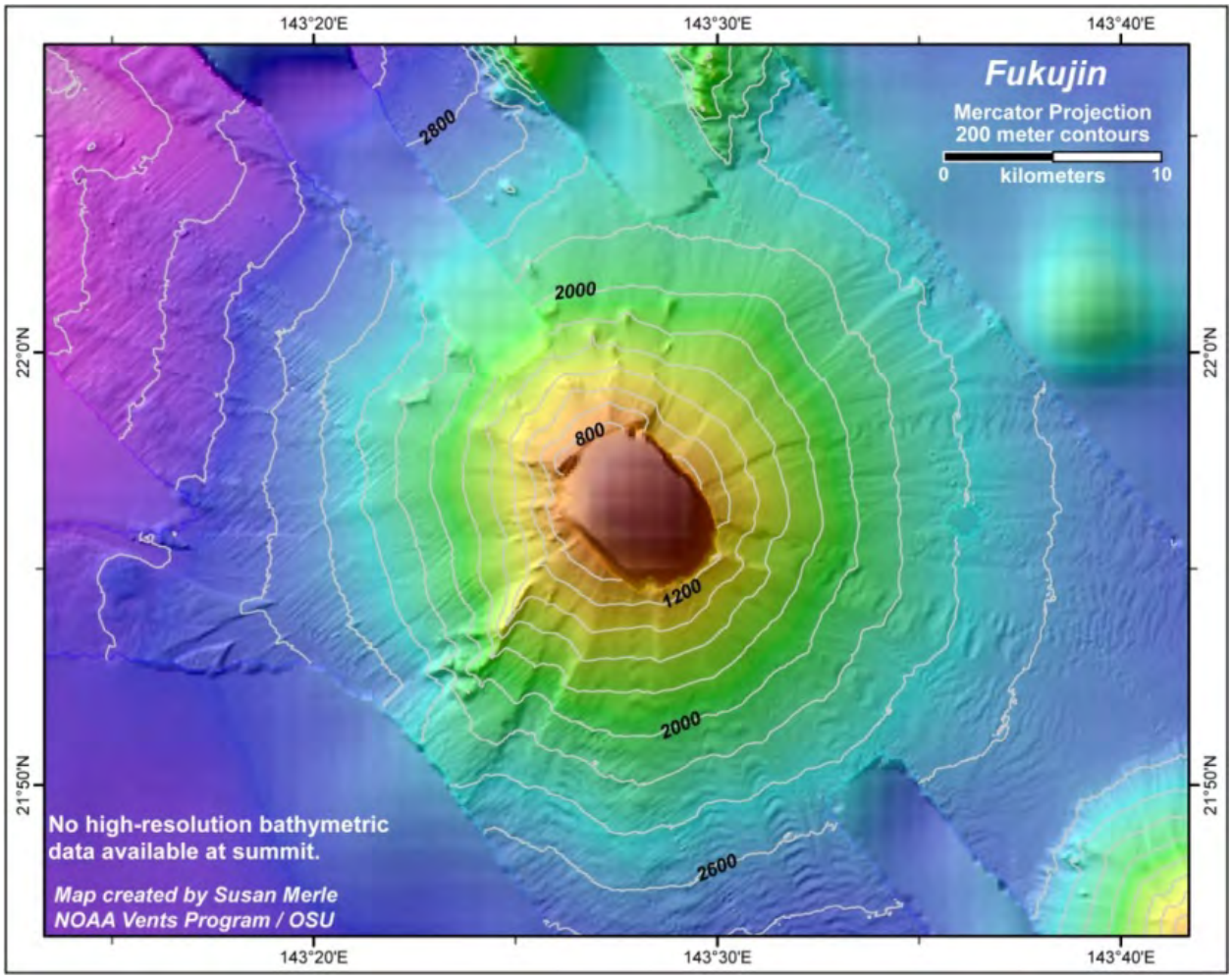
To date, more than 50 seamounts have been identified in the region. All of them are either active (within the past 50 years), dormant (no historic activity known) or extinct (deeply dissected and sometimes with limestone caps) submarine volcanoes. The depth of these seamounts and backarc sites range from 164 ft to more than 1.8 mi below sea level. The 18 features included in the Volcanic Unit/Arc of Fire Refuge and their geographic coordinates are listed as follows from north to south. Brief descriptions of each are provided and expanded from Embley et al, 2007, with permission. Variability over time in the volcanic and hydrothermal activity is an intriguing aspect of each of the Monument's units. Eruptions and seismic activity affect the temperature and chemistry of hydrothermal sites, which in turn affect the specialized ecosystems living on them. Monitoring these sites and learning from the gathered data about interactions between biotic and abiotic conditions is an important priority for future research within the Monument.

Multi-beam sonar mapping conducted during NOAA's Submarine Ring of Fire cruises produced bathymetric data on 17 maps that show 19 of the 21 submarine features within the Volcanic Unit/ Arc of Fire Refuge and Islands Unit. Bathymetric data for Alice Springs and the Central Trough is currently unavailable. The 17 bathymetry maps are mostly based on EM300 bathymetry data at 30m resolution, overlaid on satellite altimetry data, although some 3-D images are used: note that images with features in profile are two times vertically exaggerated. United States customary units of measure are used in this document, however, many of the scientific images retain the original metric system of measurement.



Beehive-type chimneys expel hydrothermal fluids that make 'smoke' upon mixing with the surrounding seawater. Photo: NOAA

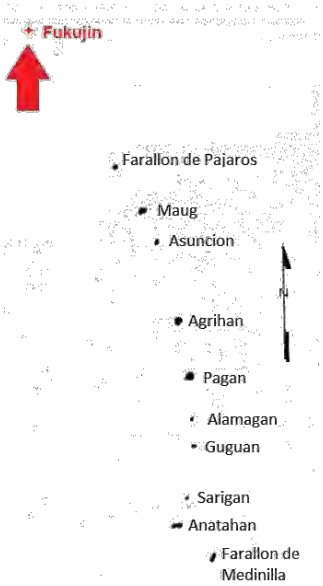
[§§§] 'Black smokers' are chimneys formed from deposits of iron sulfide, which is black and emits black smoke. Likewise, 'white smokers' are chimneys formed from deposits of barium, calcium, and silicon, which are white and produce white smoke.



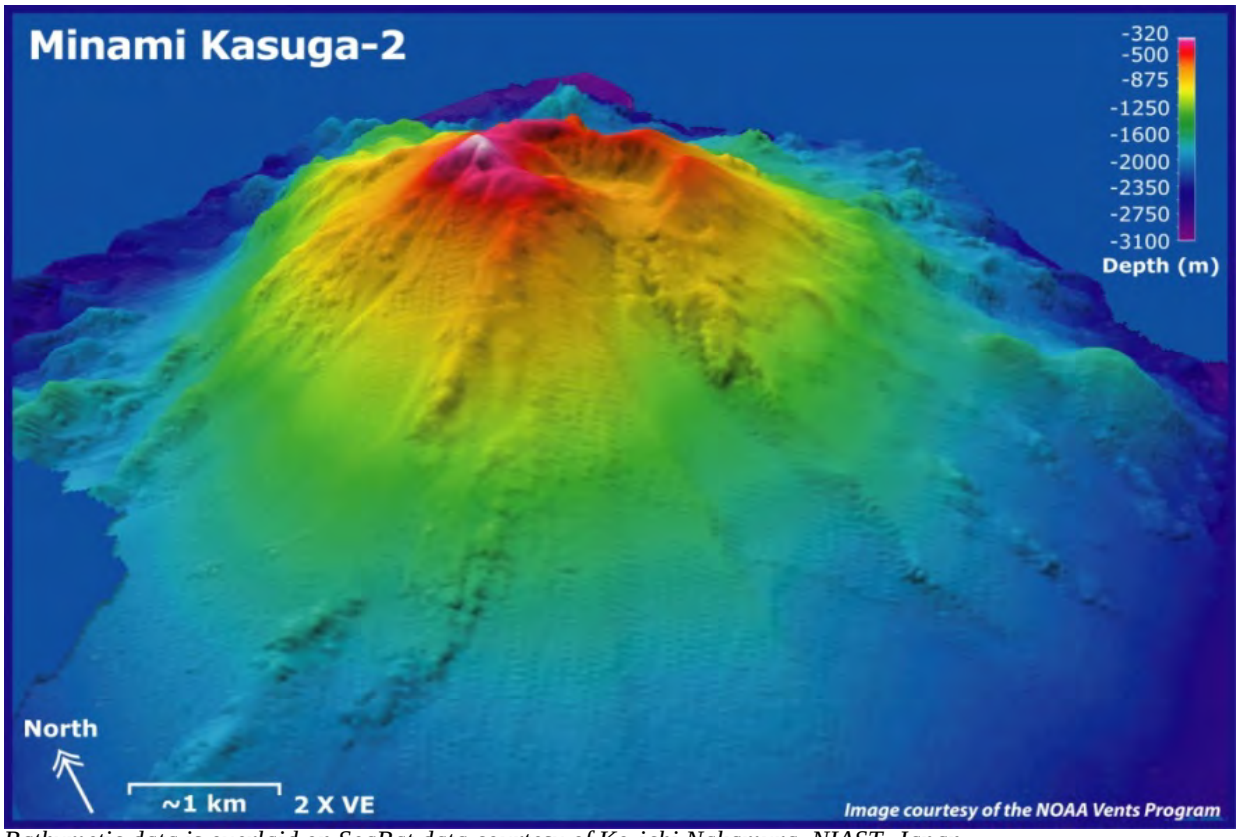
Fukujin bathymetry. Image: NOAA

Fukujin 143° 27'30" E, 21° 56'30" N **** Summit Elevation: -712 ft

A large, shallow volcano, Fukujin seamount has risen on occasion to just beneath the sea surface. Intermittent periods of water discoloration have been observed since the mid-20th century, and eruptions producing floating pumice were noted on several occasions during the 2003 Submarine Ring of Fire expedition. It has a cone-shaped morphology and contains andesite and basaltic-andesite rock types.



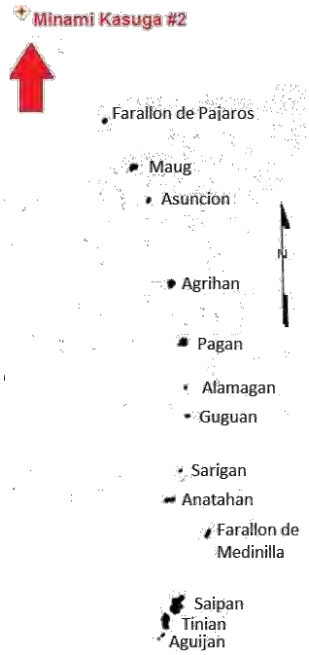
**** Positions given are the center of the 1 nmi circle that encompasses the vent site and defines the Monument boundary for that feature.



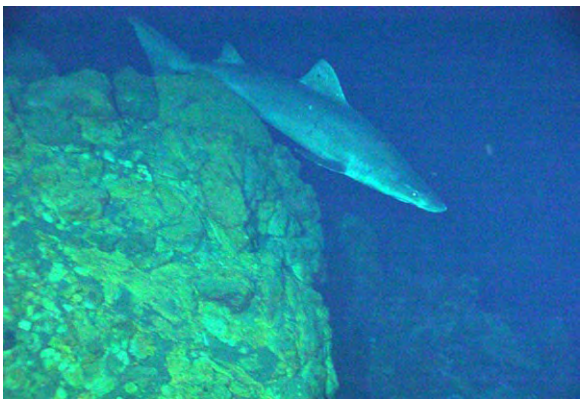
Bathymetic data is overlaid on SeaBat data courtesy of Ko-ichi Nakamura, NIAST, Japan.

Minami Kasuga 2 43° 38'30" E, 21° 36'36" N Summit Elevation: -567 ft

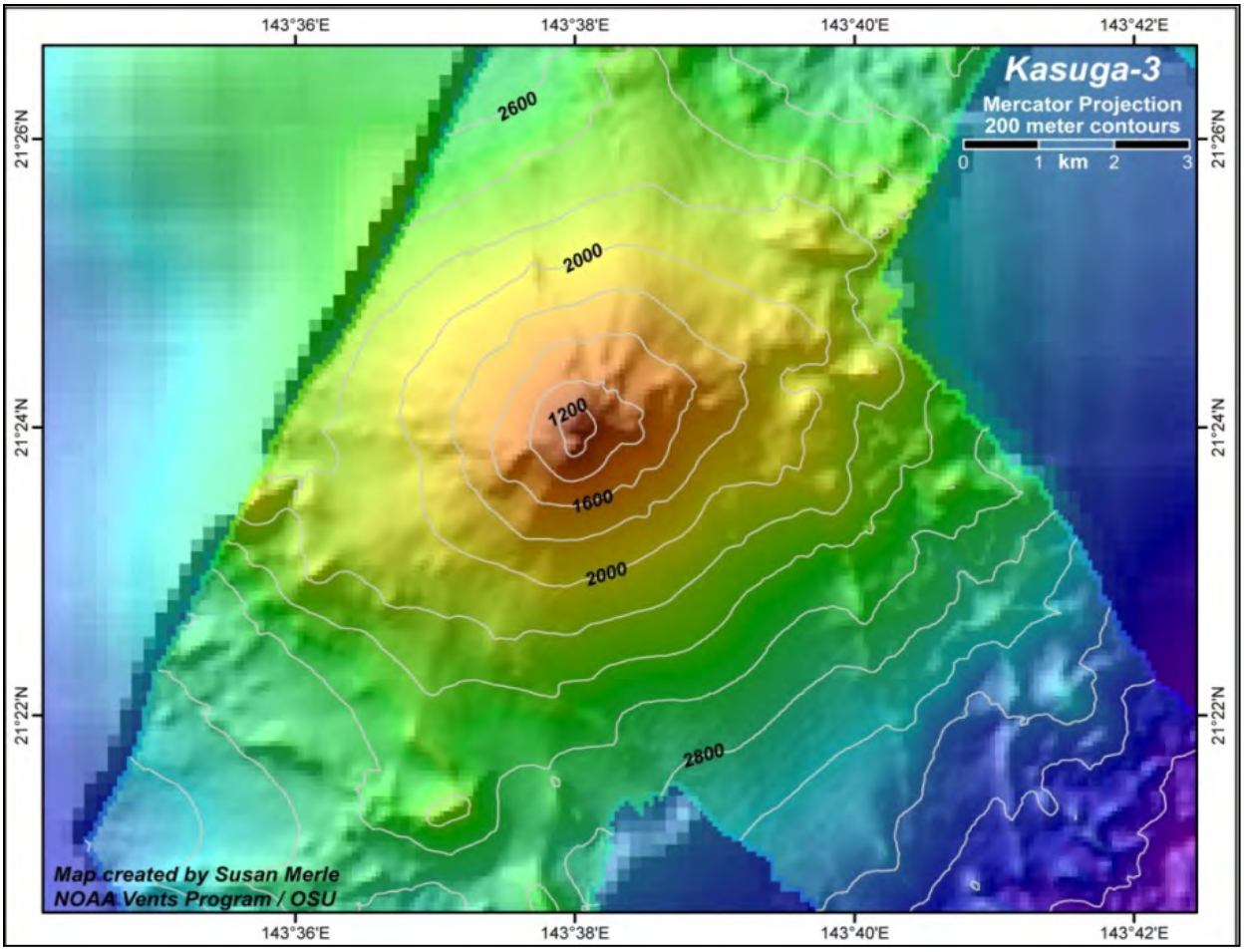
Minami Kasuga 2 submarine volcano is seen in this bathymetric view, with two times vertical exaggeration. Its highest cone rises to within 567 ft of the sea surface. Two vent subsidiary cones are located low on the eastern flank. Active hydrothermal fields are located at the summit caldera, at the base of summit ridges, and on the lower flanks. Heavily eroded, the vents were discovered in 1987[30] and revisited by PMEL in 2004.



Radionuclide decay rates indicate an age for Minami Kasuga 2 of less than 8000 years and probably less than 1000 years. Radium/thorium disequilibrium ratios suggest the flows may be only a few centuries old.[31] Rock types found include: basalt/picro-basalt; andesite/basaltic-andesite; and trachyandesite/ basaltic-trachyandesite.



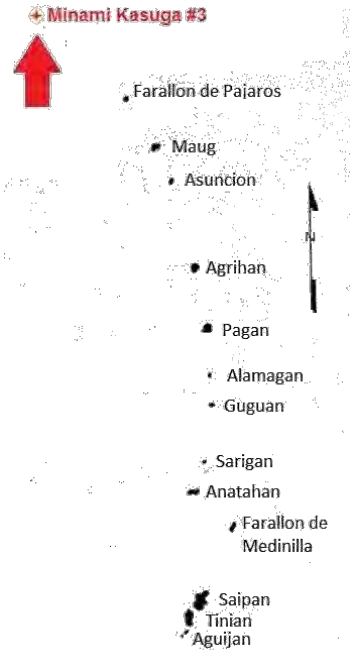
A smalltooth sand tiger at a hydrothermal vent on the Minami Kasuga 2 submarine volcano. Photo: NOAA



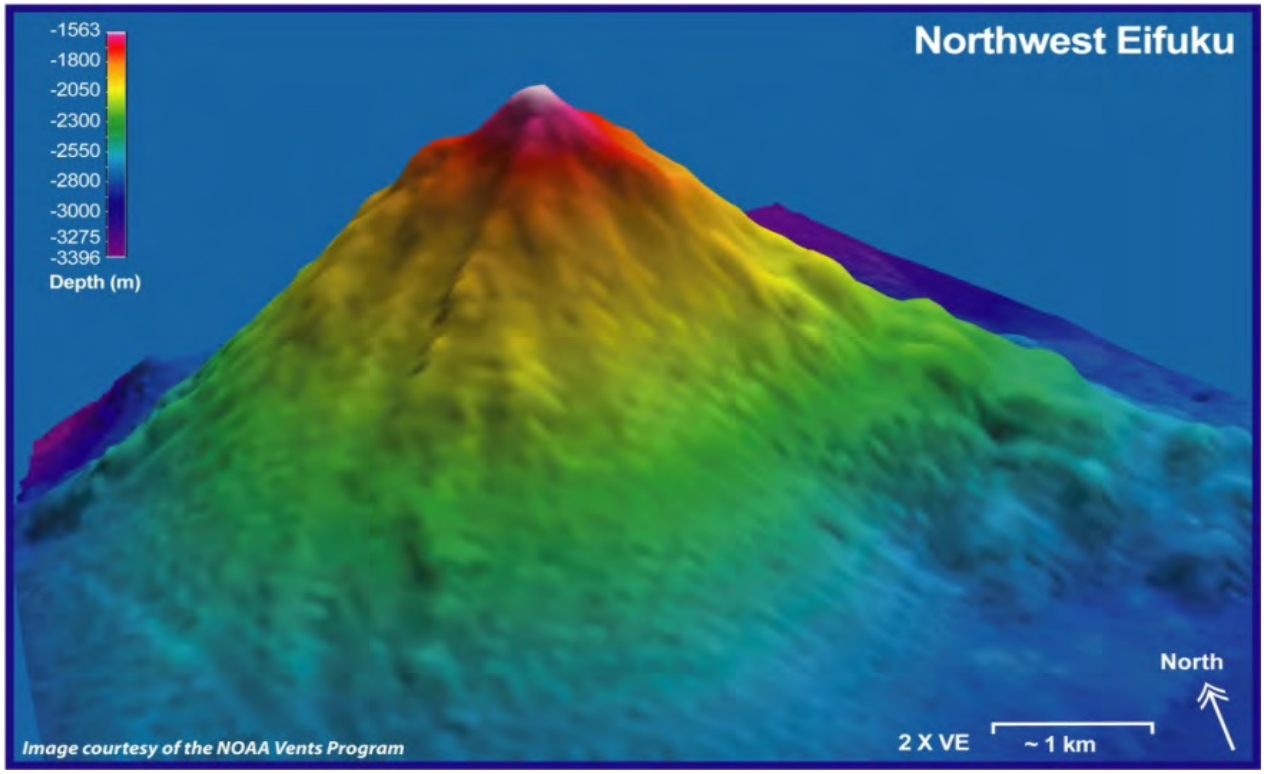
Minami Kasuga 3 bathymetry. Image: NOAA

Minami Kasuga 3 143° 38'0" E, 21° 24'0" N Summit Elevation: -3675 ft

Minami Kasuga 3 is the smallest and most southwesterly member of the Kasuga cross chain. It has a cone-shaped morphology and contains basalt rock types. A diffuse hydrothermal vent was discovered there in 1987 on a DSRV *Alvin* submersible dive.[31] Warm hydrothermal fluids were recovered from the summit areas of both seamounts Minami Kasuga 2 and 3, as well as hydrothermal deposits of elemental sulfur, iron- and manganese-oxides, and nontronite. Fluid collected from Minami Kasuga 3 is compositionally close to ambient seawater and shows possible evidence of both high- and low-temperature seawater-rock reaction (48.7°F).



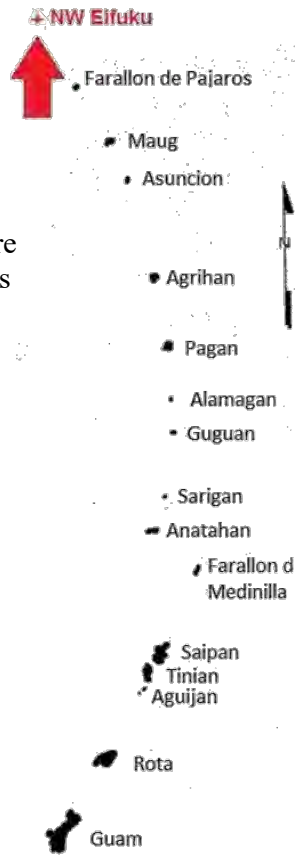
The site was revisited by the PMEL Submarine Ring of Fire 2003 and 2004 cruises. These latter visits could not confirm historical hydrothermal activity at Minami Kasuga 3.



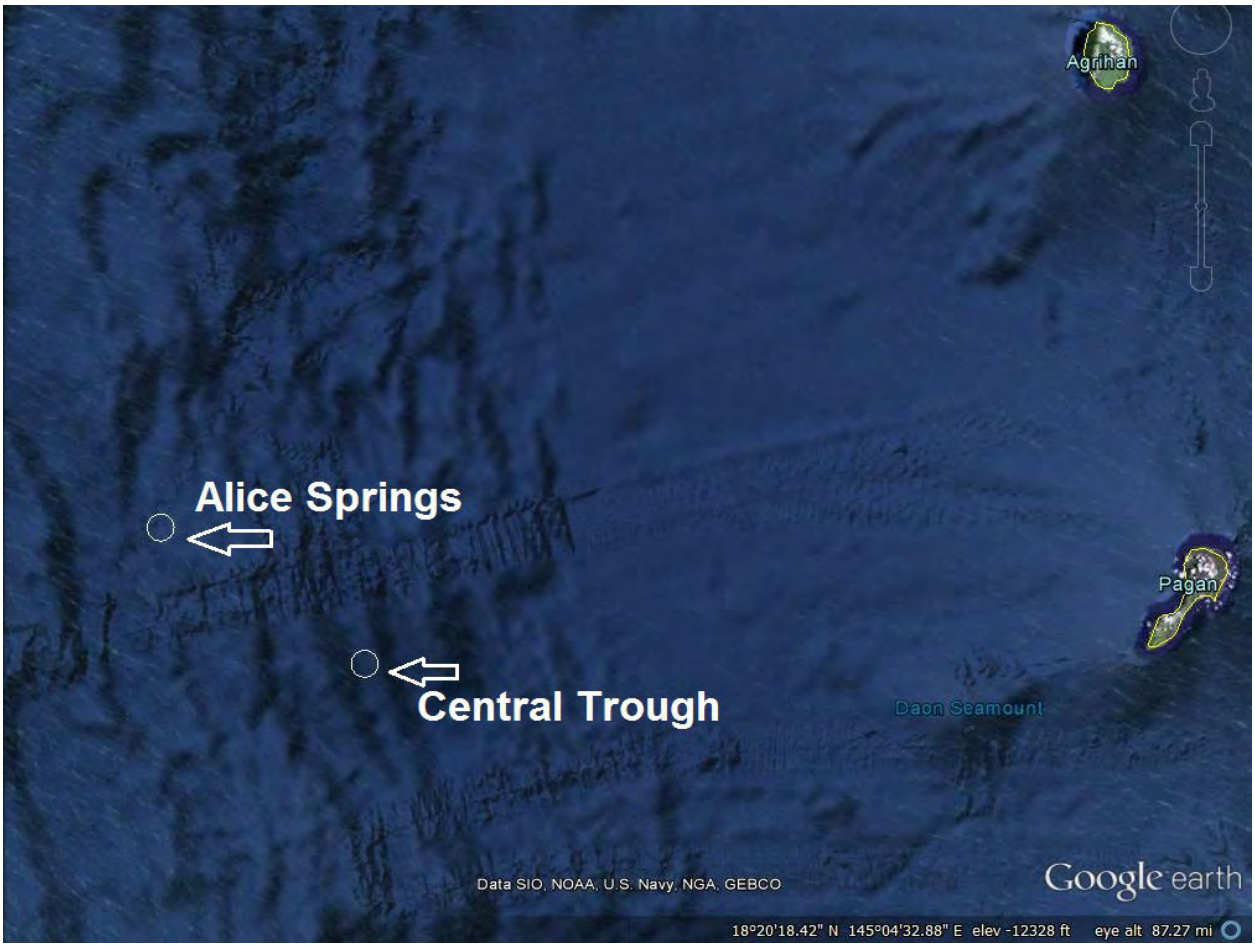
FNW Eifuku bathymetry. Image: NOAA

Northwest Eifuku 144° 2'36" E, 21° 29'15" N Summit Elevation: -5035 f t

Northwest (NW) Eifuku is a small submarine volcano that displays vigorous thermal activity. It has a cone-shaped morphology and contains basalt rock types. Hydrothermal fluid emission at NW Eifuku includes liquid CO_2 bubbles venting from "white smokers." The hydrothermal field, named "Champagne Vent" for its effervescent bubbles, was discovered during a 2003 NOAA expedition about a mile below sea level. The Champagne Vent releases liquid CO_2 measured at a temperature of ~217°F, and provides an extremely rare opportunity to explore the effects of ocean acidification on ecosystems. Mussels and tonguefish have been observed in the acidic waters at this site.[32]



Droplets of liquid carbon dioxide escape from the white chimneys at the Champagne Vent on the NW Eifuku volcano. Photo: NOAA



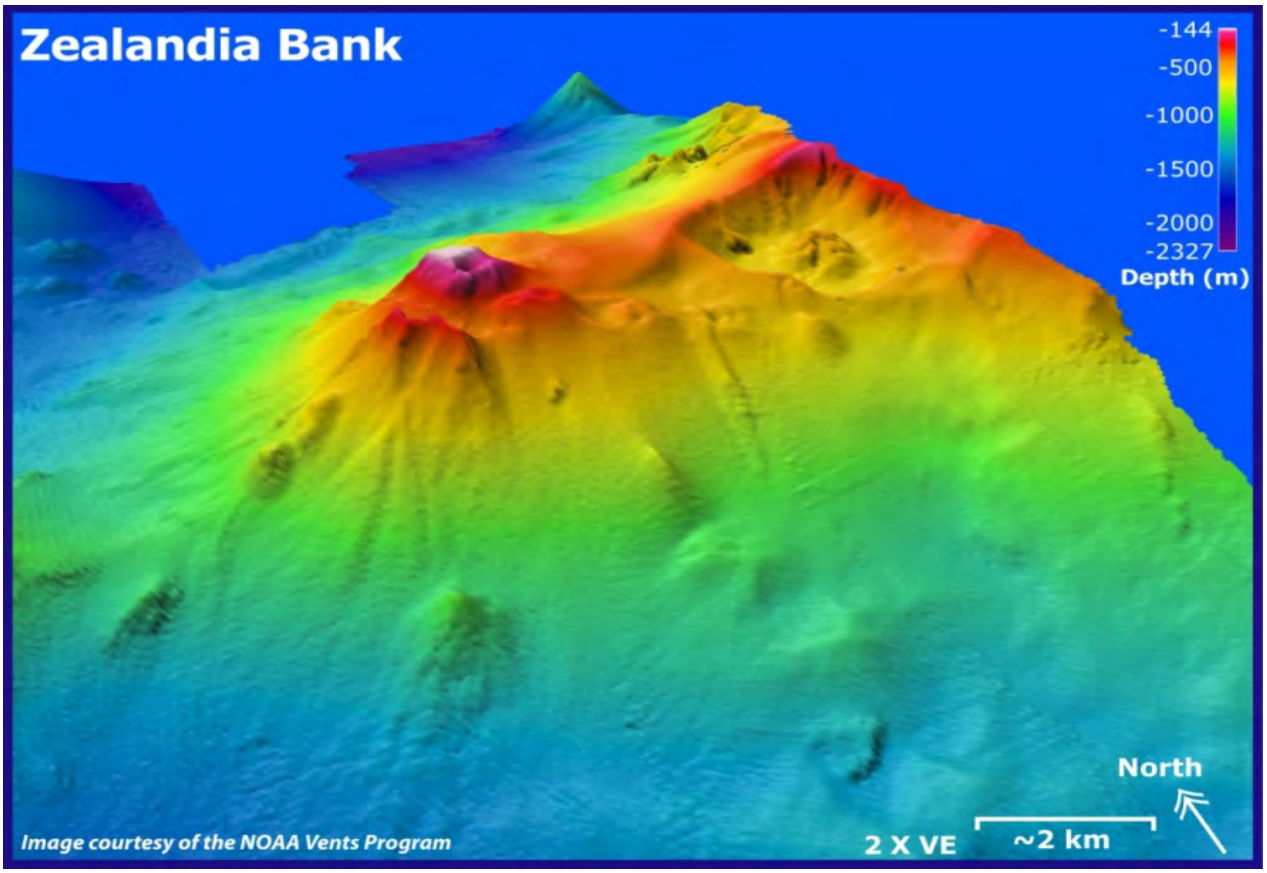
Alice Springs and Central Trough map. Image: Google earth

Alice Springs 144° 30'0" E, 18° 12'0" N Minimum Depth: -2.23 mi

The Alice Springs hydrothermal vent fields, located about 83 nmi west of Pagan Island in the CNMI, have active sulfide deposits, low-temperature iron oxide, barite, silica chimneys, and associated iron and manganese deposits on an axial volcano. Despite active hydrothermal vents erupting clear fluid with temperatures reaching 536°F, over 30 species have been identified at this site including hairy gastropods, shrimp, brachyuran crabs, barnacles, polychaetes, and limpets.[33, 34] Chemosynthetic bacteria appear to be the primary producers at these vents. Symbiotic chemoautotrophic bacteria have been found in the gills of the hairy gastropod.

Central Trough 144° 45'0" E, 18° 1'0" N Minimum Depth: -2.28 mi

This location represents an unnamed site on the Mariana Trough back-arc spreading center, approximately 63 mi west of Pagan.[35] The rocks are comprised of basaltic andesite.



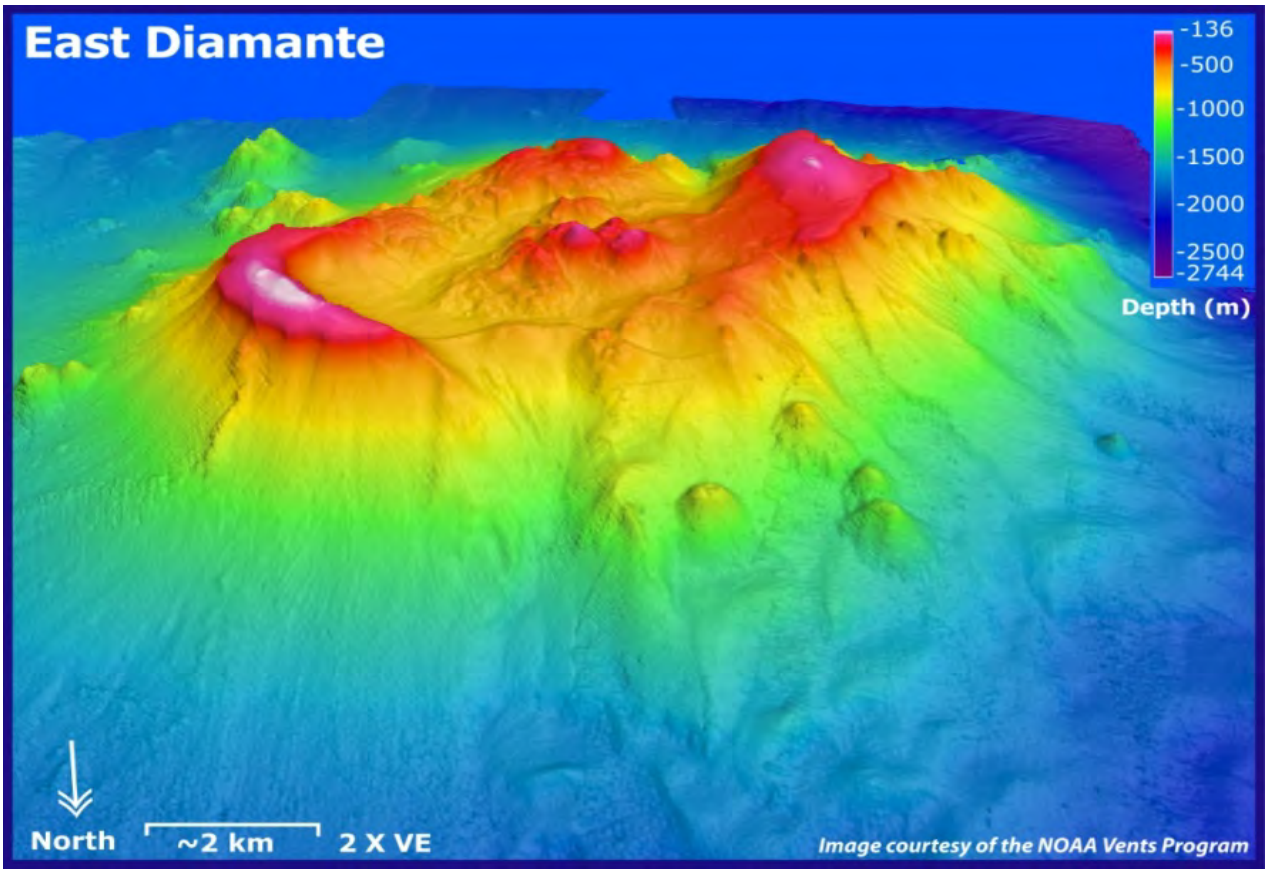
Zealandia Bank bathymetry. Image: NOAA

Zealandia Bank 145° 51'4" E, 16° 52'57" N Summit Elevation: 3 ft

Zealandia Bank is a composite structure of several overlapping volcanoes. Located 11 nmi north-northeast from Sarigan, in between Sarigan and Guguan Islands, it consists of two pinnacles about 3280 ft apart rising from a submerged bank to the sea surface. One pinnacle reaches over 3 ft above water at low tide. Andesitic rocks were dredged at the southern peak, which showed some evidence of coral growth. Freshly broken pahoehoe basaltic rocks have been recovered on the western flank of Zealandia Bank. The age of the most recent eruptive activity at Zealandia Bank is not known, but a NOAA bathymetric survey in 2004 detected fumarolic activity. However, ROV dives in 2009 did not observe any active venting.[23]

Papaugan emerges above Zealandia Bank.
Photo: AQUASMITH

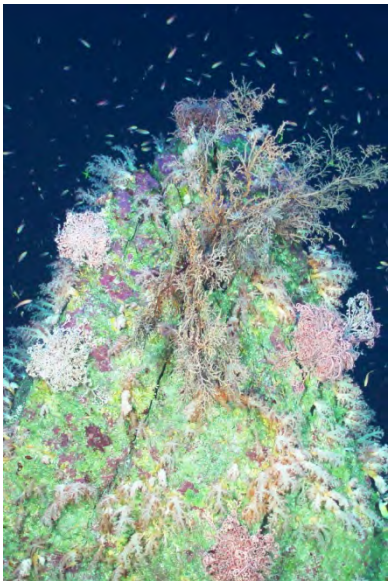
Zealandia Bank was named in 1858 after the British sailing vessel *Zealandia*. It is also known as "Piedras de Torres" in Spanish (towers of stones), or "Papaungan" (sunken) in Chamorro.



East Diamonte bathymetry. Image: NOAA

East Diamante 145° 40’47” E, 15° 56’31” N Summit Elevation: -416 ft

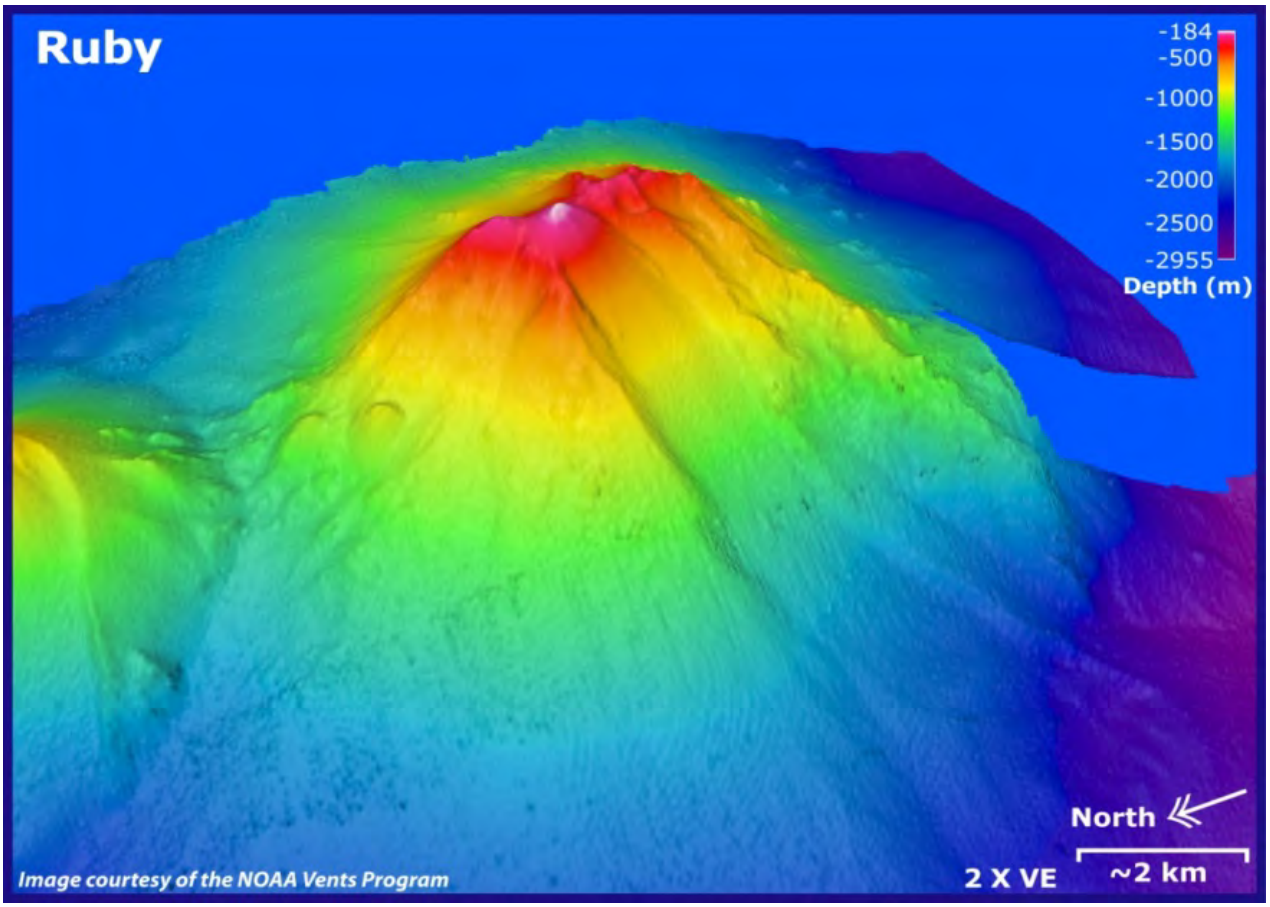
East Diamante is comprised of younger central cones within an old caldera that is 5x3 mi in size. This is the only site in the Mariana magmatic arc front discovered to date where actively forming sulfide chimneys have been found.



Turbulence around the top of Pinnacle Cone attracts suspension feeders that feed on plankton. Photo: NOAA

This dacitic submarine volcano contains an elongated NE-SW-trending caldera with a pronounced rim on the NE side. A large post-caldera cone lies on the SW caldera rim, and a complex of lava domes was constructed in the center of the caldera.

Several areas of hydrothermal activity including black smoker sulfide chimneys at a site called “Black Forest” are marked the shallowest black smokers yet discovered. The summit of the submarine volcano extends to within 416 ft of the sea surface.[36]

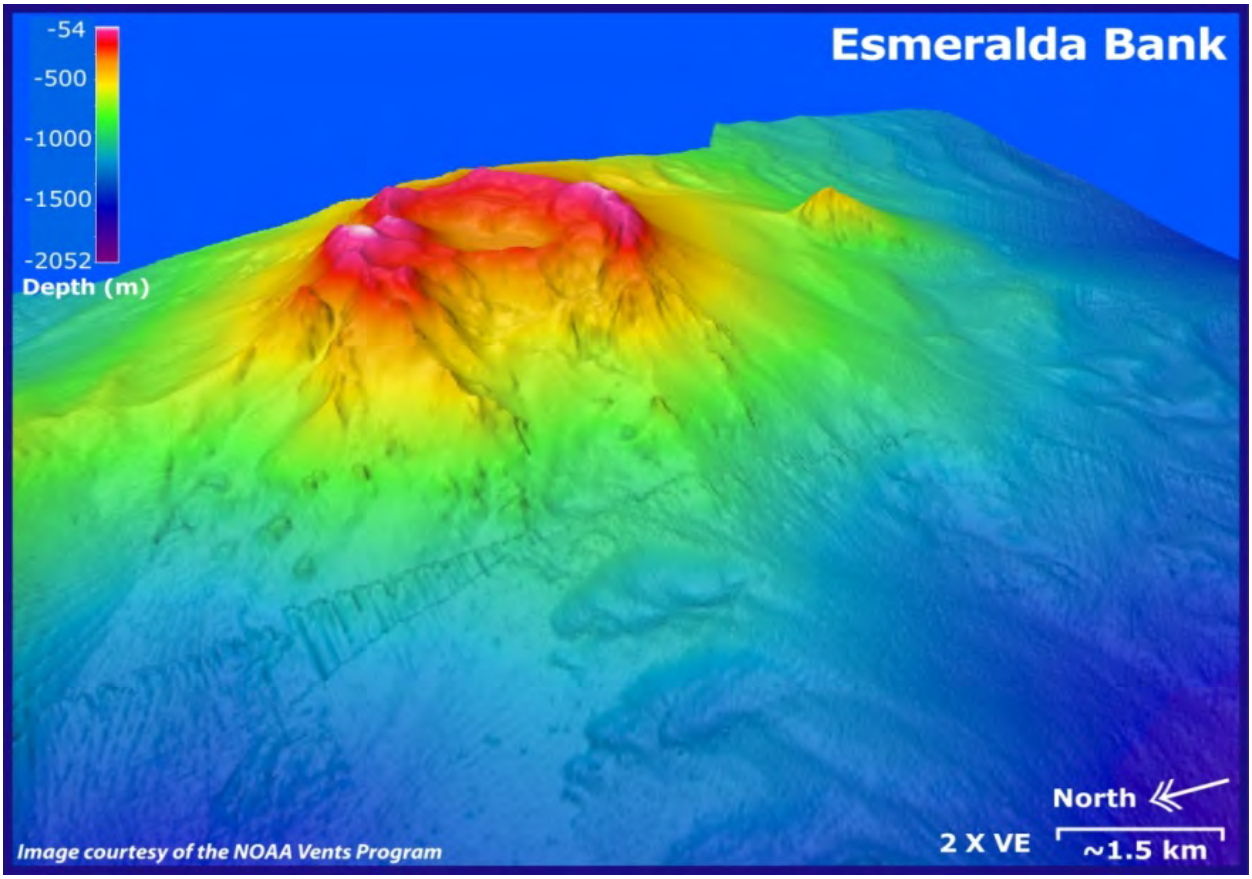


Ruby bathymetry. Image: NOAA

Ruby 145° 34’24” E, 15° 36’15” N Summit Elevation: -754 ft

Ruby, a basaltic submarine volcano that lies 22 nmi northwest of Saipan, was detected in eruption in 1966 by sonar signals.[37] In 1995, submarine explosions were heard and were accompanied by a fish kill, sulfurous odors, bubbling water, and the detection of volcanic tremor. In 2006, diffuse venting, extensive iron-oxide crusts, and a unique biological community were discovered near the summit.[23]

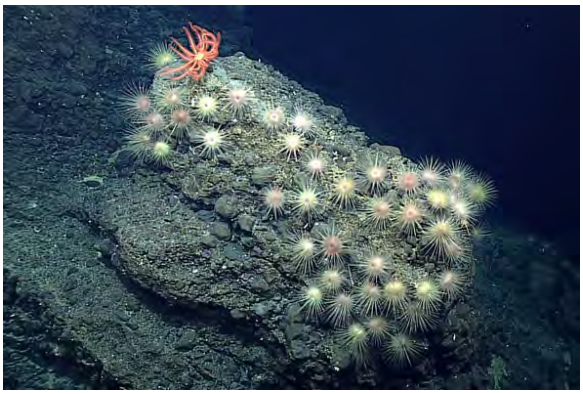
Stalked crinoids cling to the steep, basaltic terrain at Ruby volcano. These crinoids can slowly crawl around on the rocks, but cannot swim.. Photo: NOAA



Esmeralda Bank bathymetry. Image: NOAA

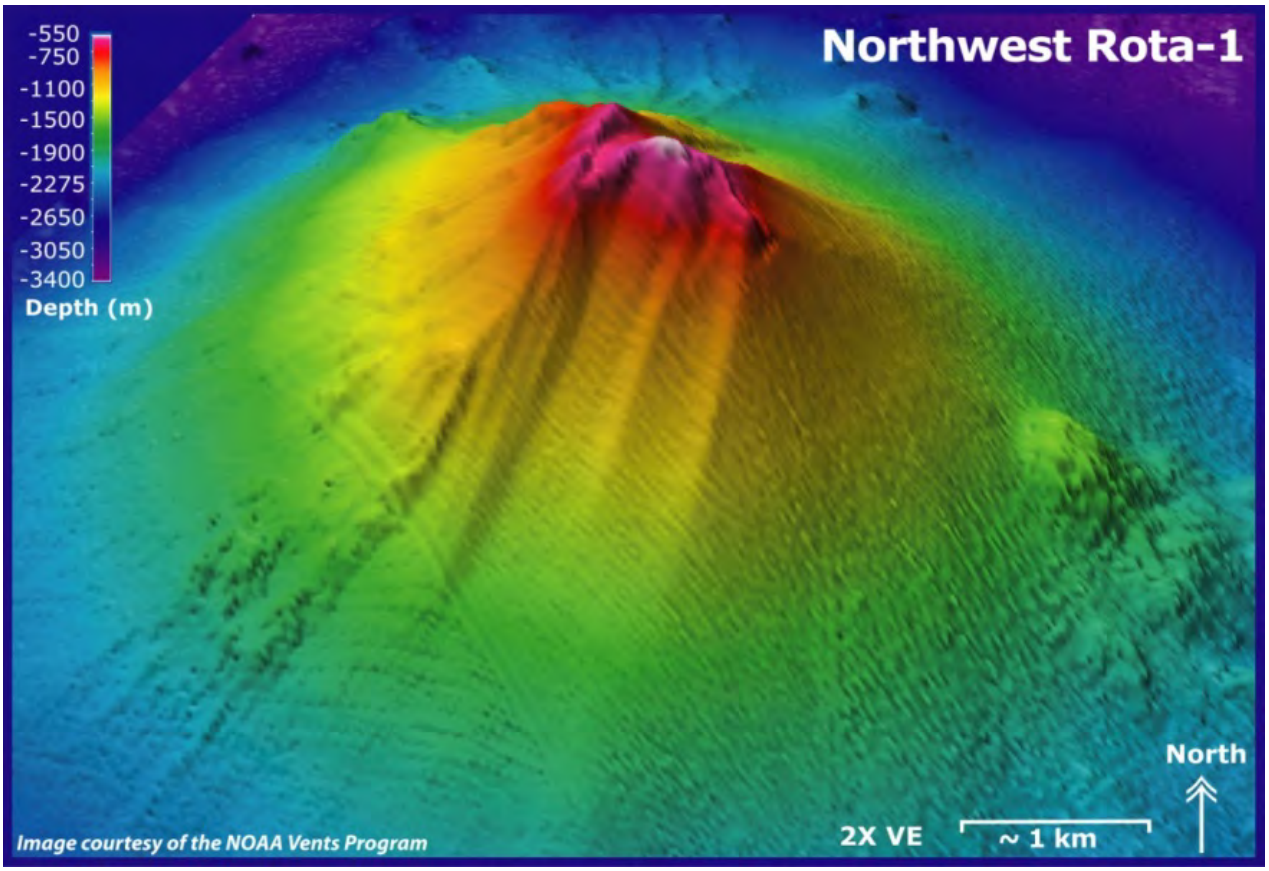
Esmeralda Bank 145° 14’45” E, 14° 47’30” N Summit Elevation: -141 ft

Located approximately 19 nmi west of Tinian, Esmeralda Bank has been the site of frequent reports of sulfur boils and water discoloration observed on the surface water over the years. Hydrothermal venting occurs on the inner caldera wall and caldera rim. A multi-beam survey of Esmeralda Bank was carried out during the NOAA Ring of Fire expedition in April 2004. The Bank appears to have experienced recent volcanic activity and shows signs of current hydrothermal circulation. The rock types are basaltic andesite.



A cluster of sea urchins and a single crinoid, living on an elevated rocky feature. Photo: NOAA

A variety of marine life congregates here and there is a significant amount of bottom fishing occurring in the area. The *Okeanos Explorer* 2016 expedition found dense communities of corals and sponges and also high numbers of urchins at Esmeralda Bank.

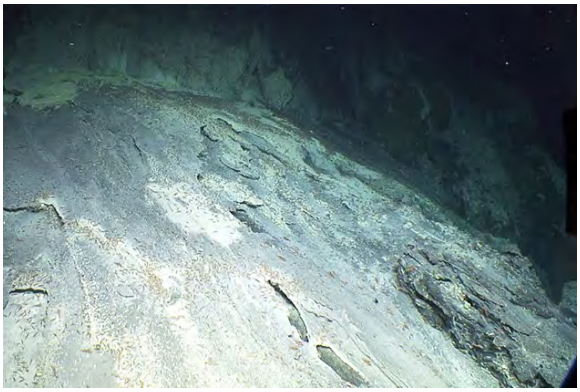


NW Rota bathymetry. Image: NOAA

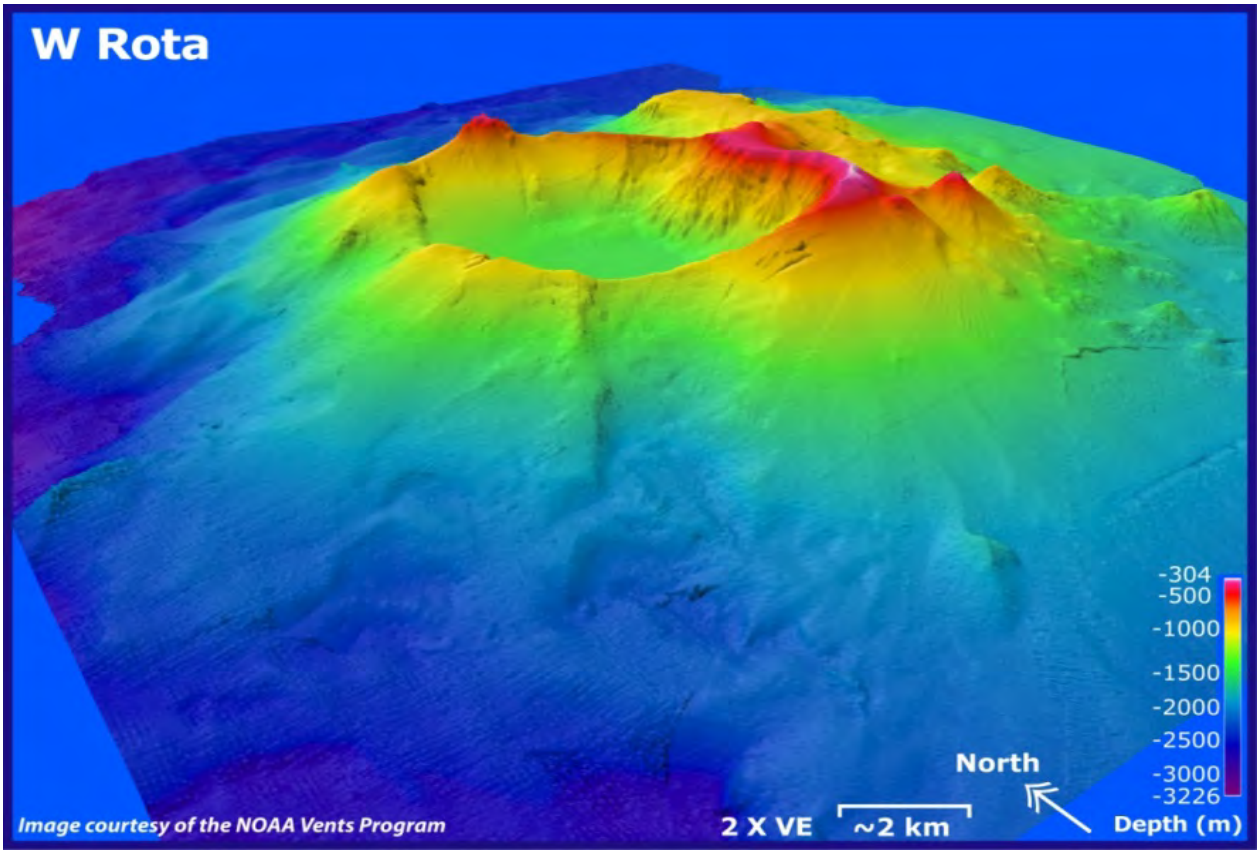
Northwest Rota 144° 46'30" E, 14° 36'0" N Summit Elevation: -1696 ft

Northwest (NW) Rota is the location of the first witnessed underwater eruption at a submarine volcano, including glowing red lava at "Brimstone Pit." The basaltic to basaltic-andesite seamount is southwest of Esmeralda Bank and lies 33 nmi northwest of Rota Island.

When NOAA visited NW Rota in 2004, a vent named Brimstone Pit on the upper south flank about 130 ft below the summit intermittently ejected a plume almost 1000 ft high containing ash, rock particles, and molten sulfur droplets that adhered to the surface of the ROV. The active vent was funnel-shaped, about 65.5 ft wide and 39 ft deep. There was an active eruption from 2003-2010[38], however, no evidence of active volcanic activity was found during NOAA's most recent visit in December, 2014.



A slope covered with sulfur crusts and tiny shrimp near the formerly active eruptive vents. Photo: WHOI



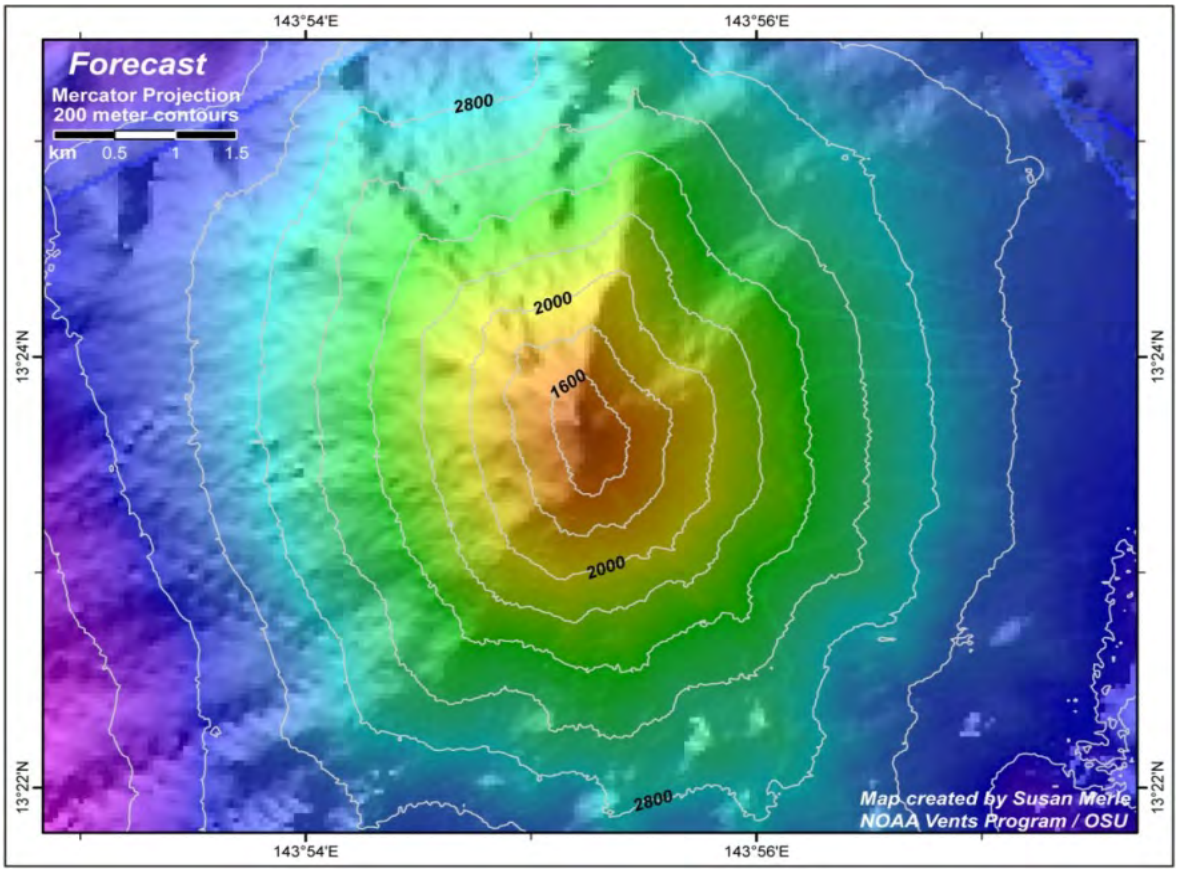
West Rota bathymetry. Image: NOAA

West Rota 144° 50'0" E, 14° 19'30" N Summit Elevation: -984 ft

West Rota is a large dormant volcano on the scale of Crater Lake, with a caldera 3.72 x 6.2 mi indicating a huge explosive eruption (estimated at 37,000-51,000 years ago). The ROV *ROPOS* was sent down to investigate in 2004. The mission log reported:

While moving across the caldera floor, we saw little but pumice that ranged in size from tiny pebbles to boulders. At about -2460 ft depth, we encountered a basaltic lava, exposed in the vertical cliffs. We were looking at the insides of the volcano, unveiled by the explosive eruption that produced the caldera. We ascended the cliff and watched as the history of the volcano was revealed, beginning with mafic lavas with high concentrations of magnesium and iron and then basaltic ash layers that were succeeded upwards by felsic ash deposits. These ash deposits became thicker and coarser as we ascended the cliffs until we reached the top, where the products of the final eruption were located. These huge pumice boulders were up to 9 ft in diameter!

A 6 ft outcrop shows contact between the lower basaltic and upper felsic ash units in the wall of the West Rota caldera. Photo: NOAA

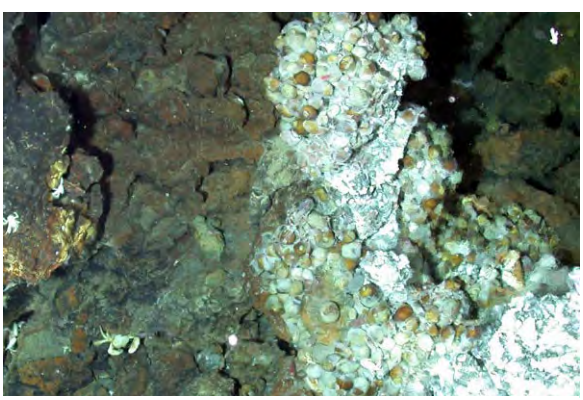


Forecast bathymetry. Image: NOAA

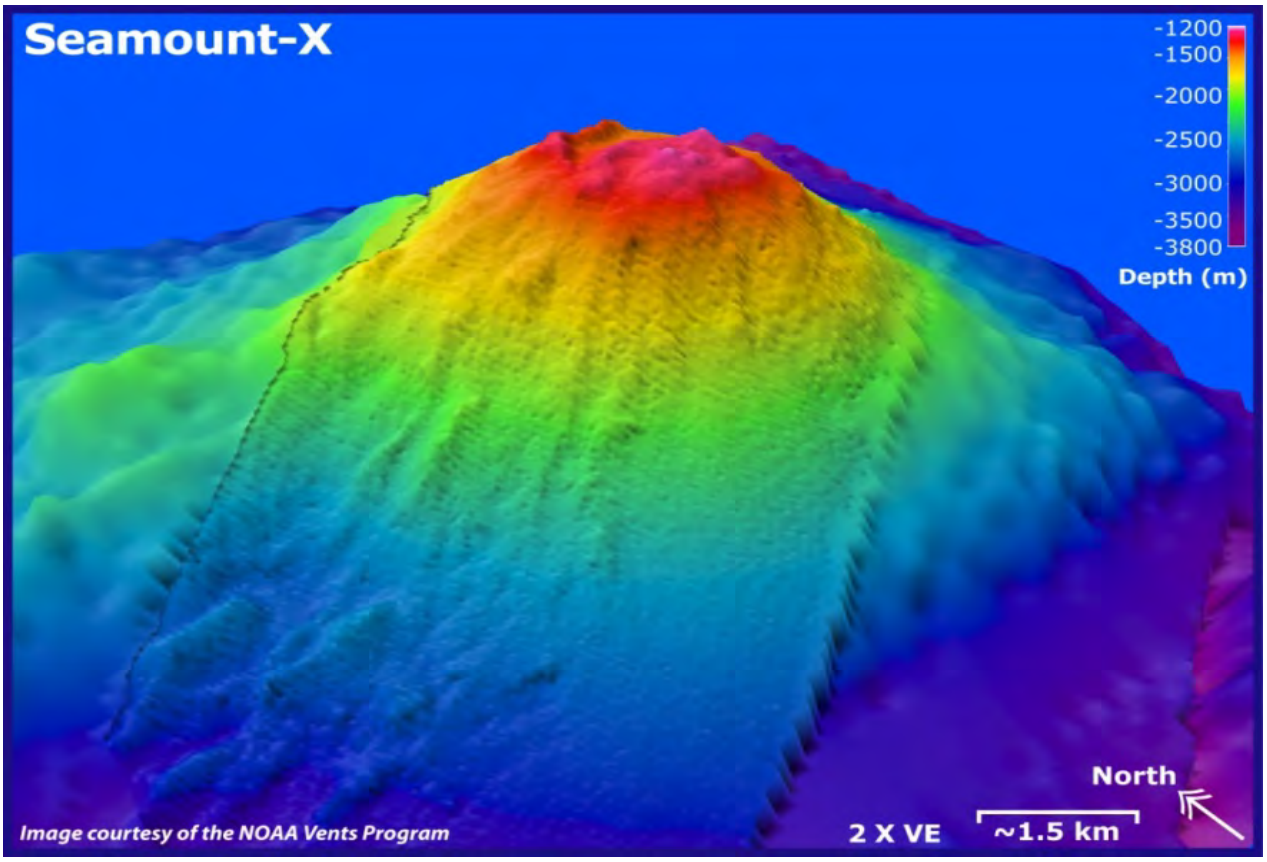
Forecast 143° 55'12" E, 13° 23'30" N Summit Elevation: - 4816 ft

Forecast seamount is in the southern Mariana backarc basin lying just east of the backarc spreading axis 43.4 nmi west of Guam. The highlight of this site is the occurrence of hydrothermal fluid temperatures up to 392°F, one of the highest-temperature vent systems known in the Mariana arc. Forecast contains a small vent field with active sulfide-bearing chimneys.[35]

Vent community species that occur at Forecast include shrimp, snails, limpets, crabs, sulfide worms, and scale worms, and differ from those further to the north in the Marianas arc. Scientists with the Submarine Ring of Fire 2006 cruise noted the animals found at Forecast are more similar to those at Alice Springs — 290 nmi to the north — than they are to Seamount X, NW Rota volcano, and the rest of the arc. Further sampling will help examine the reasons for the differences.



A glimpse of a biological community at a Forecast vent site. Photo: NOAA

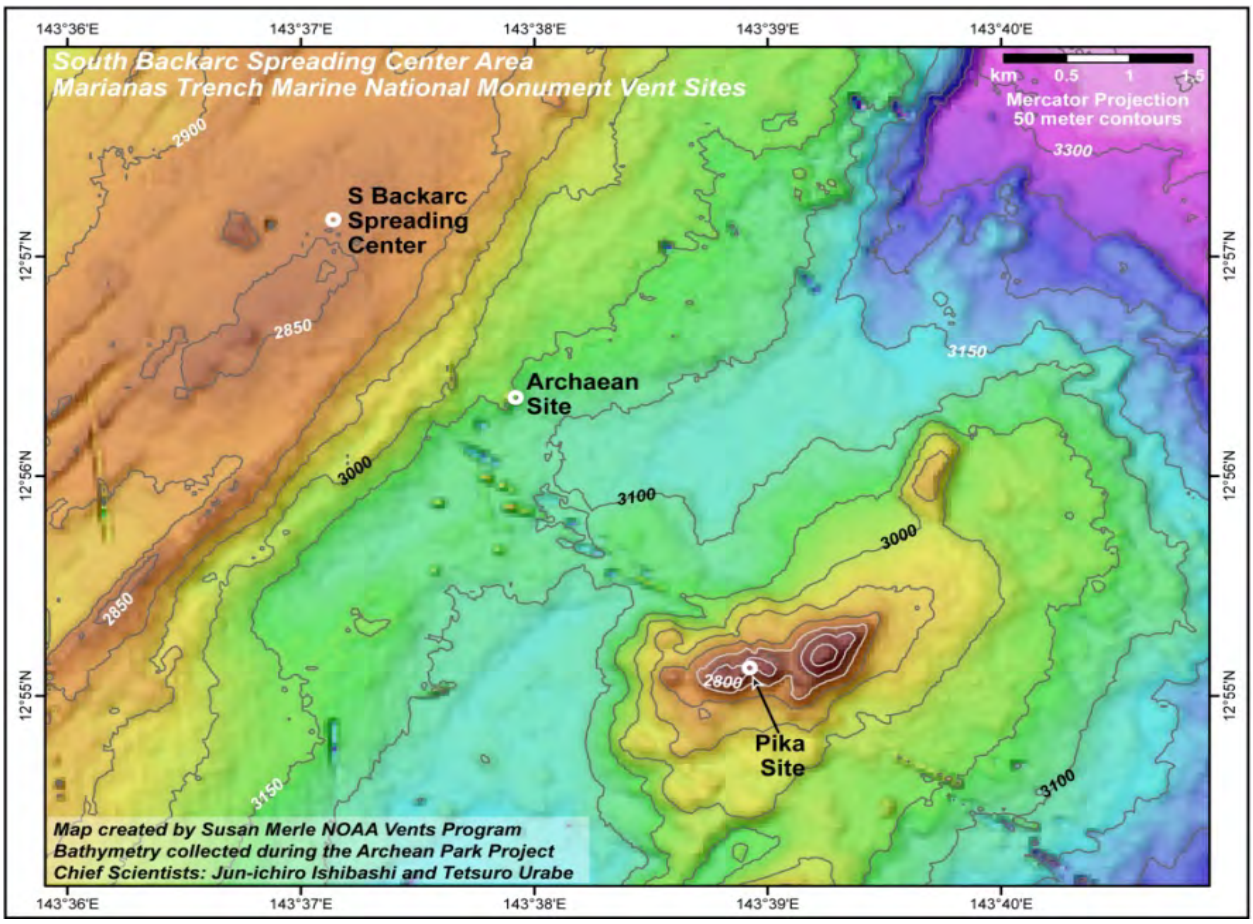


Seamount X bathymetry. Image: NOAA

Seamount X 144° 1'0" E, 13° 14'48" N Summit Elevation: -4084 ft

Diffuse venting occurs at Seamount X, located 35.6 nmi west-southwest of Guam. The summit of the volcano is cut by an elongated caldera. Hydrothermal activity was detected during a 2003 NOAA expedition at Seamount X, 4035 ft below the sea surface. Diffuse sites of thermal venting colonized by shrimps, crabs, and scaleworms were detected near the summit during a 2006 NOAA expedition, and thick deposits of sulfur flows originating from the hydrothermal vent were observed that were covered with thousands of squat lobsters. The thick sulfur deposit had clearly been formed by innumerable flows of molten sulfur coming out of the hydrothermal system. Basaltic rocks were recovered along with sulfur samples.[22]

A Bio-Mat sampler allows the scientists to gather just the top layer of the mat at Seamount X, where it is believed all the active microbes live. Photo: NOAA

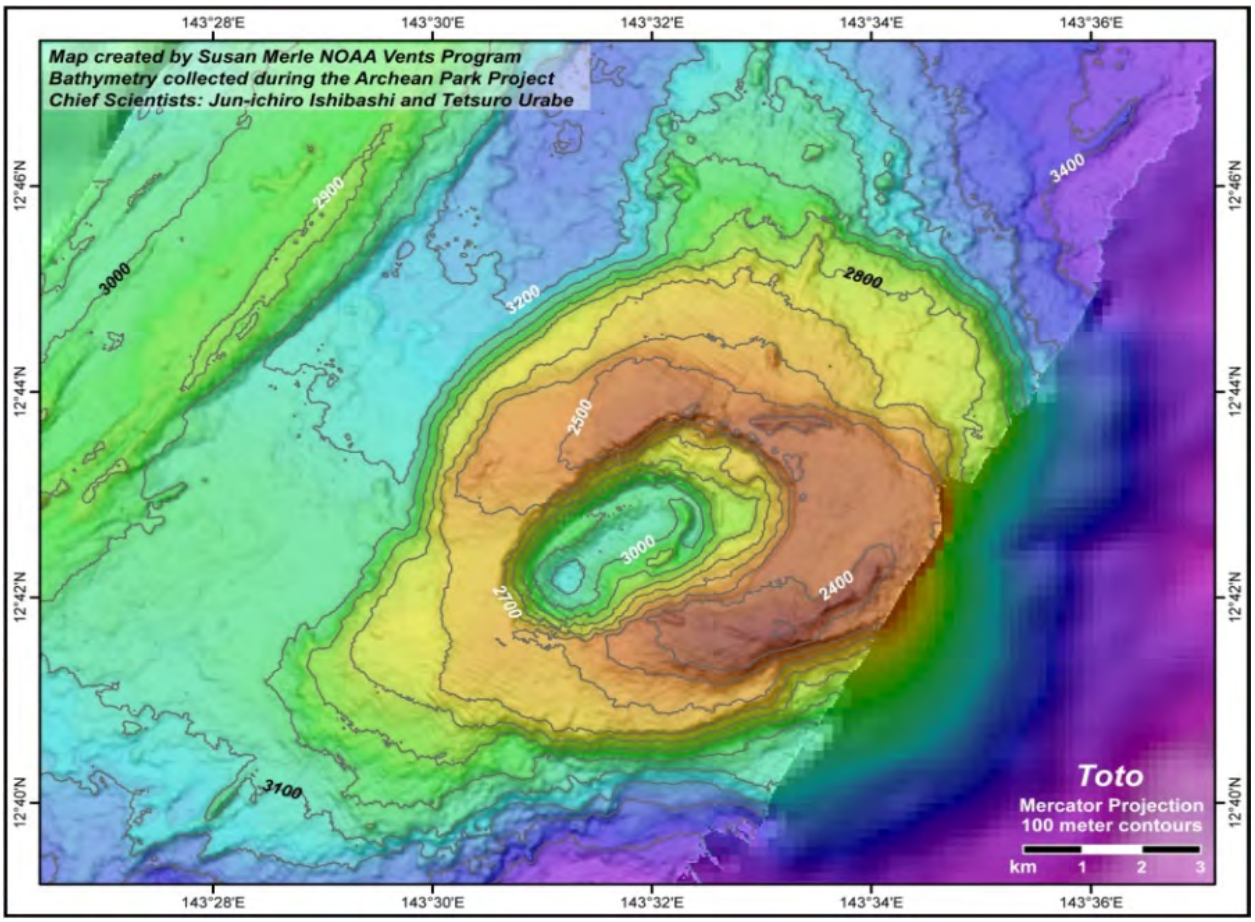


Map created by Susan Merle, NOAA Vents Program

South Backarc	143° 37’8” E, 12° 57’12” N	Maximum Depth: -1.77 mi
Archaean	143° 37’8” E, 12° 56’23” N	Maximum Depth: -1.9 mi
Pika	143° 38’55” E, 12° 55’7” N	Maximum Depth: -1.72 mi

The Southern Mariana backarc spreading ridge is also known as the Malaguana-Gadao ridge. Several hydrothermal sites (including Archaean and Pika) are known to occur along the axis of the spreading center,[40] which is the location of the Monument feature. In addition to rather large deep-sea vent snails (*Phymorhynchus* and *Alviniconcha* species), there are also large patches of iron-based microbial mats.

Archaean is an active hydrothermal site on the eastern flank of the spreading ridge ~1.24 mi from the axis. The Pika site is located ~3.1 mi off-axis of the back-arc spreading center (to the east). It is also an active vent site with black smokers.[41]



Map created by Susan Merle, NOAA Vents Program

Toto 143° 31'42" E, 12° 42'48" N Maximum Depth: -1.88 mi

The southernmost site in the Volcanic Unit /Arc of Fire Refuge, Toto is a large caldera spanning 3.1 x 1.8 mi rim to rim. Extensive venting was discovered within the large caldera by the JAMSTEC ROV *Kaiko* during the R/V *Kairei* cruise in 2000.[41] *Kaiko* landed on the bottom of a talus field. Visibility was poor due to the smoke coming from hydrothermal vents. Shimmering fluids were also observed together with vent communities of tube worms, shrimp, and galatheid crabs. Several chimneys were found at the bottom, vigorously erupting white smoke.[41]

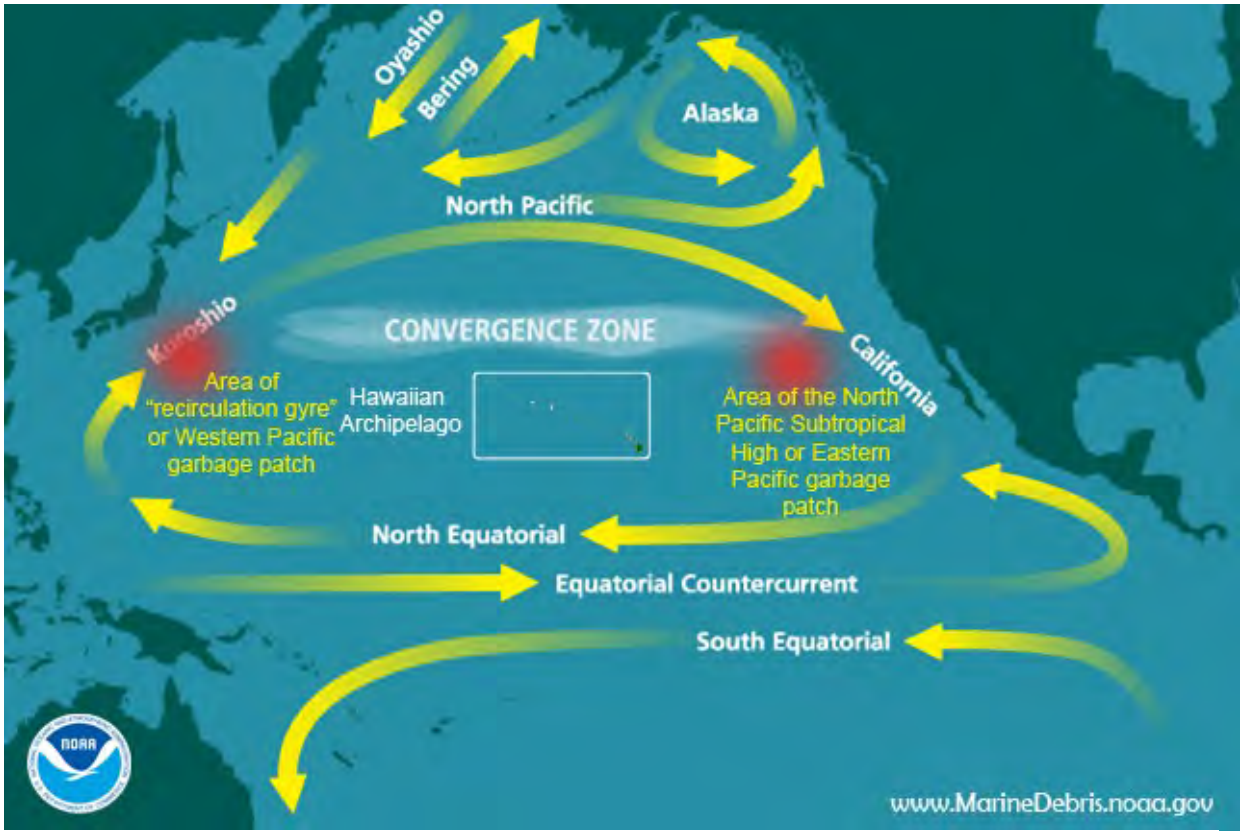
3.1.4 Marine Environment

Surface currents

Surface currents flowing through the Monument are the Kuroshiro Current, the North Pacific Counter Current (NPCC) and the North Equatorial Current (NEC) and the Subtropical Counter Current (SCC).[42,43] The flow of these currents creates a circulation pattern referred to as the North Pacific gyre. The NEC, which flows east to west, is the prevailing oceanic circulation pattern influencing the Marianas with the SCC (which flows west to east) seasonally flowing around the Northern Islands.[44] The NEC has a surface speed as great as 11.8 in/s^{-1} when measured at latitude 21° and 23° N, longitude 142-143° E.[27] Recent work has recorded mean flow speeds of 9.8 in/s^{-1} with decreasing flow speeds recorded around the Islands Unit.[45] Towards the northern end of the archipelago, the current moves somewhat to the north and turns into the Kuroshio Current.[27, 45]

The seasonal influence (June-September) of the SCC on the northern part of the Mariana archipelago is a result of weaker trade winds. This significantly impacts the region during coral bleaching events, as witnessed in the past. [27, 46] During the months when trade winds are strong, northeast swells are generated by moving cold fronts from the Asian continent, the NEC prevails, and water temperatures remain at cool, safe temperatures for corals. Current flow is typically north to northeast around each island, with the exception of tropical storm events which can cause a reversal in direction. [27, 43]

These current patterns substantially impact the ecology of the Mariana archipelago. For example, the coral composition in the Mariana region more closely resembles that of the Marshall Islands versus that of Palau, even though Palau is geographically closer. [43,47] The North Equatorial Counter Current, flowing west to east just south of the island chain, seems to influence the southern portion of the



Simplified map of current patterns in the North Pacific Ocean.

archipelago.[44] The interaction of the NEC with the island topography generates eddies west of the island chain.[44] Current patterns create ecologically significant habitats, such as the transition zone Chl-a front (TZCF), which occurs at the interface of the low-surface Chl-a subtropical gyre and the high-surface Chl-a subarctic gyre.[48]

Mid to deep water currents

Deep water currents that flow through the Monument are the Lower Circumpolar Pacific Water (LCPW) and the North Pacific Deep Water (NPDW). The LCPW has a westward propagation flowing in through the East Mariana Basin (EMB) and out to the West Mariana Basin (WMB).[49] The LCPW does not flow directly into the Monument from the east because of ocean bottom topography that blocks its entrance. At 13° N, the LCPW arrives from the North and then flows from the EMB through the Yap-Mariana Junction into the WMB and through the East Fayu junction on the Caroline ridge into the EMB. The NPDW flows from the east into the EMB and then turns and flows south into the east Carolinian Basin.[50] Information on flows deeper than 3.7 mi in the Mariana Trench is limited due to the technical and logistical challenges associated with these depths.[50] Deep and bottom current information collected from within the Challenger Deep section of the trench showed current speeds to be generally small with the fastest currents of 3.1 in s^{-1} occurring at the deepest stations.[51]

3.1.5 Marine Chemistry – Regional Overview

Ocean Water

The Mariana Trench is an open ocean environment and its water chemistry changes at different depths. Surface waters around the Mariana archipelago are oligotrophic, meaning that they lack plant nutrients and have a large amount of dissolved oxygen throughout. Water in this region is among the clearest in the Pacific because it does not have high concentrations of Chl-a or colored dissolved organic matter.

Sea surface Temperature

Sea-surface temperatures in the Mariana archipelago are generally constant throughout the year, ranging between 77-86°F. The lowest temperatures typically occur January-March (77-80°F) and the highest temperatures usually occur July-September (84-86°F). Available data indicates temperatures in Trench waters decrease with depth to a minimum temperature of 35°F below the thermocline at 4,500 db,[††††] and then increases slightly in the deep layers due to adiabatic compression.[‡‡‡‡]

Salinity

An increase in salinity occurs along the latitudinal gradient of the Mariana archipelago, ranging from ~34.0 psu[§§§§] near Guam to ~35.0 psu in the Islands Unit of the Monument.[45] Salinity increases with depth, reaching a maximum of 35 psu around 492 ft. Within the Trench, salinity at the surface has been recorded at 34.48 psu compared to a regional average of 35 psu.[52] There is limited information on the temperature and salinity profile due to the difficulty in deploying standard instrumentation into extreme depths. One study of the Mariana Trench noted that salinity increased with depth to 34.699 psu 6,020-6,320 db, then remained constant to around 9,500 db.[53] The fact that the salinity remains constant over depth indicates little mixing is occurring beyond that depth.

[††††] The unit "db" is decibars, a measure of pressure. Because depth and pressure are directly related, a pressure measurement can be converted to depth.

[‡‡‡‡] An adiabatic process is one that occurs without transfer of heat or matter between a system and its surroundings.

[§§§§] A Practical Salinity Unit (psu) is a standard measurement for salinity based on the properties of sea water conductivity.

Dissolved Oxygen
Dissolved oxygen values measured during the RAMP cruises in 2005 were uniform throughout the water column, measured at around 4 mL L^{-1} (a metric unit of volume). The oxygen values measured during the RAMP cruises of 2007 were low in the surface waters (2 mL L^{-1}) but increased with depth to 4 mL L^{-1}. Dissolved oxygen concentrations are much lower in the deep waters of the Mariana Trench compared to dissolved oxygen concentrations measured in deep waters under the oligotrophic North Pacific gyre.[45]

Nutrients
The waters around the Islands Unit are located about 20° S of the TZCF. In the North Pacific, this front is about 4970 nmi long and migrates about 620 nmi north and south seasonally. The TZCF is recognized as the boundary between the low Chl-a subtropical gyres in the south Pacific and the high Chl-a subarctic gyres in the north Pacific. Mean climatological surface Chl-a concentrations show strong seasonal variability in the Mariana archipelago, with the lowest concentrations occurring in the summer and fall seasons and the highest concentrations observed in the spring and winter. A seasonal latitudinal gradient of increasing Chl-a concentrations that occurs from south to north suggests the southern islands are surrounded by oligotrophic (i.e., nutrient poor) waters throughout the year, while the northernmost islands experience a much greater seasonal variability.[54] These areas have the potential to be more nutrient-rich due to mixing.

3.1.6 Environmental Contaminants

A history of military activity in the region left unexploded ordinance and WWII debris in the Monument areas. As with most Pacific islands, marine debris is present on the islands' beaches and entangled in the reefs. Towed-diver surveys of forereef habitats around Maug, Asuncion and Farallon de Pajaros have identified derelict fishing gear such as old lines, nets, and other manmade objects. Results of the surveys are available in the *PIFSC Coral Reef Ecosystem Monitoring Report of the Mariana Archipelago: 2003-2007*.[55]

The level of dumping-at-sea by transiting vessels is unknown. This practice is regulated under the Ocean Dumping Act and by international agreements. The International Convention for the Prevention of Pollution from Ships (MARPOL) is the primary agreement aimed at the prevention of pollution from ships caused by operational or accidental causes. The International Maritime Organization adopted MARPOL in 1973.

Plastic bag at the bottom of the Trench Unit/Refuge. Photo: JAMSTEC

Corroding World War II-era munitions are still found throughout the CNMI and Guam. Photo: EPA

3.1.7 Climate

The Mariana archipelago climate is classified as *maritime tropical*: humid with moderate temperatures; day-night temperature differences are greater than seasonal temperature differences; and, wet and dry seasons with spring and fall transitions. Air temperatures average 81°F with a daily fluctuation of ~43°F. Relative humidity ranges between 65-80% during the day and 85-100% at night. The archipelago has distinct wet (August-December) and dry (January-July) seasons with an average rainfall of 72 inches/year. About 70% of rainfall occurs during the wet season.[56] The region has a transitional monsoon regime, and is susceptible to typhoons and monsoons. The influence of El Niño and La Niña events (together, the El Niño Southern Oscillation, or ENSO) can be extreme. El Niño patterns enhance westerly winds along the equator, resulting in increased monsoon activity, bringing episodes of heavy rain followed by a drought if the El Niño event is especially strong. The archipelago typically experiences a dry year about every four years due to ENSO.

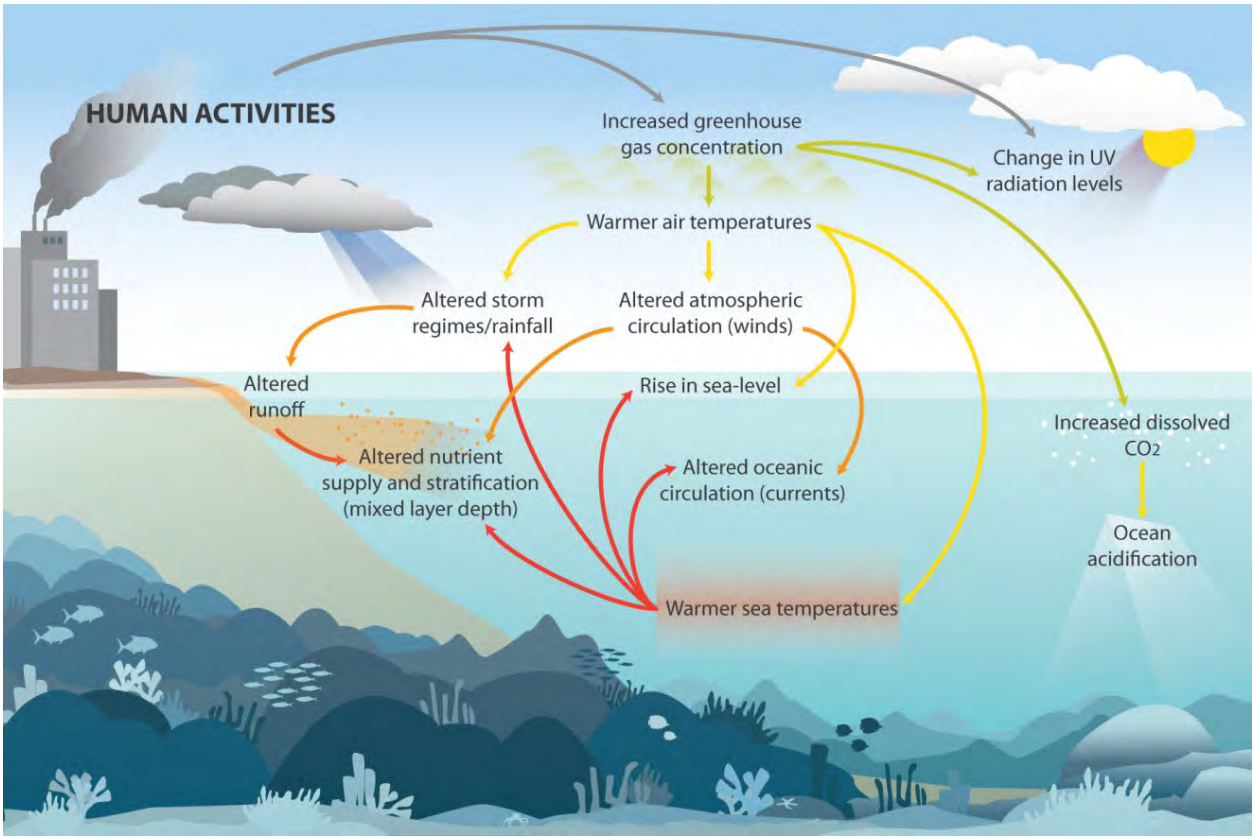
Northeasterly tradewinds cool the western Pacific most of the year, except June-September when the Subtropical Counter Current prevails.[57] The Islands Unit experiences northeast and easterly winds about 47% of the time and a mean wind velocity of 10.1 knots, with speeds of more than 10 knots occurring eight months of the year.[57] Winds in the northernmost islands come from the east May-July, and from the west the rest of the year.[58] The archipelago averages one to two typhoons per year during the wet season, and a super typhoon hits one of the islands approximately every 10 years.[58]

3.1.8 Climate Change

Climate change is "*any significant change in the measures of climate lasting for an extended period of time. In other words, climate change includes major changes in temperature, precipitation, or wind patterns, among others, that occur over several decades or longer*."[59] Anthropogenic inputs to the atmosphere since the industrial revolution are widely recognized as the primary reason for global climate change.[60] Atmospheric CO_2 has increased from its preindustrial levels of 280 ppm to over 395 ppm.[61] These GHG come primarily from the consumption of fossil fuels such as coal, oil, and gas, but also stem from timber harvest, farming and agricultural practices, and other human activities. The impacts of climate change are far reaching, with effects on sea and air temperatures; oceanic and atmospheric chemistry; sea levels; ocean currents; and climate, weather, and storm patterns.

Some ecosystems or species may be adaptable to climate change. Large-scale marine protected areas support resiliency and allow for the natural adaptation of species and ecosystem functions. For example, growth of healthy corals may outpace SLR. Because fish and plankton distributions within the ocean are climate driven, changes in their distribution patterns within the Monument are expected. It is anticipated that climate change will cause an eastward shift in warm water pools, and a subsequent shift in the location of Pacific tuna stocks. Distribution shifts in both warm- and cold-water species have already been observed.

Because the Monument is uninhabited, it experiences minimal anthropogenic stressors such as runoff, harvest, and other aspects of human presence. This relatively pristine marine environment can provide researchers a venue to measure environmental shifts related to climate change by comparing conditions in the Monument with areas with human occupation. The changing global environment and the implications this may have for ecosystems in the Pacific are important considerations in management actions.



Impact of human activities on marine systems. Image: Amanda Dillon, NOAA (adapted from "Human activities' impact on marine systems" by Poloczanska, et al., 2007)

Global Temperature Increases

The global mean surface temperature has increased by 1.53°F since the mid-19th century. Surface ocean water temperatures (0-246 ft) have increased 0.126°F per decade over the past 100 years, and 0.198°F per decade for the most recent half-century. The waters around many coral reefs are warming even faster, at a rate of 0.2-0.4 °F per decade.[62] Data from the Agrigan SST buoy indicates an average SST change of 0.432 ± 0.018 (°F/decade ± s.e.m) since 1982.[63] Although temperature has increased slightly over time, the timing of seasonal warming patterns has not changed.

Models forecast a variety of paths based on different GHG emission scenarios. At the current GHG emission rate, atmospheric concentrations of CO_2 may double before the end of the century.[63] The Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC) predicts global mean surface temperature and average tropical ocean sea surface temperature will rise by several degrees during this period.[64] Shifts in ocean circulation patterns, precipitation, and evaporation will likely result from increased global temperatures. Changes to the stratification of the world's oceans have already occurred. Ocean stratification exists naturally in a stable water column where high-density water (cold, salty) resides in the deepest part of the ocean beneath low-density water (warm, fresh) located nearer the surface.[65] Changes in stratification directly affect the composition of marine life abiding within the ocean depths. Surface waters are becoming less productive due to decreased vertical mixing of heat and nutrients; and oligotrophic gyres, which are the ocean's least productive zones, are expanding. What these changes mean for ocean ecosystems is still to be determined.

One of the most obvious indications of thermal impacts is coral bleaching. Bleaching occurs when coral polyps expel essential symbiotic algae called zooxanthellae from their tissues, resulting in the loss of photosynthetic pigments. Increased water temperature is the primary cause of bleaching. If temperatures return to normal and bleached corals are able to reacquire their symbiotic algae in time, they may recover from a bleaching event. Coral mortality occurs with prolonged periods of elevated temperatures and there is insufficient data to determine the time interval between bleaching episodes needed to recover. Corals have been dying worldwide under current warming conditions.

Bleached corals here have lost photosynthetic pigment. Photo: David Burdick/UOGML

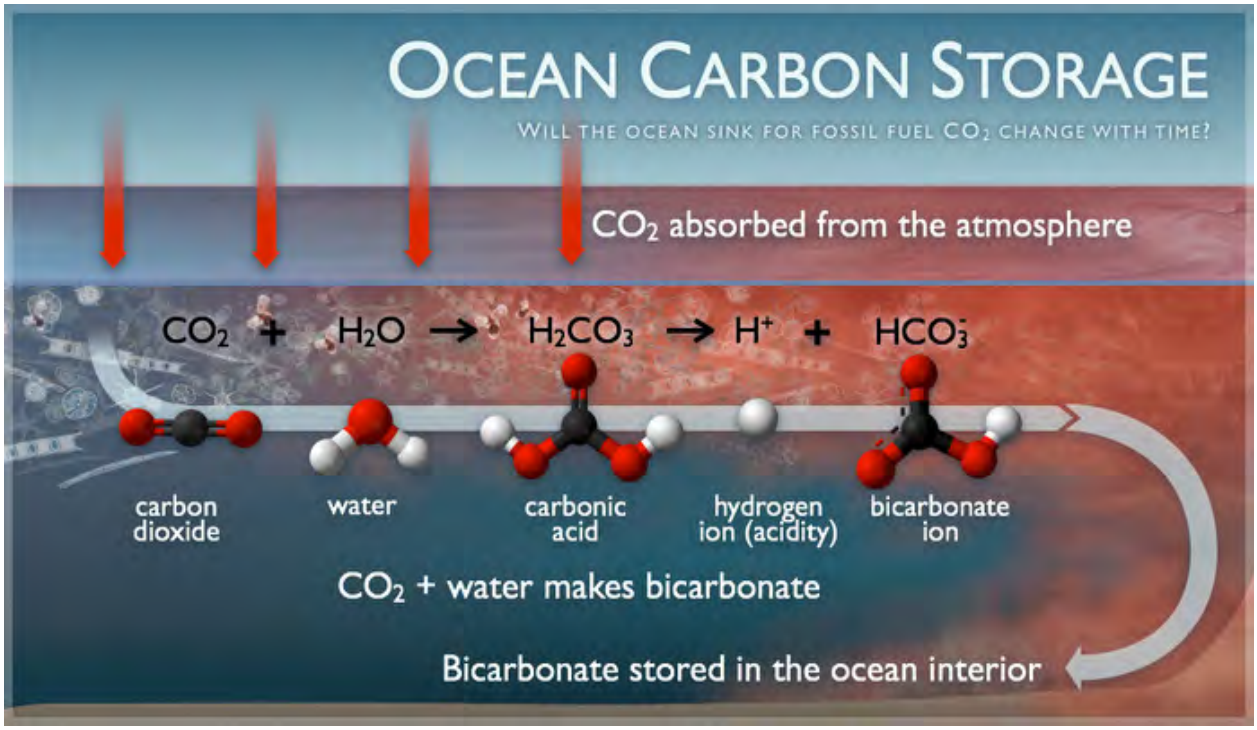
Bleaching level temperatures are defined as 1.8-3.6°F above the monthly maximum climatological mean for the region, and have already been recorded in the Northern Mariana Islands. Water temperatures around the Islands Unit have reached bleaching levels. Several bleaching events have occurred since 2001 in the Southern Mariana Islands, significantly affecting shallow-water corals. At Farallon de Pajaros ,the sea surface temperature (SST) has exceeded 86˚F in multiple years (2001, 2003, 2005, 2009, 2013), crossing the bleaching threshold SST for up to 14 weeks. The SST around Maug also exceeded 86˚F in 2001 and 2003. Thermal stress affects all aspects of coral life, from fertilization to development to settlement, and of course, mortality.

Ocean Acidification

Ocean acidification is the ongoing decrease in the pH of the Earth's oceans, caused by the uptake of CO_2 from the atmosphere and it can affect the life cycle of many organisms found in the Monument. Rising atmospheric CO_2 levels will lead to additional CO_2 in the ocean. When CO_2 dissolves, it forms carbonic acid, a weak acid that releases additional hydrogen ions as it stabilizes into bicarbonate. The increase in hydrogen ions increases the acidity of the ocean. Since pre-industrial levels, ocean pH has already decreased by 0.1 on the pH logarithmic scale.[66] As ocean temperature and atmospheric CO_2 concentrations change, there is an associated change in the amount of carbon sequestered in the ocean.[67] This is predicted to decrease the average ocean pH by 0.4–0.5 points compared with pre-industrial levels by the year 2100.[68] If this hypothesis proves correct, the oceans will become more acidic than at any time in the past 400,000 years.[69]

A decrease in ocean pH causes a change in the aragonite saturation point, making it more difficult for many calcifiers[*****] (including corals, crustose coralline algae, mollusks and zooplankton) to incorporate calcium carbonate.[70] Marine organisms such as these derive calcium carbonate minerals from the ocean to build their skeletons and shells. As ocean water becomes more acidic, it will become less saturated with calcium carbonate, which will pose a challenge for organisms to maintain perhaps leading to regional variation in ocean pH. CO_2 may be absorbed in one region and then their shells. Ocean pH also varies by depth; deeper waters tend to have higher CO_2 levels than surface waters. Processes influencing temporal and spatial variation in CO_2 levels include upwelling, photosynthesis, respiration, calcification, temperature, and circulation patterns.

[*****] Marine calcifiers are those species that create skeletons or shells out of calcium carbonate.



Ocean Carbon Storage. Source: PMEL NOAA

Changing pH levels may affect organisms differently. Crustose coralline algae may experience greater challenges in calcifying under a decreasing pH regime than will corals.[71] Corals may grow at slower rates, or be more fragile, although some recent studies suggest coral species have the ability to compensate for changes in pH.[72] However, a significant decrease in pH may reach levels where corals actually begin to erode, resulting in a net loss of coral to the ecosystem. There is evidence that ocean acidification will impact non-calcifiers as well. Studies on fish have demonstrated negative acidification effects on growth, development, and mortality.[73] Other species such as sea grasses and phytoplankton may benefit, causing overproduction at certain trophic levels in the food web and disruption to the balance and functions of healthy ecosystems.[74]

Water samples near the hydrothermal vent system within the caldera at Maug indicate pH values much more acidic than the surrounding waters and higher water temperature. The conditions are highly corrosive to calcifying organisms based on the calcite and aragonite saturation of undiluted vent water. No calcium-carbonate producing organisms have been observed within the vent system. A CRED team found coral cover of 67% in 2007 only 50 ft away from the vents, approaching nearly 100% coral cover in one area. This site provides the only known example of ocean acidification within a coral reef ecosystem. These unique conditions make Maug an important site for studying the ecological and biological processes of climate change.

The Monument includes rare hydrothermal vent communities located at submarine volcano sites and other deep-sea ecosystems that depend upon surface water production. Recent research has raised questions about how climate change will affect carbon cycling and deep-ocean ecosystem functions. Long-term data sets are available for deep ocean sites outside of the tropical Pacific in the North Pacific, North Atlantic, and Gulf of Mexico. Initial studies indicate that climate directly affects these habitats and could therefore affect other deep sea environments.

Sea Level Rise
The rate of sea level rise (SLR) varies regionally, primarily due to variations in plate-tectonic activity. The global average sea level has risen ~7 inches since 1901 and is predicted to rise 10-32 inches by 2100.[75] These estimates do not take into account variation in the rates of melting for ice sheets and glaciers, which recent studies indicate could dramatically accelerate SLR.[76] In 2007, the IPCC predicted a rate of 0.047- 0.078 inches SLR per year in the equatorial Pacific. To date, observed rates of SLR have continually outpaced the IPCC's previous worst-case scenario models.[77] Despite the slowing rate of ocean warming, there is no evidence for a slowdown in SLR. Inundation of low-lying island areas, coastal erosion, and saltwater intrusion into freshwater aquifers are of concern for many Pacific islands with rising sea levels. High seasonal and storm waves will travel further inland as sea level increases, creating new wetlands and causing changes to existing waterways such as streams and estuaries, surface drainage, and increasing the likelihood for flooding if high tide coincides with heavy rainfall. Coastal erosion may increase the introduction of sediments into the marine environment, decreasing overall water quality. The degree of vulnerability of high islands like Asuncion, Maug, and Farallon de Pajaros is uncertain because these islands have rocky volcanic slopes and limited sandy shorelines.

Storm Patterns
The IPCC predicts extreme weather events for the Pacific, including the possibility of increased droughts and floods; shifts in tropical cyclone tracks associated with El Niño; more intense rainfall events; and an increase in tropical cyclone peak wind intensity.[78] These rates are likely to rise with continued increases in temperature. Combined with SLR, this could result in higher storm surges causing reef and coastline damage. The intensity of regional weather patterns is expected to escalate, and the number of storm events is predicted to increase.

3.1.9 Scenario Building

Monument managers seek understanding what the future may look like for the Monument ecosystems. Science-based predictions help shape decisions and regulations in the present. Resilience to climate change depends in part on the presence of other stressors. Detailed baseline data is needed for the creation of accurate models to help managers assess future scenarios and predict how climate change might impact the Monument's resources. Integrating global climate change predictions with regional dynamic information can help produce regionally specific forecasts. Vulnerability assessments can prepare Monument managers for potential impacts by anticipating environmental shifts and providing the basis for informed management plans on climate resiliency.

3.2 Biological Environment

The ecosystems in and around the Monument are among the most biologically diverse in the Western Pacific. This area features a great diversity of seamount and hydrothermal vent life and provides opportunities for research that exist nowhere else. Extreme underwater conditions in the deepest portions of the monument were considered inhospitable until the past few decades, when in fact, these unique environments are home to rare biological communities. Extreme pressure and heat, toxic levels of dissolved metals and gases, and extreme reducing conditions are found at many Monument features. In spite of these conditions life not only exists, but thrives; albeit in forms that are uniquely suited for these specific locations.

Because sunlight can only reach 3,000 ft below sea level in ideal conditions, organisms living in the deepest parts of the ocean rely on chemosynthetic energy instead of photosynthetic energy for survival. "Chemosynthesis" is the utilization of chemical energy (hydrogen, methane, hydrogen sulfide and iron) rather than sunlight to convert carbon into organic compounds in a process known as carbon dioxide fixation. Chemosynthetic ecosystems develop in places where chemical energy formed by geological processes below the ocean floor is released through the floor surface, and becomes available as an energy source for benthic organisms. Organisms in chemosynthetic habitats require distinct conditions, such as the presence of sulfide and methane, to maintain their populations. The life-cycles and evolutionary history of organisms adapted to these isolated and dynamic ecosystems remains a question for researchers.

3.2.1. Mariana Trench Unit/Refuge Biological Environments

The Mariana Trench is inhabited by biological communities with a tolerance for extremely high hydrostatic pressure (e.g. pressure exerted on an object at depth). Hydrostatic pressure increases proportionally at deeper depths because of the increasing weight of water exerting a downward force. James Cameron's 2012 expedition into the Mariana Trench produced a wealth of new biological observations. Scripps Ocean Institute analyzed the megafaunal community data and determined it was composed primarily of elpidiid holothurians, amphipods, and xenophyophores.[139]

*Giant amphipod (**Hirondellea gigas**) / Mariana Trench*
Photo: JAMSTEC

This analysis revealed vibrant groups of organisms living in the ocean's deepest regions. The Mariana Trench hosts large single-cell amoebas called "xenophyophores," giant sea cucumbers, and giant shrimp-like crustaceans called "amphipods." These two-inch-long amphipods (*Hirondellea gigas*) survive by eating woodfall—tree and plant debris swept into the ocean that sinks to the bottom. Sea cucumbers dominate the Trench's biological communities. Different species of sea cucumbers exist at the various points of the Trench and they each have particular adaptations to survive in these depths.[79]

3.2.2. Volcanic Unit/Arc of Fire Refuge Biological Environments

Mariana Forearc Mud Volcanoes
Serpentinite is formed from seawater mixed with low-silica rocks containing one or more serpentine group minerals (high in magnesium and iron). The resulting fluid is alkaline in nature and rich in calcium. Because this fluid is lighter than the surrounding water, it rises to the ocean floor through ruptures in the mantle. This fluid serves as the basis for biological communities in the forearc region.

The Mariana Forearc is home to a number of serpentinite volcanoes (also called mud volcanoes), some that rise as high as over a mile tall and spread over 18 miles in diameter.[80] Mineral fluids high in inorganic compounds provide a source of nutrition for chemosynthetic microorganisms at the base of the food-chain. Mud volcano biological communities often include several trophic levels but tend to be dominated by species in symbiotic relationships with chemosynthetic organisms. For example, the South Chamorro Seamount located in the northern Mariana forearc hosts mussel communities nourished by bacteria that feed on minerals in the fluid.

A serpentinite site located in the Southern Mariana Forearc supports a community of vesicomyid clams that have a symbiotic relationship with serpentinized peridotite released on the ocean surface.[81] This is an important finding because if serpentinized peridotite hosts large communities of clams, and peridotite is present on the Trench inner wall, then it is possible more clam communities will be discovered. Other megafauna found around mud volcanoes include gastropods, tubeworms, and galatheid crabs.[82]

3.2.3. Volcanic Unit/Arc of Fire Refuge Biological Environments - Mariana Magmatic Arc and Mariana Trough

As Earth's molten mantle pushes upward through the ocean floor, it creates prominent geologic features such as seamounts, which are often isolated reliefs in an otherwise flat ocean plain. Seamounts form in various sizes and shapes. Their physical structure dictates the surrounding hydrodynamic characteristics. The movement of water around these seamounts determines the biological communities associated with them. Most seamounts have a magmatic origin and are therefore are also sites of hydrothermal venting.[83] Venting is the expulsion of fluids and gases released during the subduction process. The Volcanic Unit/Arc of Fire Refuge includes both seamounts and hydrothermal vents, discussed in previous and subsequent sections.

Seamounts
Seamounts are defined as large underwater mountains rising at least 280 ft above the ocean floor. Although environmental conditions around individual seamounts vary, the determining factors for flora and fauna include: light levels; the productivity of the overlying water; the hydrodynamics of the surrounding water column; geomorphology; geological origin and age; and hydrothermal activity.[84] Seamounts along magmatic arcs facilitate species dispersal by acting as stepping stones across the open ocean, thereby extending a species' distribution.[84] Currents, pelagic larval duration[†††††], and adult mobility are also important dispersal factors in a species' ability to colonize available seamounts.

[†††††] Pelagic larval duration: the time an aquatic larva spends in the water column

Seamounts can be important fish habitat, supporting sizeable stocks of seamount-associated species such as alfonsino, pelagic armorhead, orange roughy, and toothfish.[85] If seamounts are not properly managed, stocks associated with these features can be quickly depleted and take a long time to recover due to their isolation and limited larval influx. Whereas productivity around the seamount dictates the fish assemblage; Temperature, oxygen concentration, and pressure determine the benthic community composition.[84] Filter feeders such as sponges, corals, and crinoids tend to dominate the benthic invertebrate assemblages.[86]

Champagne vent site, spewing bubbles, from the NW Eifuku volcano, venting fluids at 217 degrees F. Photo: NOAA

Hydrothermal Vents

The first biological vent community was discovered in 1977 in the deep sea, near the coast of Ecuador.[87] Since then, vent communities have been documented around the world and as of 2005, 712 vent species were identified[88]. This number will continue to increase with additional deep sea exploration and improved technology.

The majority (71%) of the known vent species are associated exclusively with hydrothermal vents. The basic building blocks for hydrothermal vent communities are chemosynthetic bacteria. The effluent emitted from vent chimneys is rich in reduced irons (mostly sulfide) which are used by these autotrophic bacteria to convert CO_2, water, and nitrate into organic substances.[89] The unique chemical composition of the water at hydrothermal vents and methane seeps provides microorganisms with chemical energy needed to synthesize organic compounds.[90] Microbial communities living in vent ecosystems are called "extremophiles" because of their tolerance for extremely harsh conditions. Extremophiles live at extreme depths, have diverse metabolisms, and can process hydrogen sulfide (a gas that is toxic to most animals) as an energy source.

Only 5% of all vent species are associated with cold seeps.[90] Cold seeps on the seafloor release mainly methane and sulfides from subsurface activity. Seeps and vents share similar biological characteristics including: high animal biomass; reliance on reduced compounds from symbiosis; chemosynthesis; and localized distribution. Although a limited number of species are adapted to the extreme habitats of hydrothermal vents, the total biomass found on these features can be extensive. The nutrient-rich vents often support crowded biological communities 500-1000 times denser than non-vent deep sea areas.[91, 92]

Vent community composition varies from location to location due to isolation and surrounding ocean currents. Similar to mud volcanoes, they are usually dominated by organisms in a symbiotic relationship with the chemosynthetic bacteria.[93] Animals living on the periphery of hydrothermal vents consume other microorganisms, and do not feed directly off the fluids escaping from the vents. Polychaete worms, shrimp, crabs, and a few fish species have adapted to these environments.[91]

Biological community of mussels and galathied crabs at NW Eifuku volcano Photo: NOAA

The composition of hydrothermal vent communities in the Mariana arc demonstrate a strong genetic relationship to vent species found along the mid-ocean ridge; 59% of the species are common to both areas, while 25% of vent species in the Mariana arc are unique to western Pacific vents.[94] Biological vent communities in the Mariana arc are largely populated by snails and barnacles whereas other species commonly found at vents around the world (such as tubeworms) are poorly represented or absent altogether.[95]

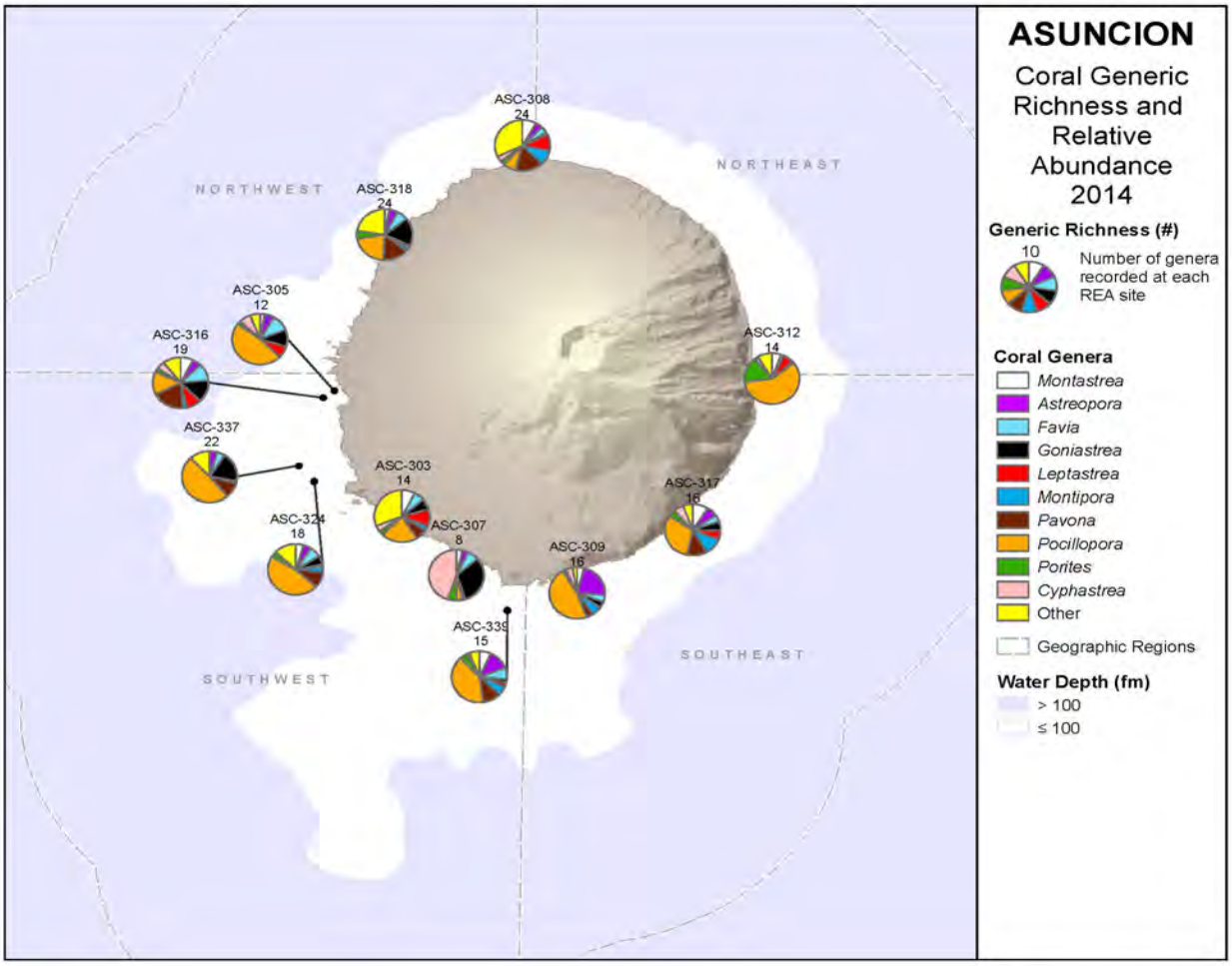
3.2.4. Islands Unit Biological Environments

Coral Reefs

Coral reefs are the building blocks of marine coastal ecosystems. Found in the upper portions of the ocean where light is able to penetrate, coral reefs serve as habitat for a vast number of marine species. Although there is less coral diversity in the northern islands, the health of the corals in the Islands Unit is better than that of the southern islands. Coral reef conditions in the southern islands vary due to human-induced stressors such as fishing, sedimentation, and nutrient loading.[96] By contrast, the isolation of the northern islands allows the coral reefs to remain in overall good condition.[97]

Coral reef community at Maug.
Photo: Jean Kenyon/USFWS

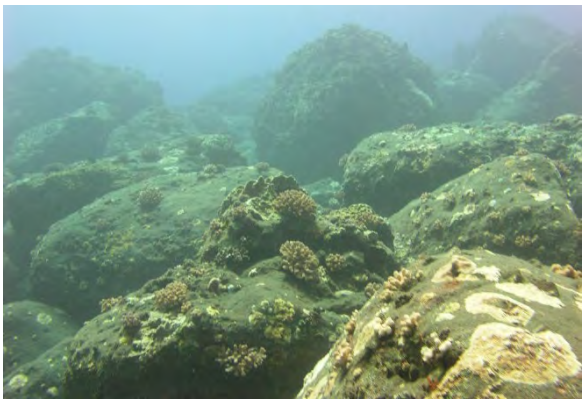
The major threat to corals is global climate change. Temperature extremes lead to bleaching; increased susceptibility to disease; increased severity of ENSO events and storms; and ocean acidification. Another potential threat to Monument corals is the crown-of-thorns starfish (*Acanthaster planci)*, known to be an avid predator of reef-building corals with a preference for branching and tabular corals such as *Acropora* species.[98] Coral reef surveys have been conducted around Asuncion, Farallon de Pajaros, and Maug. Survey data for each of these islands follows.



Source: NOAA

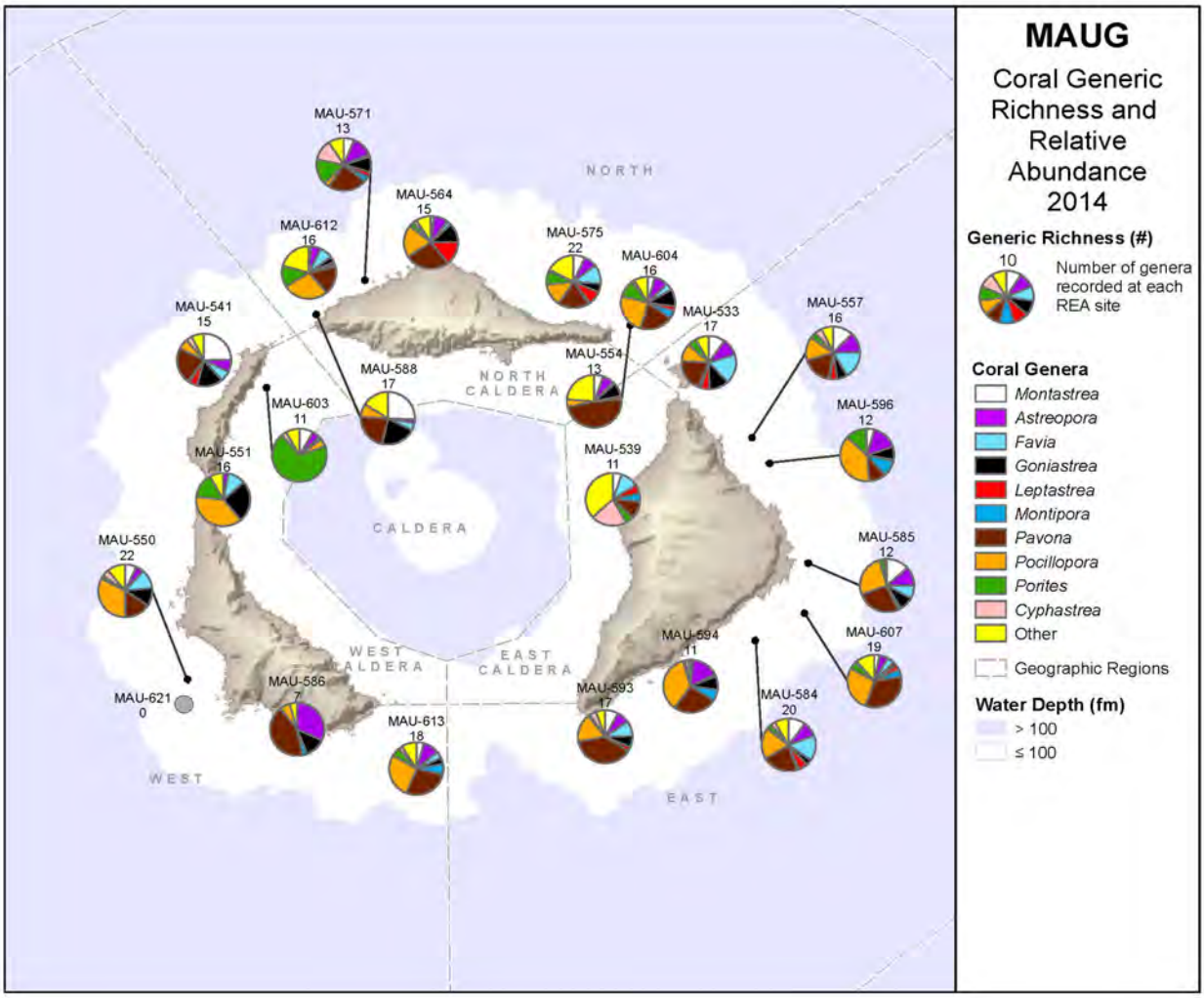
The genera *Pocillopora* and *Pavona* are important components in the coral fauna around Asuncion, and account for nearly 32% and 9%, respectively, of the total number of the island's coral colonies. According to the most recent data, 38 cases of coral disease and predation were documented at Asuncion, translating to an overall mean prevalence of ~3%. The major coral disease occurring at Asuncion was fungal infections.[‡‡‡‡‡98]

Corals at Asuncion. Photo: Jean Kenyon/USFWS



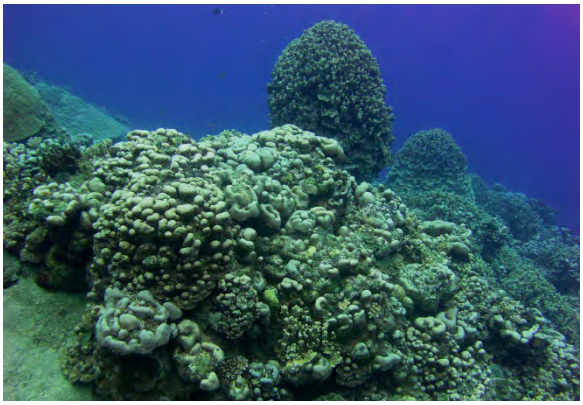
Benthic cover at Asuncion. Photos: Jean Kenyon/USFWS

[‡‡‡‡‡] *This research used provisional data provided to the authors by the CRED of the PIFSC, NMFS, NOAA.*

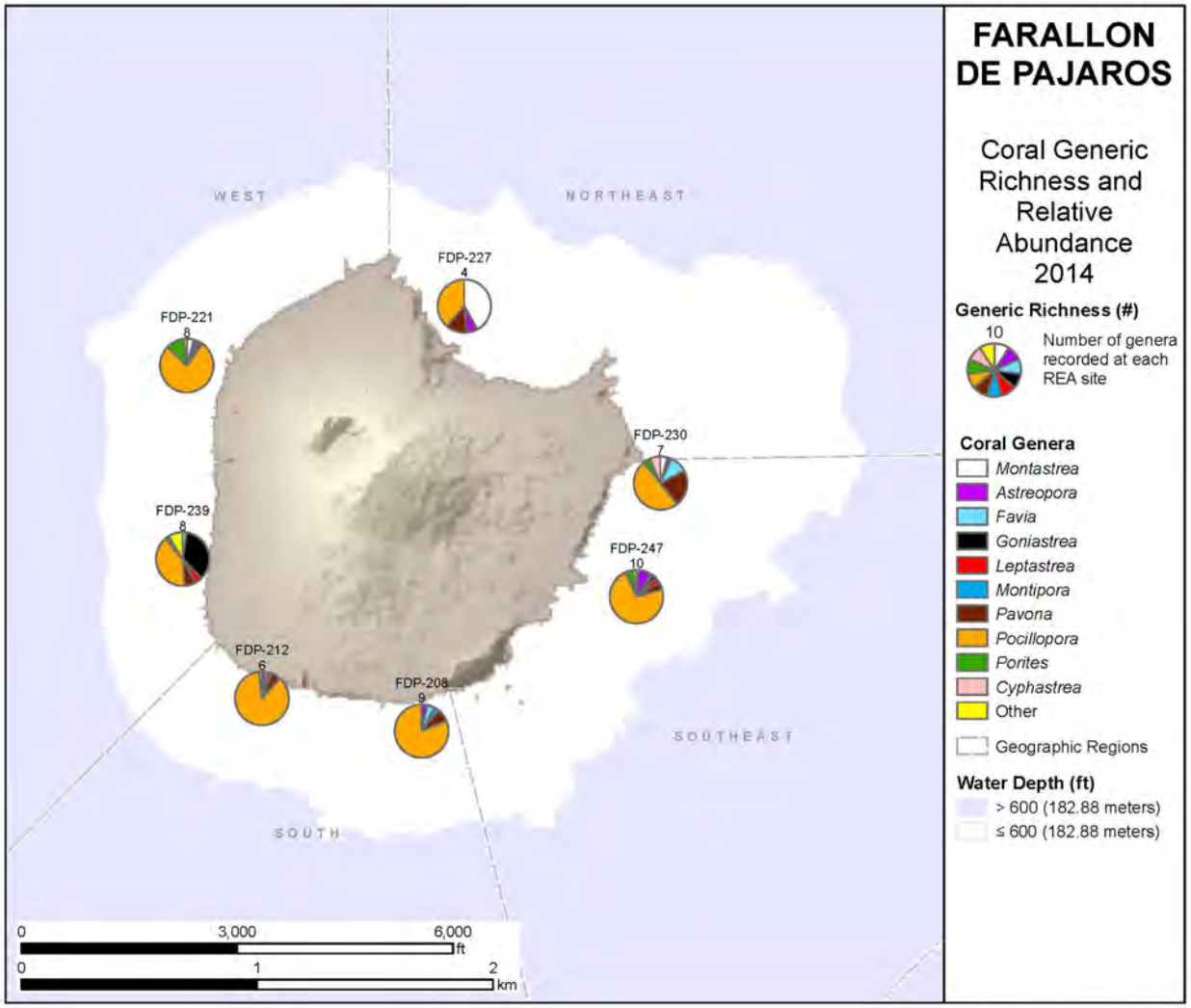


Source: NOAA

The mean cover of live corals around the island of Maug is approximately 34%; with *Pocillopora* and *Goniastrea* being the most common coral genera, followed by *Montastraea*, *Favia*, and *Montipora*. From the MARAMP surveys, there were 55 cases of coral disease and predation recorded at Maug, which translated to an overall mean prevalence of ~1.2%. The major coral diseases recorded around Maug were fungal infection, tube worm infestations, and bleaching.[98]



Coral seascape at Maug. Photo: Jean Kenyon/USFWS



Source: NOAA

At Farallon de Pajaros, coral cover was relatively low during MARAMP surveys, averaging 13.6%. *Pocillopora* and *Porites* were the most abundant corals recorded island-wide. The 2014 MARAMP surveys enumerated 10 cases of coral disease and predation at Farallon de Pajaros, translating to an overall mean prevalence of ~0.9%; fungal infections and bleaching were the two major diseases recorded there.[99]

In summary, the MARAMP surveys indicate that coral cover varies from island to island, as well as across different regions of each island. The average coral cover is considerably higher at Maug and Asuncion than the average coral cover at Farallon de Pajaros. Coral diversity is also significantly greater around Maug and Asuncion (29 genera) than around Farallon de Pajaros (17 genera).

Coral diversity across the Pacific varies greatly due to several factors, including water temperature and clarity, geology, and presence/absence of human influences. In general, across the Pacific coral diversity decreases as you move away from main centers of diversity in the Coral Triangle (Papua New Guinea, Philippines, and Indonesia) and the Great Barrier Reef. For example, the Coral Triangle hosts 581 species and 81 genera of reef-building scleractinian corals[99], whereas French Polynesia hosts 163 species and 38 genera, while the eastern Pacific and the coast of Mexico hosts 49 species and 12 genera.[100]

3.2.5 Other Habitat Types

Benthic refers to anything associated with or occurring on the bottom of a body of water, in this case the ocean floor. Emphasis is placed on coral reefs when describing ocean benthic habitats, however, other substrates are also important components of the marine environment. These benthic habitats are particularly important in the Islands Unit where coral cover is relatively sparse. Habitat surveys from the MARAMP cruises show varying amounts of sand, macroalgae, and crustose coralline algae around the islands of Maug, Asuncion, and Farallon de Pajaros.

Macroalgae is an important part of benthic habitats, as it is a major food source for many herbivorous fish. Macroalgae comprised a significant portion of the benthic substrate at both Maug and Asuncion (>12%), but is much less common (<4%) at Farallon de Pajaros. Although there was a significant difference in diversity, the most common species at all three islands were the brown algae *Lobophora* and the green algae *Halimeda*. [101] Other important habitat types include sand and coralline algae. Sand cover was highly variable, making up the entire habitat in some sites and all together absent in others. Regardless, sand cover was generally present in the highest percentages on the outer flanks and shelves on the southeast sides of the islands. Across all MARAMP surveys, crustose coralline algae cover averaged 8% of the substrate, and existed in highest concentrations on the south and west sides of the islands. [101]

Diver documents the benthic habitat at Maug.
Photo: Stefani Gordon

3.3 Fauna

3.3.1 Fish

Tonguefish swims by at NW Eifuku. Photo: NOAA

Coral reefs and other benthic substrates are important habitats for a variety of fish species. The reef fish found around the Mariana archipelago are representative of the wider Indo-Pacific fauna. Over 427 reef fish species have been documented in the northern islands of the Mariana Archipelago.[101] The most common reef fish families in the northern islands are tangs, damsels, wrasses, and butterfly fish.[102] Sharks, snappers, and jacks are found in abundance around the islands of Asuncion, Maug, and Farallon de Pajaros.

Although species diversity is lower in the northern islands than the southern islands; the total fish biomass across all trophic levels is three times greater and the biomass of large predators is thirteen times greater than the southern islands.[101] Typical of many isolated islands, the number and size of apex-predators per unit area is much higher in the Islands Unit than in the waters around the inhabited southern islands. Large numbers of apex predators indicate a flourishing ecosystem at every trophic level in the food chain.

3.3.2 Macroinvertebrates

Giant clam decorates the reef at Maug. Photo: NOAA

Invertebrates such as clams, sea cucumbers, and sea urchins are an important group of reef- associated species. The invertebrate fauna across the Mariana archipelago is quite diverse, with over 500 species of marine mollusks, numerous species of crustaceans, and many species of echinoderms.[103] Macroinvertebrate fauna around Maug has been found to be typical of the macroinvertebrate composite in Indo-Pacific waters.

Macroinvertebrates exist in relatively low numbers across the Islands Unit, compared to their abundance around the other islands in the archipelago. The giant clam is the lone exception, which thrives along the southern coast of Maug.[101]

3.3.3 Marine Mammals

Marine mammals are vertebrates who have adapted to life in the ocean. Many marine mammals are able to remain submerged for a long time, but must surface for air. In order to stay under water for long periods, they store extra oxygen in their muscles and blood than do land mammals. Marine mammals can direct their blood flow to feed only their vital organs in order to conserve oxygen and can slow their heart rate as a measure to use less oxygen on deep or extended dives. They are relatively large mammals characterized by streamlined bodies that glide easily through water.

Rough-toothed and bottlenose dolphins off Aguijan. Photo:D.Webster NOAA/NMFS/PIFSC

All marine mammals are protected in U.S. waters by the ESA and/or the MMPA. ESA-listed marine mammals that may occur in the Islands Unit are the blue whale, fin whale, sperm whale, humpback whale, and sei whale. Whale species documented in the Mariana archipelago include: short-finned pilot whales, pygmy killer whales, Bryde's whales, Cuvier's beaked whales, melon-headed whales, pygmy sperm whales and dwarf sperm whales. Other cetaceans encountered in the archipelago include: spinner dolphins, bottlenose, pantropical spotted dolphins, striped dolphins, Risso's dolphins, and rough-toothed dolphins.[104,105]

These animals are threatened by a multitude of hazards including: marine debris; entanglement in fishing gear; caught as by-catch in nets and on longlines; collision with large vessels; and sonar operations. Marine pollution, including microplastics; oil spills; and dumping of industrial wastes into waterways and the sea, can lead to bioaccumulation of toxic substances in body tissues. Over-fishing of prey species, particularly commercial species such as anchovy, delete their food supply. Targeted pursuits include Striped dolphin drive hunts in Japan, the Caribbean and Sri Lanka; and, Risso's dolphin hunted for meat and oil in Indonesia, Japan, the Lesser Antilles, and the Solomon Islands. Fisheries that specifically target pilot whales still exist in Japan and the Lesser Antilles.

3.3.4 Sea Turtles

All sea turtle species are listed as either threatened or endangered under the Endangered Species Act. Although there are no records of turtles nesting in the Islands Unit, it falls within the geographic migration range of five turtle species. They are the green turtle, leatherback, hawksbill, and loggerhead which are all listed as endangered in the Marianas; and the olive Ridley turtle, which is listed as threatened.

3.3.5 Seabirds

Migratory bird species (including most seabirds) are protected by the Migratory Bird Treaty Act, which prohibits the take of protected species, their nests, and eggs. Three of the seabirds that may occur in the Islands Unit are also listed under the ESA as threatened or endangered (Hawaiian Petrel, Newell's Shearwater, and Short-tailed Albatross). Human-induced threats include hooking and drowning on commercial long-line gear; entanglement in derelict fishing gear; ingestion of plastic debris; and contamination from oil spills. Over-fishing directly impacts seabirds, forcing them to fly further in search of food.

Of the seabird species that may be found in the Islands Unit, some are considered residents while others are transient visitors. Resident species include: black noddy, brown noddy, great frigatebird, white tern, white-tailed tropicbird, red-tailed tropicbird, wedge-tailed shearwater, sooty tern, masked booby, brown booby, and red-footed booby. Seabird species that are considered visitors include: Hawaiian Petrel, Newell's shearwater, Leach's storm-petrel, Matsudaira's storm-petrel, short-tailed shearwater, and Audubon's shearwater.

3.3.6 Vent Fauna

The deep-sea hydrothermal vents are populated with a unique array of animals capable of existing in these extreme environments. In addition to the extreme pressure, low temperatures, and lack of light, the hydrothermal vent regions show extremes in temperature, areas of very low oxygen, and the presence of toxic hydrogen sulfide and heavy metals. The vent communities contain specially adapted animals that not only tolerate these conditions, they often flourish under them. The have evolved mechanisms for detoxifying heavy metals and hydrogen sulfide. Squat lobsters and limpets occur throughout the region and tube worms, polychaete worms, crabs, and shrimp are found in most areas. Snail Vent in the Toto caldera is named after the rather large hairy vent snails (*Phymorhynchus* and *Alviniconcha* species) that live there.

A stalked crinoid (~5 inches across) rests on the caldera sea floor at West Rota volcano. Crinoids are suspension feeders, using their crown, which is covered with sticky pinnules, to capture zooplankton. Photo: NOAA

Snails, crabs, shrimp, and anemones compete for space at Snail Vent hydrothermal site. Photo: NOAA

3.4 Conservation Targets

Conservation targets are those species that are given special consideration in the management of the Monument because they have been identified by one or more of the Monument managers. Management for these focal species and the habitats that support them will benefit other native species that are present. Table 3.1 identifies these priority species of concern for the Monument. This designation is meant to encourage further research and monitoring of these species to aid in management decisions.

3.4.1 Conservation Target Selection

The CNMI Division of Fish and Wildlife and Guam Division of Aquatic and Wildlife Resources each developed a Strategic Wildlife Action Plan (SWAP) for their respective jurisdictions. These strategies include a determination of species of greatest conservation need in the region along with recommended conservation actions. Broad public participation was an essential element in developing and implementing these conservation plans. Those marine species and seabirds identified in the SWAP as Species of Greatest Conservation Need (SGCN) for CNMI and Guam that occur within the Monument are recognized as conservation targets for the Monument. For each SGCN, CNMI and Guam have identified one or more clear objectives that, when met, will contribute to the overall goal of species and habitat conservation.

Special consideration will also be given to species that may occur within Monument boundaries that are listed as endangered or threatened under the Endangered Species Act. Some conservation targets fall under all three categories. Management of these target species and habitats that support them will benefit many of the other native and migratory species that are present in the Monument.

A grey reef shark cruises amongst a school of fusilier at Supply Reef. Photo:Oliver Vetter/NOAA

Marianas Trench Marine National Monument Conservation Targets							
	Common Name	**Scientific Name**	**Chamorro**	**Carolinian**	**ESA status**	**CNMI *SGCN***	**Guam *SGCN***
Seabirds	Brown booby	*Sula leucogaster*	Lu'ao				**X**
	Great frigatebird	*Fregata minor palmerstoni*	Paya'ya	Asaf		**X**	
	Hawaiian petrel	*Pterodroma sandwichensis*			**E**		
	Masked booby	*Sula dactylatra*	La'ao	Amwo		**X**	
	Newell's shearwater	*Puffinus auricularis*			**T**		
	Short-tailed albatross	*Phoebastria albatrus*			**E**		
	Wedge-tailed	*Puffinus pacificus*	Lifa'ru	Lifo'ro		**X**	
	White-tailed tropicbird	*Phaethon lepturusi*	Utak				**X**
Marine Mammals	Blue whale	*Balaenoptera musculus*	Bayena		**E**		
	Bryde's whale	*Balaenoptera edeni*	Bayena				**X**
	Cuvier's beaked whale	*Ziphius cavirostris*	Bayena				**X**
	Dwarf sperm whale	*Kogia sima*	Bayena				**X**
	Fin whale	*Balaenoptera physalus*	Bayena		**E**		
	Humpback whale	*Megaptera novaeangliae*	Bayena		**E**		**X**
	Killer whale	*Orcinus orca*	Bayena				**X**
	Melonheaded whale	*Peponocephala electra*	Bayena				**X**
	Pygmy sperm whale	*Kogia breviceps*	Bayena				**X**
	Risso's dolphin	*Grampus griseus*	Toninos				**X**
	Sei whale	*Balaenoptera borealis*	Bayena		**E**		**X**
	Shortfinned pilot whale	*Globicephala macrorhynchus*	Bayena				**X**
	Sperm whale	*Physeter macrocephalus*	Bayena		**E**		**X**
	Spinner dolphin	*Stenella longirostris*	Toninos	Dofen, Ghu		**X**	**X**
	Striped dolphin	*Stenella coeruleoalba*	Toninos				**X**
Reptiles	Green sea turtle	*Chelonia mydas*	Haggan bed'di	Wong mool	**E**	**X**	**X**
	Hawksbill turtle	*Eretmochelys imbricata*	Haggan karai	Wong maaw	**E**	**X**	**X**
	Leatherback turtle	*Dermochelys coriacea*	Hagan tasi	Wong raaw	**E**		
	Loggerhead sea turtle	*Caretta caretta*	Hagan tasi	Wong	**E**		
	Olive Ridley sea turtle	*Lepidochelys olivacea*	Haggan	Wong	**T**		
Fish	Angelfish	Pomacanthidae	Ababang				**X**
	Bumphead parrotfish	*Bolbometopon muricatum*	Pachak, fohmo	Roow, ghúúm		**X**	**X**
	Butterflyfish	Chaetodontidae	Ababang				**X**
	Emperors	Lethrinidae	Mafute, lililuk				**X**
	Giant manta ray	*Mobula birostris*			**T**		
	Goatfish	Mullidae					**X**
	Grey reef shark	*Carcharhinus amblyrhynchos*	Halu'on unai	Limwe		**X**	
	Groupers	Serranidae	Gådau				**X**
	Hawkfish	Cirrhitidae	Aluda				
	Napoleon wrasse	*Cheilinus undulatus*	Tanguisson	Mem		**X**	**X**
	Oceanic whitetip shark	*Carcharhinus longimanus*			**T**		
	Rabbitfish	Siganidae	Mañåhak hiteng	Umwaiyé			**X**
	Scalloped hammerhead	*Sphyrna lewini*			**T**		
	Snappers	Lutjanidae	Tagafi, fafaet				**X**
	Steephead Parrotfish	*Chlorus microrhinus*	Laggua	Igan-wosh		**X**	**X**
	Surgeonfish	Acanthuridae	Hugupau, tataga				**X**
	Trevallies	Carangidae					**X**
	Wrasse	Labridae					**X**

Table 3.1 Conservation Targets

Marianas Trench Marine National Monument Conservation Targets							
	Common Name	**Scientific Name**	**Chamorro**	**Carolinian**	**ESA status**	**CNMI *SGCN***	**Guam *SGCN***
Invertebrates	Bear paw clam	*Hippopus hippopus*	Hima	Shiim, tto			**X**
	Branched murex	*Chicoreus ramosus*	Do'gas	Abwel		**X**	
	Collector urchin	*Tripneustes gratilla*	Nufu	Larr		**X**	
	Common spider conch	*Lambis lambis*	Toro	Li'yang		**X**	
	Day octopus	*Octopus cyanea*	Gamson	Ghuus		**X**	
	Elongate giant clam	*Tridacna maxima*	Hima	Shiim; tto		**X**	**X**
	Fluted giant clam	*Tridacna squamosa*	Hima	Shiim, tto		**X**	**X**
	Horned helmet shell	*Cassis cornuta*	Kulu prensa	Sa'wi, schap		**X**	
	Pectinate venus, Lala clam	*Gafrarium pectinatum*	Tapon; amsun	Ai'mett; ghatil		**X**	
	Southern giant clam	*Tridacna derasa*	Hima	Shiim, tto			**X**
	Spiny lobster	*Panulirus penicillatus* *P. versicolor* *P. longipes*	Mahonggang, gupo'alao	Yuurr		**X**	**X**
	Trumpet triton	*Charonia tritonis*	Kulu	Sa'wi		**X**	**X**
	Turban shell	*Turbo petholatus* *T. setosus* *T. argyrostomus*	Aliling pulan	Lifott maram		**X**	
Corals	Blunt Coral	*Acropora retusa*	Kuraling	Yeal	**T**	**X**	
	Hard Coral	Scleractinia	Cho'cho'				**X**
	Needle Coral	*Seriatopora aculeate*	Kuraling	Yeal	**T**	**X**	
	Soft Coral	Octocorallia					**X**
	Staghorn coral	*Acropora globiceps*	Kuraling	Yeal	**T**	**X**	

Table 3.1 Conservation Targets

3.4.2 Conservation Targets - Seabirds

Brown Booby (*Sula leucogaster*) Status: **Guam SGCN**
Most brown boobies are brown all over, apart from a white underside. Females have a yellowish bill and males have a grayish green bill. They dive for fish and squid from heights of up to 100 ft and they also skim low over the ocean surface, looking for flying fish, which they catch in midair. They often fly in front of ships, watching for fish caught up in the bow-waves. The Brown booby is known to breed on Uracus, Maug, and Asunción. It is the most common booby in the CNMI but was extirpated in Guam by the brown tree snake. Maintaining a healthy population in CNMI will aid in efforts to eventually restore a population on Guam when suitable predator-free habitat is available.

Great Frigatebird (*Fregata minor palmerstoni*) Status: **CNMI SGCN**
Great Frigatebirds are large, with long, slender wings, deeply forked, tail and long, pale blue/grey to blackish hooked bill. Adults have mostly black plumage. Adult males have a red inflatable throat pouch. Females have white breasts and on average are larger than males.

Hawaiian Petrel (*Pterodroma sandwichensis)* Status: **Endangered**
The Hawaiian petrel has a dark gray head, wings, and tail, and a white forehead and belly. It has a stout grayish-black bill that is hooked at the tip, and pink and black feet. Although they only nest in the Hawaiian Islands, the Hawaiian petrel is a bird of the open Pacific seas, feeding on squid, fish, and crustaceans. They are an occasional visitor to the waters of the Monument.

Masked Booby (*Sula dactylatra)* Status: **CNMI SGCN**
The Masked booby is the largest of all the boobies with a wingspan over five ft. It is white with a brown or black edge on the wing feathers and a yellow bill. Masked boobies forage in offshore and pelagic waters of the Islands Unit. They are known to breed on the islands of Farallon de Pajaros and Maug and venture out at as far as 1,200 mi. from breeding colonies during nonbreeding season.[106] Further research is needed to determine the current population status and distribution of this species in the Mariana Archipelago.

Newell's Shearwater (*Puffinus auricularis newelli)* Status: **Threatened**
The Newell's shearwater has a glossy black top, a white underside, and a black bill that is sharply hooked at the tip. Shearwaters tend to be sociable at sea, and the Newell's shearwater is known to occasionally follow ships. Shearwaters feed by surface seizing and pursuit plunging. Often, shearwaters will dip their heads under the water to sight their prey before submerging. Although they are believed to breed only in the Hawaiian Islands, Newell's shearwaters occasionally visit the CNMI.

Short-tailed Albatross (*Phoebastria albatrus*) Status: **Endangered**
With a wingspan of over 7 ft, the short-tailed albatross is the largest seabird in the North Pacific. Its long, narrow wings are adapted to soaring low over the ocean. It is best distinguished from other albatrosses by its large, bubblegum-pink bill. Adults have an entirely white back, white or light gold head and back of neck, and black and white wings. Young birds also have the large pink bill, but their feathers are dark chocolate brown, gradually turning white as the bird ages. After breeding, short-tailed albatrosses move to feeding areas in the North Pacific, intermittently including the waters of the Monument. When feeding, albatrosses alight on the ocean surface to seize their prey, including squid, fish, and shrimp.

Wedge-tailed Shearwater (*Puffinus pacificus)* Status: **CNMI SGCN**
Wedge-tailed shearwaters are brownish-gray on their backs and tails with light gray on their chests. This bird is about the size of a pigeon. Wedge-tailed shearwaters can stay at sea for years. Their webbed feet make it possible for them to kick off from the surface of the water or from the crest of a wave. Although they have been sighted in flight around several of the northern islands, wedge-tailed shearwaters are only known to nest on Mañagaha Island in the CNMI. Further research is needed to determine the current population status and distribution of wedge-tailed shearwaters in the Mariana Archipelago.

White-tailed tropicbird (*Phaethon lepturus)* Status: **Guam SGCN**
Resident seabirds on Farallon de Pajaros, Maug, and Asunción, white-tailed tropicbirds are white with black markings and yellow bills with notches in them to help them hold their slippery prey. They have sharply pointed wings and two long, white feathers streaming from their tails. Tropicbirds hover over the water to catch flying fish, their main prey item. They can also dive from high up in the air to catch smaller fish and squid. Maintaining a healthy white-tailed tropicbird population in CNMI will help Guam's efforts to eventually restore a nesting population in northern Guam.

White-tailed tropicbird / USFWS

3.4.3 Conservation Targets - Marine Mammals

Blue Whale (*Balaenoptera musculus)* Status: **Endangered**
The blue whale has a long-body and comparatively slender shape, a broad, flat rostrum when viewed from above, a proportionately smaller dorsal fin than other baleen whales, and a mottled gray color pattern that appears light blue when seen through the water. At 98 ft in length and 210 tons or more in weight, it is the largest existing animal and the heaviest that ever existed. They primarily feed on zooplankton, especially krill. The blue whale inhabits all oceans and may travel through Monument waters during the winter months.

Bryde's Whale (*Balaenoptera edeni)* Status: **Guam SGCN**
Bryde's whales are members of the baleen whale family and are considered one of the "great whales" that can reach lengths of 40-55 ft and weigh up to about 45 tons. They have a sleek body that is dark gray in color and white underneath. They can be distinguished from sei whales by three distinct prominent longitudinal ridges located on the animal's rostrum in front of the blowhole. Bryde's whales are the most common baleen whales likely to occur in the Islands Unit.

Cuvier's Beaked Whale (*Ziphius cavirostris)* Status: **Guam SGCN**
Cuvier's beaked whale, also known as the goosebeak whale, has a robust body weighing 5,500 pounds and reaching as long as 23 ft; with a small head which is about ten percent of its body length. Its forehead slopes to a short beak, and its mouth turns upward. They prefer deep-water habitats typically over 3,300 ft deep. A recent study of tagged Cuvier's beaked whales discovered they perform some of the deepest and longest dives of any mammal at nearly 10,000 ft! Squid are its primary food, augmented with fish or crustaceans.[107]

Dwarf Sperm Whale (*Kogia sima)* Status: **Guam SGCN**
The dwarf sperm whale can reach lengths of up to 9 ft and weigh between 300-600 pounds. They are similar in appearance to the pygmy sperm whale, but have a larger dorsal fin, generally set nearer the middle of the back. Also, the dwarf sperm whale's blowhole is positioned further forward. Similar to squids, dwarf sperm whales use an ink-like liquid to evade and deter predators.

Fin Whale (*Balaenoptera physalus)* Status: **Endangered**
The fin whale is long, sleek, and streamlined, with a V-shaped head which is flat on top. It is the second largest animal after the blue whale, growing to 90 ft long and weighing nearly 82 tons. Among the fastest of the great whales, it is capable of bursts of speed of up to 23 mph leading to its nickname the "greyhound of the sea." Its most unusual characteristic is the asymmetrical coloring of the lower jaw, which is white or creamy yellow on the right side and mottled black on the left side.[108]

Humpback Whale (*Megaptera novaeangliae)* Status: **Endangered, Guam SGCN**
Reaching between 40-50 ft in length, a humpback whale can weigh up to 48 tons. They are identified from other whales due to their large flippers, almost one-third of their body size, and the hump on their backs. Humpback whales eat fish and krill. The North Pacific population of the humpback whale is divided into several stocks depending on where the winter grounds are located. The stock that occurs in the Mariana Archipelago is part of the Western Pacific stock that migrates into the region every winter.[109]

Killer Whale (*Orcinus orca)* Status: **Guam SGCN**
Killer whales, also known as Orcas, have a distinctive color pattern, with black back and white belly. They have a conspicuous white patch above and behind the eye and a gray or white saddle behind the dorsal fin. They can grow as long as 32 ft and can weigh as much as 11 tons. With no known natural predators, the killer whale is considered to be the top predator of the oceans.[110]

Melonheaded Whale (*Peponocephala electra)* Status: **Guam SGCN**
Melon-headed whales can reach a length of 9 ft and weight of 460 pounds. They have a small head with a rounded melon and no discernable beak. Melon-headed whales make fast, low leaps from the water as they swim. They prey on squid, fishes, and occasionally crustaceans.

Pygmy Sperm Whale (*Kogia breviceps*) Status: **Guam SGCN**
Like the sperm whales they are named after, the pygmy sperm whale has teeth in the lower jaw only. They grow to a maximum length of 14 ft and weigh up to 900 pounds. Pygmy sperm whales are often confused with sharks because the head and lower jaw are somewhat shark-like in appearance. On each side of its head is a light, bracket-shaped line called a "false gill" that resembles the gill slits of fish. Similar to dwarf sperm whales, they have the ability to use an ink-like liquid to evade and deter predators.

Risso's Dolphin (*Grampus griseus*) Status: **Guam SGCN**
Risso's dolphins are medium sized cetaceans that can reach lengths of 13 ft and weigh up to 1,100 pounds. They have a bulbous head with a vertical crease and an indistinguishable beak. Calves have a dark cape and saddle, however, as Risso's dolphins age, their coloration lightens from black, dark gray or brown to pale gray or almost white. They feed on fish, krill, squid, octopus and cuttlefish mainly at night when their prey is closer to the surface. Historically, large numbers of Risso's dolphins were killed incidental to tuna purse seine fishing in the eastern tropical Pacific Ocean.

Sei Whale (*Balaenoptera borealis*) Status: **Endangered, Guam SGCN**
Sei whales are considered the fastest swimming cetaceans, reaching top speeds of 34.5 mph. These large animals can reach lengths of 60 ft and weigh 50 tons. Sei whales have a long, sleek body that is dark bluish-gray to black in color and pale underneath. During the 19th and 20th centuries, sei whales were targeted and greatly depleted by commercial hunting and whaling, with an estimated 300,000 animals killed for their meat and oil. Two sei whales have been sighted and tagged in the vicinity of the Mariana Islands. Although sei whales are distributed throughout the world's oceans they are one of the least studied whale species, therefore data is limited.

Shortfinned Pilot Whale (*Globicephala macrorhynchus*) Status: **Guam SGCN**
Shortfinned pilot whales are the second largest species in the dolphin family after killer whales with a maximum male size of 24 ft and 6600 pounds. They are black or dark grey with a grey or white cape. They have grey or almost white patches on their bellies and throats and a grey or white stripe which goes diagonally upwards from behind each eye.

Short-finned pilot whales seen spy-hopping during Marianas Cetacean Survey 2013. Photo: Adam Ü/NOAA

Sperm Whale (*Physeter macrocephalus*) Status: **Endangered, Guam SGCN**
Sperm whales are the largest of the toothed whales and the most sexually dimorphic cetaceans, with males considerably larger than females. Adult females may grow to lengths of 36 ft and weigh 15 tons. Adult males, however, reach about 52 ft and may weigh as much as 45 tons. Because sperm whales spend most of their time in deep waters, their diet consists of many larger organisms that also occupy deep waters of the ocean. Their principle prey is large squid, but they will also eat sharks, skates, and fishes. Dives may last over an hour and reach depths over 3,280 ft. Sperm whales are widely distributed in the global ocean. In the Pacific Ocean sperm whales are divided into three stocks. The stock that occurs in the Mariana Archipelago is part of the Asian stock.[111]

Spinner Dolphin (*Stenella longirostris*) Status: **CNMI & Guam SGCN**
The spinner dolphin is the only cetacean species that is known to be a year-round coastal resident in the CNMI and Guam. They are relatively small, reaching lengths of 7 ft and weighing up to 170 pounds. Spinner dolphins are best known for their above-water displays of leaping and spinning several times on their body axis. A single spinning leap can include as many as four body revolutions. Historically, the presence of dolphins was used by the tuna purse-seine fishery to find tuna. Dolphins could become trapped in the nets and drown and stress from being encircled in purse seines has also been documented as a very serious threat to dolphins. Currently, tuna imported into the U.S. under the Dolphin-Safe program does not allow the practice of setting on dolphins.

Striped Dolphin (*Stenella coeruleoalba*) Status: **Guam SGCN**
Striped dolphins' scientific name comes from the Latin words "caeruleus" and "albus," which mean "sky blue" and "white," respectively, referring to the animals distinct color pattern on the dorsal and lateral portions of their body. They can reach 9 ft in length and weigh up to 285 pounds. Striped dolphins display a unique behavior called "roto-tailing" which is when the animal leaps high out of the water and while in the air it vigorously rotates its tail.

3.4.5 Conservation Targets - Marine Turtles

Green Turtle (*Chelonia mydas*) Status: **Endangered, CNMI & Guam SGCN**
Green turtles have been split into 11 distinct population segments (DPSs) under the ESA. The Central West Pacific[§§§§§] DPS was listed as endangered in 2016. A cooperative study of isolated reefs provided a resident population in the Mariana Archipelago at somewhere between 1,000-2,000 turtles.[112] Adults can weigh up to 500 pounds. Adult turtles residing near shore are herbivorous; feeding primarily on macroalgae and sea grasses. Hatchlings and juveniles living in pelagic habitats are most likely to eat soft-bodied invertebrates, jellyfish, and fish eggs. The common name "green sea turtle" is derived from the color of their body fat, which is green from the algae they eat.[113]

Hawksbill Turtle (*Eretmochelys imbricate*) Status: **Endangered, CNMI & Guam SGCN**
The hawksbill is one of the smaller sea turtles. It takes its species name (imbricata) from the overlapping plates on its upper shell and its common name from the shape of its hooked jaw. Its narrow head and jaws allow it to get food from crevices in coral reefs. They eat sponges, anemones, squid and shrimp.[114] Although uncommon in the Mariana Archipelago, hawksbill nesting has been documented in Guam. The hawksbill turtle used to be fished commercially in the CNMI. Both CNMI and Guam wildlife management agencies ask that this species be given careful consideration in developing conservation measures and included in any research project addressing sea turtles.

Leatherback Turtle (*Dermochelys coriacea*) Status: **Endangered**
The leatherback is the largest, deepest diving, and most migratory and wide ranging of all sea turtles. An adult can reach up to 8 ft in length and 500-2000 pounds. The skin is predominantly black with pale spotting; including a notable pink spot on the dorsal surface of the head in adults. The paddle-like clawless limbs are black with white margins and pale spotting. It is the only sea turtle without a hard bony shell, instead, its top shell consists of leathery, oil-saturated connective tissue overlaying loosely interlocking dermal bones. Although there are no reports of leatherback turtles nesting in the Mariana Archipelago, they are known to occur in both CNMI and Guam.

Loggerhead Sea Turtle (*Caretta caretta*) Status: **Endangered**
Loggerhead turtles are so named because of their very large heads, which support powerful jaws and enable them to feed on hard-shelled prey. Although the only known nesting areas for loggerheads in the North Pacific are found in southern Japan, loggerheads are famed for their vast migrations between foraging areas and nesting beaches. Guam and the CNMI are identified as being within the species' overall range. Also, the westward flowing current of the North Pacific Subtropical Gyre system, which late juvenile stage loggerheads use when returning to the western Pacific, passes through the Marianas region.[115]

Olive Ridley Sea Turtle (*Lepidochelys olivacea*) Status: **Threatened**
The olive Ridley was named for the olive color of its heart-shaped shell. It is one of the smallest of the sea turtles, with adults reaching 2½ ft in length. Although there is only one report of olive ridley turtle in waters around the Mariana Archipelago, an alleged capture near Saipan, they lead a highly pelagic existence and it is possible they could occur in the Islands Unit of the Monument.[116] They consume a variety of prey in the water column and on the seafloor, including snails, clams, tunicates, fish, fish eggs, crabs, oysters, sea urchins, shrimp, and jellyfish.[118]

[§§§§§] The range of the Central West Pacific DPS encompasses the Republic of Palau, Federated States of Micronesia, New Guinea, Solomon Islands, Marshall Islands, Guam, CNMI, and the Ogasawara Islands of Japan.

3.4.6 Conservation Targets - Fish

Angelfish (Pomacanthidae) Status: **Guam SGCN**
The Pomacanthidae family of angelfish are extremely flat-bodied with high dorsal and anal fins. They have long and flowing pelvic fins and large, fan-shaped caudal fin. Angelfish can be distinguished from butterflyfish by the presence of a spine on each side of the body.[117] In the 1980s-90s, Guam was a major source for aquarium fish. Outside of the Monument, angelfish are threatened by overfishing by the aquarium trade and loss of habitat.

Bumphead Parrotfish (*Bolbometopon muricatum)* Status: **CNMI & Guam SGCN**
The bumphead parrotfish is a highly prized food fish. They reach over 3 ft in length and are usually dark green except for the leading edge of the head which is light green to pink. They feed on live coral and will ram corals to break them up into smaller pieces for eating. [121] Dulvy and Polunin[118] report they are rare and possibly extirpated in Guam. Anecdotal evidence indicates that population levels have declined substantially around the more populated southern islands of the CNMI.[119]

Butterflyfish (Chaetodontidae) Status: **Guam SGCN**
Chaetodontidae is a family of coral reef fishes also popular in the aquarium trade, although many species do poorly in captivity. There are more than 100 different species of butterflyfish, called so due to the bright and colorful patterns on its body. These fish often travel in schools and a solitary traveling fish is usually in search of a mate. When the fish finds a mate, they remain together for years, if not for life.[120]

Emperors (Lethrinidae) Status: **Guam SGCN**
The Lethrinidae family of fish includes about 20 different species of emperors. Features common to all species include thick lips, strong jaws, and cheeks without scales. This family is heavily fished using a number of techniques including gill nets, spearfishing, hook and line. Most species of emperors begin life as females and change sex to become males as they grow.[121]

Goatfish (Mullidae) Status: **Guam SGCN**
Goatfish have a streamlined body with two dorsal fins, a forked tail, slightly inferior mouth suited for bottom-feeding, and a pair of chin whiskers called barbels. These barbels are used to actively probe, excavate, and detect hidden invertebrates and small fish. Most species are capable of changing color rapidly and often assume a mottled or barred pattern at night. Goatfish are commercially important because their flesh tastes like shrimp and red fish are a symbol of good luck to Asian cultures.

Hawkfish (Cirrhitidae) Status: **Guam SGCN**
Hawkfish have large heads with thick, somewhat elongated bodies. Their dorsal fins are merged, with the first consisting of 10 connected spines. At the tip of each spine are several trailing filaments. The family name Cirrhitidae is from the Latin “cirrus” meaning "fringe". Threats include overfishing, aquarium collection, and loss of habitat. Collection of these species for the aquarium trade often leads to the destruction of the corals they inhabit.

Black-sided hawkfish Photo: USFWS/ L.Beauregard

Giant Manta Ray (*Mobula birostris*) Status: **Threatened**
The giant manta ray is the world's largest ray with a wingspan of up to 29 ft. They are filter feeders and eat large quantities of zooplankton. Giant manta rays are slow-growing, migratory animals with small, highly fragmented populations that are sparsely distributed across the world. The main threat to the giant manta ray is commercial fishing, with the species both targeted and caught as bycatch in a number of fisheries throughout its range. NOAA Fisheries listed the species as threatened under the ESA in 2018.

Grey Reef Shark (*Carcharhinus amblyrhynchos)* Status: **CNMI SGCN**
The grey reef shark is grayish-brown dorsally, fading gradually to white on the venter. Distinctive markings include a broad black trailing edge of the caudal fin, especially the lower lobe, which fades into the color of the rest of the tail. They are considered a nuisance species by some local fishers who will first fish the sharks out of an area before commencing bottom fishing. Small litter size, late onset of maturity, restricted habitat choice throughout its distribution, site fidelity, inshore distribution and willingness to take a baited hook make the gray reef shark especially vulnerable.[124]

Groupers (Serranidae) Status: **Guam SGCN**
At least 41 species of groupers occur in the Marianas. They are robust-bodied, bottom-oriented carnivores with representatives on shallow reef flats to depths of 600 ft or more. Many are hermaphrodites, starting their mature life as females before changing to males. They are slow-growing with maturity coming after several years for most species. Groupers are voracious ambush predators, and will readily strike at lures or bait. They form seasonal spawning aggregations, based on a lunar cycle, and individuals may migrate for miles to congregate in favored sites.[120]

Napoleon Wrasse. Photo:Patryk Krzyzak

Napoleon Wrasse (*Cheilinus undulatus*)
Status: **CNMI & Guam SGCN**
Napoleon Wrasse are distinguished by a prominent bulbous hump on the forehead and thick fleshy lips. Adult males have blue to blue-green heads, bodies and fins, a yellow posterior margin to the tail and may have a red margin to the rayed portion of the dorsal fin. One of the largest reef-associated fish, Napoleon wrasse can reach a size of over 7 ft long, and a weight of over four hundred pounds.[120]

Oceanic Whitetip Shark Status: **Threatened**
Oceanic whitetip sharks grow to 11 ft and have a distinctive pattern of mottled white markings on the tips of their dorsal, pectoral, and tail fins. Their dorsal fins are rounded and their pectoral fins are long and paddle-like. Their populations have declined due to bycatch in commercial fisheries combined with the rise in demand for shark fins. NOAA Fisheries listed the species as threatened under the ESA in 2018.

Rabbitfish (Siganidae) Status: **Guam SGCN**
A popular food fish, the Siganidae family includes 28 species commonly called rabbitfish. They have small mouths and many species are covered in maze-like patterns. The fin spines are equipped with poison glands that are capable of giving a painful wound. [120]

Scalloped Hammerhead Shark (*Sphyrna lewini)* Status: **Threatened**
Scalloped hammerhead sharks are moderately large sharks with a global distribution. The flat, extended head is characterized by an indentation located centrally on the front margin of the broadly arched head. Two more indentations flank the main central indentation, giving this hammerhead a "scalloped" appearance. They feed on crustaceans, fish, cephalopods and rays. The Indo-West Pacific population of scalloped hammerhead shark was determined to be a threatened species under the ESA in 2014. This species is targeted for the shark fin trade because of its fin size and high fin ray count.

Snappers (Lutjanidae) Status: **Guam SGCN**
Snappers are perchlike fishes with a continuous dorsal fin, elongated bodies, large mouths, sharp canine teeth, and blunt or forked tails, They can grow to a length of 2–3 ft. [120] Some species are the principal fisheries species taken from deep reefs (>500 ft). In Guam they are threatened by overfishing and loss of habitat.

Steephead Parrotfish (*Chlorus microrhinos*) Status: **CNMI SGCN**
Parrotfish get their common name from their beak-like teeth and bright colors. Most eat the thin algal film on bare coral rock and their constant scraping creates much of the sediment on coral reefs. [120] They are a popular food fish in the region. Steephead parrotfishes are greenish blue, with a brilliant blue band behind the corner of the mouth and a wide blue patch along the head.

Surgeonfish (Acanthuridae) Status: **Guam SGCN**
The family of Surgeonfish are popular food fish threatened by loss of habitat and overfishing. They have tough skin with rough scales and a single scalpel-like dorsal spine which folds into a groove. Many are brightly colored and popular in the aquarium trade. [120]

Trevalley (Carangidae) Status: **Guam SGCN**
Another popular food fish threatened by loss of habitat and overfishing, most Trevalley species are fast-swimming predatory fishes that hunt in the waters above reefs and in the open sea. All have streamlined bodies, with two separate dorsal fins, and a forked tail. Juveniles are found on reef flats or around floating objects such as buoys and floating debris. Adults are found on reef flats and seaward reefs to a depth of at least 300 ft. [120]

Wrasse (Labridae) Status: **Guam SGCN**
Wrasses are also popular food fish threatened by loss of habitat and overfishing. The species in this family are very diverse in size and form, most with complex colorful patterns that change as they grow and vary by sex. Wrasses are found in almost all coral reef habitats, from sandy reef flats to seaward reef slopes and deep reefs (>500 ft). [120]

3.4.7 Conservation Targets - Invertebrates

Bear Paw Clam (*Hippopus hippopus)* Status: **Guam SGCN**
Bear paw clams are a bivalve mollusk in the giant clam family. Reaching 15 inches in size, they have a brownish mantle with thin white lines across the surface. Clams first become sexually mature as males and then later become hermaphrodites releasing both sperm and egg at separate times during spawning events. Bear paw clams have been collected for their meat as well as their shells. [124]

Branched Murex (*Chicoreus ramosus*) Status: **CNMI SGCN**
The branched murex is a predatory sea snail, feeding on other molluscs and barnacles. Its shell is whitish, sometimes stained rusty pink near sutures and along spiral lines, and it has leaf-like spines on the axial varices. The margin of the outer lip is pink and has a prominent tooth-like process. It is considered an economically important species in the Indo-West Pacific.[122]

Collector Urchin (*Tripneustes gratilla*) Status: **CNMI SGCN**
This shallow water macro-invertebrate has historical ties with commercial exploitation in other areas of the Indo-Pacific. The roe is considered a delicacy in Asia. The internal organs are surrounded by a rigid skeletal shell and its moveable spines provide protection against predators. Collector urchins grow up to 6 inches in size. It often collects rocks, sponges, shells, or algae to provide camouflage for itself. The slow moving urchin utilizes soft tubed feet with suction cups to graze along the substrate feeding on seagrasses, algae, and various detritus.[123, 128]

Common Spider Conch (*Lambis lambis)* Status: **CNMI SGCN**
The common spider conch is a large marine snail collected for both consumption and ornamentation. Common spider conch shells have a flared outer lip ornamented with six elongate spines extending from the edge. They are herbivorous, usually feeding on red algae.[124]

Day Octopus (*Octopus cyanea)* Status: **CNMI & Guam SGCN**
Several octopus species are sought for consumption in CNMI and Guam. The day octopus is gray to brown, with arms three times the head length. It is active during the day, foraging on large crabs and fish, including moray eels, to depths of about 150 ft. Its preferred habitat includes coral reefs, reef flats and other rocky substrata. It can be recognized by a black spot surrounded by another black ring on the base of the arm web.[125]

Day octopus on the side of a fault scarp. Photo: NOAA

Elongate Giant Clam (*Tridacna maxima)* Status: **CNMI SGCN**
Elongate giant clams are the most wide spread species of giant clam, found from intertidal reef flats to 30 ft depth. This species has well developed concentric growth folds and may reach 13 inches in length. The mantles are usually brightly colored and it is popular in the aquarium trade as well as for consumption.[128]

Fluted Giant Clam (*Tridacna squamosa)* Status: **CNMI SGCN**
The fluted giant clam can be recognized by the rows of large leaf-life flutes on the surface of the shell. It may reach 15 inches in length and inhabits shallow reef flats to depths of 60 ft. The mantle tissues act as a habitat for symbiotic single-celled algae from which it gets a major portion of its nutrition. By day, the clam spreads out its mantle tissue so that the algae receive the sunlight they need to photosynthesize. [128]

Horned Helmet Shell (*Cassis cornuta)* Status: **CNMI SGCN**
The horned helmet shell is hunted for meat and is also a very popular collector's item. The length of the shell varies between 2-5 inches. It is the largest of all helmet shells with a heavy, rotund shell with large, horn-like knobs and a wide, flat base. The shell has a dorsally pale orange color, its base vivid orange, faintly marked with white and brown.[126]

Pectinate Venus (*Gafrarium pectinatum)* Status: **CNMI SGCN**
Pectinate venus are small bivalves that are harvested for consumption purposes from intertidal and shallow water, although its habitat ranges to 60 ft depth in sand and gravel bottoms. The shell can reach 2 inches in length, white to cream-colored on the outside and occasionally spotted upon the radial ribs with brown.[127]

Southern Giant Clam (*Tridacna derasa)* Status: **Guam SGCN**
The southern giant clam reaches up to 2 ft in length, The species is also known as the smooth giant clam because of the relative lack of ribbing and scales on its thick shell. *Tridacna* clams have muscles for opening and closing their shell and a foot for attaching themselves to rocks. They breathe through gills and feed through a mouth. Most clams fulfill their nutritional requirements by filter feeding and absorbing dissolved organic compounds from the water, but tridacnid clams have gone further than this by using zooxanthellae algae in their tissue to manufacture food for them. They usually appear blue or greenish.[128] Populations have been reintroduced after extirpation in Guam and CNMI.

Spiny Lobster (*Panulirus penicillatus, P. versicolor, P. longipes)* Status: **CNMI & Guam SGCN**
There are several species of spiny lobsters in the Monument waters. Lobsters are opportunistic and omnivorous scavengers with food items being consumed including molluscs, crustaceans, echinoderms, seagrass and algae. They are nocturnal foragers with *Panulirus penicillatus* moving through the spur and groove channels to the reef crest and reef flat.[129] The spiny lobster is a high value commodity in the CNMI with a local commercial market that supports both island residents and the restaurant industry.

Trumpet Triton (*Charonia tritonis*) Status: **CNMI & Guam SGCN**
The trumpet triton it has a mottled brown and white shell with encircling ribs, a long spire, and can reach 19 inches in length.[130] Locomotion is achieved by a strong, muscular foot, which this snail uses to pursue such prey as sea urchins and sea stars. The trumpet triton is the major predator of the crown-of-thorns, which is notorious for feeding on and destroying corals. Over collection of the beautiful triton shells is suspected as one cause in crown-of-thorns infestations.

Turban Shell (*Turbo petholatus, T. setosus, T. argyrostoma)* Status: **CNMI SGCN**
The thick, chalky operculum resembles a cat's eye. In some species, the shell does resemble an elegant turban. The Latin ‘turbo’ refers to a top, the spinning toy. Species of this family are herbivores. Females lay gelatinous egg-masses and the eggs hatch as free swimming larvae.[131] The most serious threat to the turban shell populations in the CNMI is over-exploitation of the resources. In addition to collection for decoration, turban shells are locally consumed as a food source throughout the Indo-Pacific region.

3.4.8 Conservation Targets - Corals

Islands Unit bubble coral. Photo: Paula Ayotte/NOAA

Guam's SWAP covers all hard and soft corals. *Acropora retusa, Acropora globiceps, and Seriatopora aculeate* were federally protected with a "threatened" listing under the ESA in August, 2014, and identified in the CNMI SWAP as SGCN. The Marine Resources Conservation and Monitoring Action Plan proposes managers work with partners to conduct population studies of T&E species to determine their presence/absence in the Monument to help determine the best course of action in helping to sustain healthy populations or help those species recover.

Hard Corals (Scleractinia) Status: **Guam SGCN**

Hard corals have calcium carbonate skeletons, grow in colonies, and are reef-building animals that live in symbiosis with phytoplankton called zooxanthellae. Colonial corals consist of large numbers of polyps, cemented together by the calcium carbonate that they secrete. Reef biologists in Guam have noted a distressing indicator of the health of Guam's coral reefs in the marked decrease in rates of coral recruitment. Studies of hard corals in the Monument will add to the scientific knowledge needed to make management decisions throughout the archipelago.

Soft Corals (Octocorallia) Status: **Guam SGCN**

Sea fans in the Marianas
Photo: Rachel Rounds /USFWS

Soft corals are flexible, have calcareous particles in their body walls for structural support, can be found in both tropical and cold ocean waters, do not grow in colonies or build reefs, and do not always contain zooxanthellae. Although commonly called "soft corals," the Octocorallia are not close relatives of the Scleractinia, or hard corals living today. Unlike hard corals, which have hexaradial symmetry, octocorals have eightfold radial symmetry. All octocorals are colonial polyps, and in some, such as the Pennatulacea or "sea pens," the polyps are specialized for various functions. Octocorals are traditionally divided into six orders:

Telestacea and Alcyonacea are two types of "soft coral"

Stolonifera	organ-pipe corals
Gorgonacea	sea fans and sea whips
Pennatulacea	sea pens and sea pansies
Helioporacea	blue coral

Populations of soft corals seem to be declining in the archipelago at present. These corals serve as important habitat for a number of marine invertebrates. Studies of soft corals in the Monument will add to the scientific knowledge needed to make management decisions throughout the archipelago.

Blunt Acropora (*Acropora retusa)* Status: **Threatened, CNMI SGCN**
Colonies of Blunt Acropora are brown in color and look like flat plates with short, thick, uniform finger-like branchlets. It is usually found growing on upper reef slopes and tidal pools. It has been particularly susceptible to bleaching, disease, crown-of-thorns starfish predation, and extensive reduction of coral reef habitat.

Needle Coral *(Seriatopora aculeate)* Status: **Threatened, CNMI SGCN**
Needle coral lives in shallow reef environments. It is pink or cream colored with short, fine branches that are strongly tapered. They are usually in fused clumps with corallites irregularly distributed on the branches. Its tentacles are commonly extended during the day.[132] It is susceptible to bleaching, disease, and loss of coral reef habitat.

Staghorn coral (*Acropora globiceps)* Status: **Threatened, CNMI SGCN**
Staghorn coral colonies are digitate and usually small. The size and appearance of branches depends on degree of exposure to wave action, but are always short and closely compacted.[133] This species is susceptible to bleaching, disease, crown-of-thorns starfish predation and loss of habitat.

References:

1. Stern, R.J., et al., *How the Mariana Volcanic Arc ends in the south.* Island Arc, 2013. **22**(1): p. 133-148.
2. Stern, R.J., Matthew F J., and S.K. L., *Inside the Subduction Factory: An overview of the Izu-Bonin-Mariana Subduction Factory.* Geophysical Monograph, 2001. **138**: p. 7.
3. Fryer, P., et al., *Why is the Challenger Deep so deep?* Earth and Planetary Science Letters, 2003. **211**(3-4): p. 259-269.
4. Fryer, P., *Evolution of the mariana convergent plate margin system.* Reviews of Geophysics, 1996. **34**(1): p. 89-125.
5. Bo Flood, N., *Marianas Island Legends, Myth and Magic*. The Bess Press, Honolulu. 2001. 2-4.
6. Matkin, J., *At sea with the scientifics: the Challenger letters of Joseph Matkin*. 1992, Honolulu, Hawaii: University of Hawaii Press.
7. Corfield, R., *Silent Landscape: The Scientific Voyage of HMS Challenger The Groaning Planet*. 2003, London: Joseph Henry Press.
8. Gvirtzman, Z. and R.J. Stern, *Bathymetry of Mariana trench-arc system and formation of the Challenger Deep as a consequence of weak plate coupling.* Tectonics, 2004. **23**(2): p. n/a-n/a.
9. Cruz, B. *The Legend of Sirena: A Chamorro Legend*. 1998
10. Stern, R.J., M.J. Fouch, and S.L. Klemperer, *An Overview of the Izu-Bonin-Mariana Subduction Factory.* 2003.
11. Rogers, R.F. and D.A. Ballendorf, *Magellan's Landfall in the Marina Islands.* Journal of Pacific History, 1989. **24**(No 2): p. 193-208.
12. P., F. and G.J. Fryer, *Origina of Nonvolcanic Seamounts in a Forarc Environment, in Seamounts, Islands, and Atolls*. 1987, Washington D.C.: American Geophysical Union.
13. Wheat, C.G., et al., *South Chamorro Seamount.* Oceanography, 2010. **23**(1): p. 174-175.
14. Butterfield, D.A., et al., *High SO2 Flux, Sulfur Accumulation, and Gas Fractionation at an Erupting Submarine Volcano.* 2011.
15. Embley, R.W., et al., *Exploring the Submarine Ring of Fire Mariana Arc - Western Pacific.* Oceanography, 2007. **20**(4): p. 79.
16. W., C.W. *NOAA Vents Program Submarine Volcanism*. 2004 April 2015.
17. Bloomer, S.H., R.J. Stern, and N.C. Smoot, *Physical Volcanology of the Submarine Mariana and Volcano Arcs.* Bulletin of Volcanology, 1989. **51**(3): p. 210-224.
18. Mohler, D.; Reagan, M.; Heizler, M.; Hickey-Vargas, R., New Ages on Old Arc Rocks, Preliminary Results From the Southern IBM Arc, American Geophysical Union, Fall Meeting 2001, abstract #T41C-0890, Publication Date: 12/2001.
19. Stern R.J., M.J. Fouch, and K. S.L., *An Overview of the Izu-Bonin-Mariana Subduction Factory.* Geophysical Monograph, 2003. **138**(10): p. 4820. Trusdell, F.A., et al., *The 2003 eruption of Anatahan volcano, Commonwealth of the Northem Mariana Islands: Chronology, volcanology, and deformation.* Journal of Volcanology and Geothermal Research, 2005. **146**(1-3): p. 184-207..
21. Embley, R., *Personal communication*. 2012.
22. Merle S., E.B., Chadwick B., *Submarine Ring of Fire 2006: Mariana Arc Submarine Volcanoes*. 2006, NOAA Pacific Marine Environmental Laboratory.
23. Resing, J.A., et al., *Chemistry of hydrothermal plumes above submarine volcanoes of the Mariana Arc.* Geochemistry, Geophysics, Geosystems, 2009. **10**(2): p. 23.
24. Baker, E.T., et al., *Hydrothermal activity and volcano distribution along the Mariana arc.* Journal of Geophysical Research, 2008. **113**(B8).

25. Embley, R.W., et al., *Submarine Ring of Fire 2003 - Mariana Arc*, N.P.M.E. Laboratory, Editor. 2003: Newport OR. p. 34.
26. U.S., Geological, and Survey. *Volcano Information*. 2014 April 2015
27. Eldredge, L., *Summary of environmental and fishing information on Guam and the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands: Historical Background, description of the islands, and review of the climate, oceanography, and submarine topography*, NOAA, Editor. 1983, NOAA Technical Memorandum.
28. Sako M.K., F.A.T., R.Y. Koyanagi, George Kojima, and R.B. Moore, *Volcanic Investigations in the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands, April to May 1994.* 1995.
29. Farrell, D., *History of the Mariana Islands to Partition.* Public School System, Saipan, MP, 2011.
30. NOAA, P.I.F.S.C., *Coral reef ecosystems of the Mariana Archipelago: a 2003-2007 overview*, N. PIFSC, Editor. 2010. p. 38.
31. McMurtry, G.M., P. N. Sedwick, P. Fryer, D. L. Vonderhaar, and H. W. Weh, *Unusual geochemistry of hydrothermal vents on submarine arc volcanoes: Kasuga Seamounts Northern Mariana Arc, Earth Planet.* Sci. Lett., 1993. **114**: p. 517–528.
32. Fryer, P. and M. Mottl, *Shinkai 6500" investigations of a resurgent mud volcano on the Southeastern Mariana forearc.* Deep Sea Res., 1997. **JAMSTEC J**(13): p. 103 – 114.
33. Tunnicliffe, V.D., Kimberly T A; Butterfield, David A; Embley, Robert W; Rose, Jonathan M; Chadwick, William W Jr. , *Survival of mussels in extremely acidic waters on a submarine volcano.* Nature Geoscience, 2009. **2**: p. 344-348.
34. Hessler R., L.P., *Biogeography of Mariana Trough hydrothermal vent communities.* Deep Sea Research Part A, 1991(38): p. 185-199.
35. Gamo T., e.a., *Revisits to the mid-Mariana Trough Hydrothermal Site and discovery of new venting in the southern Mariana Region by the Japanese submersible Shinkai 6500.* InterRidge News, 1993. **2**(1): p. 11-14.
36. Hawkins J.W., P.L.M., Allan J.F., *New Insight to the evolution of arc-backarc systems, results of Ocean Drilling program Leg 135, Lau-Tonga transect.* EOS Trans, 1991(72): p. 541.
37. Embley R. W., B.E.T., Chadwick W. W. Jr, Lupton J. E., Resing J. A., Massoth G. J., Nakamura K., *Explorations of Mariana Arc volcanoes reveal new hydrothermal systems.* Eos, Trans Amer Geophys Union, 2004(85): p. 37-40.
38. Global, Volcanism, and Program. *Report on Ruby (United States). In: Wunderman, R (ed).* Bulletin of the Global Volcanism Network 1995 May 2015
39. Global, Volcanism, and Program. *Report on NW Rota-1 (United States)*. In: Wunderman, R (ed.), Bulletin of the Global Volcanism Network 2010 May 2015
40. Stern, R.J., Tamura, Y., Embley, R.W., Ishizuku, O., Merle, S., Basu, N.K., Kawabata, H., and Bloomer, S.H., *Evolution of West Rota Volcano, an extinct submarine volcano in the Southern Mariana Arc: Evidence from sea floor morphology, remotely operated vehicle observations and 40Ar/39Ar Geochronology.* The Island Arc, 2008(17): p. 70-89.
41. Kakegawa, T., Utsumi, M. and Marumo, K. , *Geochemistry of Sulfide Chimneys and Basement Pillow Lavas at the Southern Mariana Trough (12.55°N–12.58°N).* Resource Geology, 2008. **58**(3): p. 249-266.
42. Gamo T., H.M., T. Yamanaka, K. Okamura, J. Ishibashi, E. Nakayama, H. Obata, K. Shitashima, Y. Nishio, H. Hasumoto, M. Watanabe, K. Mitsuzawa, N. Seama, U. Tsunogai, F. Kouzuma, and Y. Sano, *Discovery of a new hydrothermal venting site in the southernmost Mariana Arc: Al-rich hydrothermal plumes and white smoker activity associated with biogenic methane.* Geochemical Journal, 2004. **38**: p. 527-534.

43. Richmond, R.H., P. Houk, M. S. Trianni, E. Wolanski, G. Davis, V. E. Bonito, and V. J. Paul, *Aspects of biology and ecological functioning of coral reefs in Guam and the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands*, in *Coral Reefs of the USA*. 2008: Springer-Verlag, Dordecht.
44. Suntsov A., R.D., *Vertically migrating micronekton and macrozooplankton communities around Guam and the Northern Mariana Islands*, in *Deep-Sea Research Part I*. 2013, Oceanographic Research Papers.
45. Brainard RE, A.J., Blyth-Skyrme V, Coccagna EF, Dennis K, Donovan MK, Gove JM, Kenyon J, Looney EE, Miller JE, Timmers MA, Vargas-Ángel B, Vroom PS, Vetter O, Zgliczynski B, Acoba T, DesRochers A, Dunlap MJ, Franklin EC, Fisher-Pool PI, Braun CL, Richards BL, Schopmeyer SA, Schroeder RE, Toperoff A, Weijerman M, Williams I, Withall RD *Coral reef ecosystem monitoring report of the Mariana Archipelago: 2003–2007*, in *PIFSC Special Publication*. 2012. p. 1019.
46. Furey, J., Davis, A., Peshut, P., Miller, S., Church, R., MacCarter, M., Trianni, M., Vogt, S., Miller, K., Jackson, J., Moore, A., Tenorio, J., Flood, W., Francis, K., Jordan, J., and Schonder, C. , *Island Ecology & Resource Management*, N.M.C. Press, Editor. 2006: CNMI.
47. Bonjean, F., G. S. E. Lagerloef, *Diagnostic model and analysis of the surface currents in the tropical Pacific Ocean.* Journal of Physical Oceanography, 2002(32): p. 2938-2954.
48. Randall, R.H., *Biogeography of reef-building corals in the Mariana and Palau islands in relation to back-arc rifting and the formation of the Eastern Philippine Sea.* Natural History Research, 1995(3): p. 193-210.
49. Polovina, J., Howell, E., Kobayashi, D., Seki, M. , *The transition zone chlorophyll front, a dynamic global feature defining migration and forage habitat for marine resources.* Progress in Oceanography, 2001(49): p. 469-483.
50. Siedler, G., J. Holfort, W. Zenk, T. J. Muller, and T. Csernok, *Deep-water flow in the Mariana and Caroline Basins.* Journal of Physical Oceanography, 2004(34): p. 566-581.
51. Kawabe, M., Fujio, S. & Yanagimoto, D. , *Deep-water circulation at low latitudes in the western North Pacific.*, in *Deep-Sea Research Part I*. 2003. p. 631-656.
52. Taira, K., et al., *Deep and bottom currents in the Challenger Deep, mariana trench, measured with super-deep current meters.* Journal of Oceanography, 2004. **60**(6): p. 919-926.
53. A. Morel, H.C., and B. Gentili, *The most oligotrophic subtropical zones of the global ocean: similarities and differences in terms of chlorophyll and yellow substance.* Biogeosciences, 2010(7): p. 3139–3151.
54. Taira, K., D. Yanagimoto, and S. Kitagawa, *Deep CTD casts in the Challenger Deep, Mariana Trench.* Journal of Oceanography, 2005. **61**(3): p. 447-454.
55. Kitazato, H., et al., *New species of Leptohalysis (Rhizaria, Foraminifera) from an extreme hadal site in the western Pacific Ocean.* Zootaxa, 2009(2059): p. 23-32.
56. NOAA, et al. *Coral reef ecosystem monitoring report of the Mariana Archipelago: 2003 - 2007*. PIFSC Special Publication, SP-12-01, 1019 p 2012 May 2015.
57. Riegl B. and M. Springer, *Geologic Setting and Geomorphology of Coral Reefs in the Mariana Islands (Guam and Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands).* Springer Science and Business Media, 2008: p. 691-705.
58. Eldredge, L., Tsuda, RG, Moore, P, Chernin, M, and Neudecker, S., *A natural history of Maug, Northern Mariana Islands*, in *Technical Report*. 1977, University of Guam. p. 87.
59. Furey, J., Davis, A., Peshut, P., Miller, S., Church, R., MacCarter, M., Trianni, M., Vogt, S., Miller, K., Jackson, J., Moore, A., Tenorio, J., Flood, W., Francis, K., Jordan, J., & Schonder, C., *Island Ecology & Resource Management*, in *Northern Marianas College Press*. 2006: Commonwealth of the Northern Marianas Islands.
60. EPA. *Glossary of Climate Change Terms*. 2015 May 2015.

61. WHO and UNEP. *Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change*. 2015 May 2015.
62. NOAA-ESRL, *Atmospheric CO2, Mauna Loa Observatory*, in *Monthly Mean CO_2 Concentrations (ppm) Since 1958*, Scripps, NOAA, and ESRL, Editors. 2013.
63. WHO and UNEP, *Climate Change 2007-The Physical Basis. Contribution of Working Group I to the Fourth Assessment Report (AR4) of the Intergovernmetal Panel on Climate Change*. 2007, Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change.
64. Fernando P. Lima and D.S. Wethey, *Three decades of high-resolution coastal sea surface temperatures reveal more than warming.* Nature Communications, 2012(3): p. 704.
65. Guinotte, J.M., et al., *Will human induced changes in seawater chemistry alter the distribution of deep-sea scleractinian corals?* Front. Ecol. Environ, 2006(4): p. 141-146.
66. Polovina, J.J., Howell E. A., and A. M, *Ocean's least productive waters are expanding.* Geophys. Res. Lett, 2008. **35:L03618**.
67. Stocker T.F., D.Q., G.K. Plattner, M. Tignor, S.K.Allen, J. Boschung, A. Nauels, Y. Xia, V. Bex and P.M. Midgley *IPCC 2013: Summary for Policymakers. In: Climate Change 2013: The Physical Science Basis.*, in *Contribution of Working Group I to the Fifth Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change*. 2013: Cambridge, UK and New York, USA.
68. Velicogna, I. and J. Wahr, *Acceleration of Greenland ice mass loss in spring 2004.* Nature, 2006. **443**: p. 329-331.
69. Society, R., *Ocean Acidification Due to Increasing Atmospheric Carbon Dioxide*, R. Society, Editor. 2005: London. p. 60.
70. Feely, R.A., C. L. Sabine, K. Lee, W. Berelson, J. Kleypas, V. J. Fabry, and F. J. Millero *Impact of anthropogenic CO_2 on the $CaCO_3$ system in the oceans.* Science, 2004: p. 362–366.
71. Karl Thomas R., Jerry M. Melillo, and Thomas C. Peterson, *Global Climate Change Impacts in the United States.* Cambridge University Press, 2009.
72. Wootton, T., Catherine A. Pfister, and James D. Forester. *Dynamic patterns and ecological impacts of declining ocean pH in a high-resolution multi-year dataset*. 2008.
73. Kuffner, I.B., Andersson, A. J., Jokiel, P. L., Rodgers, K. S., & Mackenzie, F. T. , *Decreased abundance of crustose coralline algae due to ocean acidification.* Nature Climate Change, 2008(1): p. 114-117.
74. McCulloch, M., Falter, J., Trotter, J., Montagna, *Coral resilience to ocean acidification and global regulation through pH up-regulation.* Nature Climate Change, 2012. **2**: p. 623–627.
75. Ishimatsu, A., Takashi Kikkawa, Masahiro Hayashi, Kyoung-Seon Lee, and Jun Kita, *Effects of CO2 on Marine Fish: Larvae and Adults.* Journal of Oceanography, 2004: p. 731-741.
76. Kikkawa, T., A Ishimatsu, and J Kita, *Acute CO2 tolerance during the early developmental stages of four marine teleosts.* Environ Toxicol, 2003: p. 375-382.
77. McKim, J.M., *Evaluation of tests with early life stages of fish for predicting long- term toxicity.* J. Fish. Res., 1977: p. 1148-1154.
78. Palacios, S., and R. C. Zimmerman, *Response of eelgrass Zostera marina to CO2 enrichment: possible impacts of climate change and potential for remediation of coastal habitats.* Mar. Ecol. Prog. Ser, 2007: p. 1-13.
79. Zondervan, I., *The effects of light, macronutrients, trace metals and CO2 on the production of calcium carbonate and organic carbon in coccolithophores – A review.* Deep Sea Res. II, 2007: p. 521-537.
80. Deepsea Challenge: New Science and Technology at Extreme depths. 2103 [cited March 2015]; Available from: http://www.livescience.com/27354-cameron-video-analysis-new-species.html.
81. Stern, R.J. and N.C. Smoot, A bathymetric overview of the Mariana forearc. Island Arc, 1998. 7(3): p. 525-540.

82. Ohara, Y., Mark K. Reagan, Katsunori Fujikura, Hiromi Watanabe, Katsuyoshi Michibayashi, Teruaki Ishii, Robert J. Stern, Ignacio Pujana, Fernando Martinez, Guillaume Girard, Julia Ribeiro, Maryjo Brounce, Naoaki Komori, and Masashi Kino, A serpentinite-hosted ecosystem in the Southern Mariana Forearc. PNAS, 2011.
83. Fryer, P., J.B. Gill, and M.C. Jackson, Volcanologic and tectonic evolution of the Kasuga seamounts, northern Mariana Trough: Alvin submersible investigations. Journal of Volcanology and Geothermal Research, 1997. 79(3-4): p. 277-+.
84. Clark, M.R., et al., Are deep-sea demersal fish assemblages globally homogenous? Insights from seamounts. Marine Ecology, 2010. 31: p. 39-51.
85. Hillier, J.K., A.B. Watts, and Global distribution of seamounts from ship-track bathymetry data. Geophysical Research Letters, 2007. 34, L13304:1–5.
86. Hubbs, C.L., J.T. Carlton, and G.M. Ruiz, Initial discoveries of fish faunas on seamounts and offshore banks in the Eastern Pacific. Pacific Science, 1959. 13, 311–316.
87. Morato, T. and M.R. Clark, Seamount fishes: ecology and life histories In: Pitcher, T.J., Morato, T., Hart, P.J.B., Clark, M.R., Haggan, N., Santos, R.S. (Eds.), Seamounts: Ecology, Fisheries & Conservation, in Fish and Aquatic Resources Series 12. 2007. p. 170-188.
88. Samadi, S., T. and b.d.F. Schlacher, Seamount benthos. Seamounts. Ecology, Fisheries, and Conservation, 2007. vol 12, p. 119 – 140.
89. Lonsdale, P., Clustering of suspension-feeding macrobenthos near abyssal hydrothermal vents at oceanic spreading centers. Deep Sea Research, 1977. 24 (9): 857.
90. Wolff, T., Composition and endemism of the deep-sea hydrothermal vent fauna. Cahiers De Biologie Marine, 2005. 46(2): p. 97-104.
91. Hessler, R.R. and V.A. Kaharl, The deep-sea hydrothermal vent community: An overview. Geophysical Monograph Series, 1995. 91: 2-4: p. 0072.
92. Childress, J.J. and C.R. Fisher, The biology of hydrothermal vent animals: physiology, biochemistry, and autotrophic symbioses. Oceanography and Marine Biology, 1992. 30: p. 337-441.
93. Tunnicliffe, V., The Biology of Hydrothermal Vents - Ecology and Evolution. Oceanography and Marine Biology, 1991. 29: p. 319-407.
94. Tunnicliffe, V., Hydrothermal-vent communities of the deep sea. American Scientist, 1992. 80(4): p. 336-349.
95. Grassle, J.F., The Ecology of Deep-Sea Hydrothermal Vent Communities. Advances in Marine Biology, 1986. 23: p. 301-362.
96. Hessler, R., and P. Lonsdale Biogeography of the Mariana Trough Hydrothermal Vent Communities. Deep-Sea Research, 1991. 38(2): p. 185-199.
97. Lutz, R.A. and M.J. Kennish, Ecology of Deep-Sea Hydrothermal Vent Communities - a Review. Reviews of Geophysics, 1993. 31(3): p. 211-242.
98. Starmer, J., et al., The State of Coral Reefs Ecosystems of the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands. In: J. Waddell (Ed.) The State of Coral Reef Ecosystems of the United States and Pacific Freely Associated States:, N.T.M.N. NCC11, Editor. 2005.
99. Birkeland, C., Status of Coral Reefs in the Marianas, in Status of Coral Reefs in the Pacific, R.W.a.C.B. Grigg, Editor. 1997, University of Hawaii Sea Grant Program: Honolulu, Hawaii.
100. Colgan, M.W., Coral-Reef Recovery on Guam (Micronesia) after Catastrophic Predation by Acanthaster-Planci. Ecology, 1987. 68(6): p. 1592-1605.
101. Center, P.I.F.S., Coral reef ecosystems of the Mariana Archipelago: a 2003-2007 overview. NOAA Pacific Islands Fisheries Science Center, PIFSC Special Publication, 2012. SP-10-002, 38 p.
102. Veron, J., Corals of the World. Australian Institute of Marine Science, Townsville, Australia, 2000. 3 volumes.

103. Glynn, P., et al., Diversity and Biogeography of Scleractinian Coral Fauna of Easter Island (Rapa Nui). Pac. Sci., 2007. 67:67-90.
104. Donaldson, T., et al., Zoogeography of the fishes of the Mariana, Ogasawara and Izu Islands: a preliminary assessment. Nat. Hist. Res, 1994(Special Issue 1: 303-332).
105. Amesbury, S. and Coleson, Fish surveys at Maug and Pagan in the Northern Mariana Islands, January 1996, D. Report to the Coastal Resources Management Office, Editor. 1996. p. 15.
106. WPRFMC, An assessment of the status of the coral reef resources, and their patterns of use, in the U.S. Pacific Islands., W.P.R.F.M. Council, Editor. 1997, Final Report prepared under NOAA Cooperative Agreement No. NA67AC0940. p. 395.
107. Fulling G, Thorson P, and R. J, Distribution and Abundance Estimates for Cetaceans in the Waters off Guam and the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands. Pac Sci 2011: p. 65(3): 321-343.
108. Pacific Islands Fisheries Science Center, NOAA, Cetacean surveys in the waters of the southern Mariana Acrhipelago, P.I.F.S. Center, Editor. 2013.
109. O'BRIEN, R.M. & DAVIES, J. 1990. A new subspecies of masked booby, Sula dactylatra from Lord Howe, Norfolk and Kermadec Islands. Marine Ornithology 18: 1–7.
110. Schorr GS, et al., First Long-Term Behavioral Records from Cuvier's Beaked Whales (Ziphius cavirostris) Reveal Record-Breaking Dives. PLoS ONE 9(3), 2014. e92633.
111. Carretta, J.V., et al., U.S. Pacific Marine Mammal Stock Assessments: 2010, U.S.D.o.C. NOAA, Editor. 2011, TM-NMFS-SWFSC. p. 476: 352.
112. Service, N.M.F., Final Recovery Plan for the Humpback Whale, NOAA Department of Commerce, Editor. 1991, Prepared by the Humpback Whale Recovery Team for the National Marine Fisheries Service: Silver Spring, MD.
113. Ford, J.K.B., et al., Linking killer whale survival and prey abundance: food limitation in the oceans' apex predator? Biology Letters 2010. 6:139-142.
114. Tillman, M.F., Trends in abundance of sperm whales in three areas of the North Pacific. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn. , 1977. 27:343–350.
115. Kolinski, S., et al., Sea turtle abundance at isolated reefs of the Mariana Archipelago. Micronesia, 2005. 37(2): 287–296.
116. Service, N.M.F. and U.S.F.W. Service, Recovery Plan for U.S. Pacific Populations of the Greet Turtle (Chelonia mydas). 1998, Pacific Sea Turtle Recovery Team: National Marine Fisheries Service, Silver Spring, MD.
117. Perrine, D., Sea Turtles of the World. Voyager Press Inc, Stillwater, MN, 2003.
118. Polovina, J.J., et al., Forage and migration habitat of loggerhead (Caretta caretta) and olive ridley (Lepidochelys olivacea) sea turtles in the central North Pacific Ocean. Fisheries Oceanography, 2004. 13(1), 36-51.
119. Service, N.M.F. and U.S.F.W. Service, Recovery Plan for U.S. Pacific Populations of the Olive Ridley Turtle (Lepidochelys olivacea). 1998: NMFS, Silver Spring, MD.
120. Myers, R., Micronesian Reef Fishes: A Practical Guide to the Identification of the Coral Reef. 1991, Coral Graphics.
121. Myers, R.F., Micronesian Reef Fishes: A practical guide to the identification of the Inshore Marine Fishes of the Tropical Central and Western Pacific. 1999, Coral Graphics: Barrigada, Guam.
122. Community, S.P., Information sheets for fishing communities - #3 Emperors (Lethrinidae) S.P. Community, Editor. 2011.
123. Dulvy, et al., Using informal knowledge to infer human-induced rarity of a conspicuous reef fish. Anim Conserv 2004. 7(4):365–374.
124. Guam Comprehensive Wildlife Conservation Strategy. 2006, Divison of Aquatic and Wildlife Resources: Mangilao, Guam. p. 259.

125. Conand, C., et al., Holothuria whitmaei, in Holothuria whitmaei In: IUCN 2014, I.R.L.T. Species, Editor. 2013.
126. Hutchings, P., Mike Kingsford, and Ove Hoegh-Guldberg, The Great Barrier Reef: Biology, Environment and Management. Csiro Publishing, 2008: p. 392.
127. Poutiers, J.M., Gastropods, in The living marine resources of the Western Central Pacific. 1998, FAO Species Identification Guide for Fishery Purposes: Rome.
128. Gosliner, T.M., D.W. Behrens, and G.C. Williams., Coral Reef Animals of the Indo-Pacific: animal life from Africa to Hawaii exclusive of the vertebrates. Sea Challengers, 1996: p. 314.
129. Rosenberg, G. Cassis cornuta (Linnaeus, 1758). 2012 July 9, 2014]; Available from: http://www.marinespecies.org/aphia.php
130. Abbott, R.T. and S.P. Dance., Compendium of Seashells, O. Publishing, Editor. 2000: El Cajon, CA, USA.
131. Coleman, N. and 2003., 2002 Sea Shells Catalogue of Indo-Pacific Mollusca. 2003, Neville Coleman's Underwater Geographic Pty Ltd: Qld Australia.
132. Pitcher, R.C., Spiny Lobster, in In Nearshore Marine Resources of the South Pacific. 1993, Forum Fisheries Agency, Honiara, Solomon Islands & International Centre for Ocean Development, Canada: Institute of Pacific Studies, Suva Fiji. p. 539-607.
133. Kinch J, et al., Population status, fisheries and trade of sea cucumber in the Western Central Pacific in Sea cucumbers. A global review of fisheries and trade, F.F.a.A.T. Paper, Editor. 2008, In V. Toral-Granda, A. Lovatelli and M. Vasconcellos. p. 7-55.
134. Howaida R.. G, et al., Mariculture of Sea Cucumber in the Red Sea - the Egyptian Experience, S.C. University, Editor. 2008, Egyptian Environmental Affairs Agency: Ismailia Egypt.
135. Triton's Trumpet Shells, *Charonia tritonis* 2010. [March 25, 2015]; Available from: http://marinebio.org/species.asp?id=2264.
136. Wilson , B.R. and K. Gillett, Australian Shells – Illustrating and Describing 600 Species of Marine Gastropods from Australian Waters. 1972: Charles E. Tuttle Co. Tokyo, Japan. p. 168.
137. Sprung, J., Corals: A Quick Reference Guide. 1999: Ricordia Publishing. Miami, FL.
138. Richards, Z.T., Delbeek, J.T., Lovell, E.R., Bass, D., Aeby, G. & Reboton, C. 2014. *Acropora globiceps*. The IUCN Red List of Threatened Species. Version 2014.2. <www.iucnredlist.org>. Downloaded on 29 August 2014.
139. Gallo, N. D., Cameron, J., Hardy, K., Fryer, P., Bartlett, D. H., & Levin, L. A. (2015). Submersible-and lander-observed community patterns in the Mariana and New Britain trenches: influence of productivity and depth on epibenthic and scavenging communities. Deep Sea Research Part I: Oceanographic Research Papers, 99, 119-133.

Members of Inetnon Gef Pa'go preserve tradition and share the Chamorro culture. Photo: Guam Visitors Bureau

Chapter 4. Cultural and Socioeconomic Resources

4.1 Introduction

Cultural perspectives, sense of place, values about natural resources, and views about connections between humans and the environment influence how groups of people in diverse communities resolve resource management issues. The Mariana Islands are politically divided between the U.S. Territory of Guam and the U.S. Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands. Home to two indigenous people, the Chamorro and Carolinians, the CNMI and Guam host a rich diversity of heritage today. Because the Monument area and its marine ecosystems hold a longstanding place in the culture of archipelago residents, the region's history and cultural composite are important elements to integrate into resource management efforts.

The creation of the Mariana Islands is taught in different ways, one of which is in geological terms. Another explanation is provided in the origin story of the Mariana Archipelago and its people as documented by Bo Flood, author of *Marianas Island Legends, Myths and Magic*.[1] As the story goes, the universe began with emptiness. The caretakers of the deep emptiness were a brother and sister named Puntan and Fu'uña. Puntan saw his own life drawing to an end, but did not want to leave his sister alone in the emptiness. He devised a plan, shared it with Fu'uña, and asked that she promise to fulfill his wishes. Dr. Flood describes the first moments of creation on the following page.

Chamorro Creation Legend

As Puntan's last breath left his body, Fu'uña held her brother and wailed woman's first birth song. She lifted his head upward and let life flow into the emptiness. Then Fu'uña plucked out her brother's eyes and flung them high above her. Their brightness became the sun and moon. Up, up she pushed his heavy breast until it arched across the heavens and became the sky. The drumming of his heart continued to beat the rhythm of night following day, turning, season turning – day following night.

Fu'uña laid Puntan's back along the emptiness to form the earth. She prepared and tilled his back so out of it, taro and other essential plants could grow. Coconut trees spouted, vegetation grew plentiful, and the ocean expanded. Fu'uña cast Puntan's eyebrows into the sky, refracting the sun's bright light into a colorful rainbow.

She [Fu'uña] swam with the sharks and followed the whales until she reached a string of lovely islands. She walked their beaches chasing ghost crabs, collecting shells, watching tropic birds soar between clouds. She laughed as hermit crabs scampered sideways and sea cucumbers spat out sand. She watched as fish nibbled on coral, amazed at their colors and shapes. Her brother had planned well. The earth was a beautiful place. But still she was lonely.

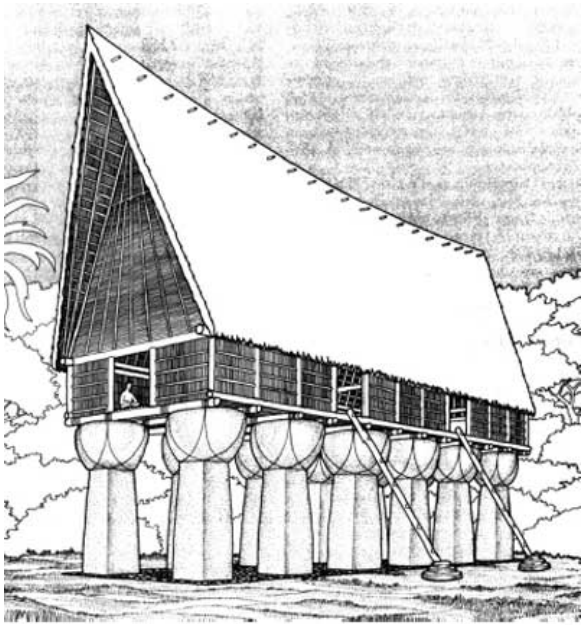
Fu'uña stood where the surf rolled back into the sea and thought, "I need people." Then Fu'uña walked into the sea, and there near the southern part of Guahan she became a rock. As the sea crashed over her, she broke into many pieces. Each new stone held her spirit. Each new stone was transformed into a new kind of people. As the great rock of Fu'uña dissolved, the grains of sand were carried throughout the world, giving birth to all humankind.[2]

4.2 Archeological Record and Maritime Zone

Archeologic accounts establish that the Chamorro people traveled to the Marianas from Southeast Asia 3,500 years ago. Chamorro are most closely related to other Austronesian-speaking peoples to the west in the Philippines and Taiwan, as well as the Carolines to the south. They were expert seafarers and skilled craftspeople familiar with intricate weaving and detailed pottery-making. Early Chamorro were in contact with one another across the archipelago and engaged in commerce with far reaching islands across Oceania. All of the Mariana Islanders share cultural and linguistic characteristics and archeologic findings show continuity in ceramic production on the different islands until the Latte Period (900-1700 CE). Similarity in early ceramic styles, decoration, and technique are indicative of areas with "strong inter-community and inter-island ties."[3]

Ceramic remnants suggest that people on Agrihan, a northern island, were in contact with people on Guam, the southernmost island. Clay and ceramic pots were moving between settlements, as were production techniques. Burial practices, rock art, archeological remains, and evidence of resource propagation, in addition to the Chamorro villages that populated Guam, Tinian, and Rota prior to Spanish arrival, indicate that islands across the Mariana Archipelago were used for various reasons. Archeological research indicates that caves on Asuncion may have been used as mortuary areas.[4]

It is likely that support from the larger, resource-rich islands to the south was needed to sustain intermittent settlements on the remote northern islands of Maug, Asuncion, and Farallon de Pajaros. All three islands are seabird nesting areas and people harvested, salted, and distributed seabirds from the northern islands to people living on the other islands.[5]



Artistic rendering of Lattes with wood and thatch structure. Source: NPS, drawing from Morgan ('88) in Rogers (1995)

Archaeologic structures found on many of the Mariana Islands have similar features. Latte stones, or simply "Lattes" are the pillars and capstones used in building designs during the Latte period. The 1565 Legaspi expedition report provides a description of these structures in the Marianas: "Their houses are high, well kept, and well made. They stand at the height of a man off the ground, atop large stone pillars, upon which they lay the flooring."[5] Wood and thatched coconut leaves were lashed together with coconut fiber to form a vaulted roof house supported by the pillar and capstone Lattes.

The megalithic Latte architecture was capable of withstanding the tropical climate and seismic activity that produce typhoons, high winds, flooding, and landslides in the Pacific region. Researchers have suggested that the Latte design is a direct adaptation to these physical phenomena. The oldest forms of this architectural concept can be traced to various parts of Insular Southeast Asia.[6]

Latte structures are depicted in the far left corner of bas relief stone panel from the Borobudur Temple in Central Java, Indonesia, built during the 8th-9th centuries. Similarities in architectural developments between the Pacific and Southeast Asia provide evidence for cultural encounters across the region over the centuries. Source: Laguana et al 2012.

Lattes are considered important links for the Chamorro to their ancestors and rich history. Kurashina explains: "According to many Chamorro, the *taotaomona* (the Ancient Ones) have never departed, but remain close to their places of origin, in order to keep an eye on their descendants and on their properties. Taotaomona might reside near banyan trees, or even in the vicinity of ancient villages, where the presence of latte stones may be the only above-ground sign of a village of long ago."[5]

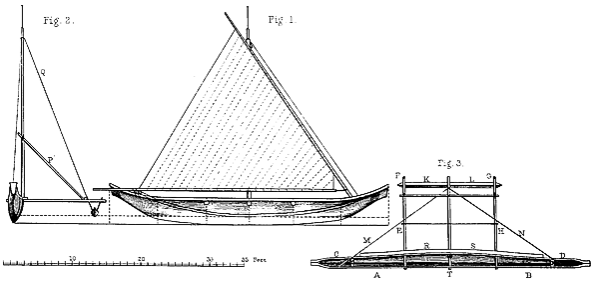
Additional archeological and archival research is needed to determine the potential for Latte structures and other physical records of human habitation on the northern islands abutting the Islands Unit of the Monument. The islands of Maug, Farallon de Pajaros (Uracas), Asuncion, and Guguan were set aside in 1978 under the CNMI Constitution to be maintained as uninhabited places and used only for the preservation and protection of natural resources. No people live there today.

Shared architectural and agricultural techniques in the Western Pacific and Insular Southeast Asia provide evidence for a longstanding maritime zone that facilitated interisland connections between Micronesia and Southeast Asia. Advanced navigational skills provided Austronesian people with the means to traverse the Western Pacific and develop the earliest settlements in Micronesia. Those maritime skills evolved in local contexts over time and constitute what is now a rich navigational legacy in the Mariana Archipelago. Maintaining ancient maritime skill sets, including navigation by the stars, has become a source of pride amongst Pacific Islanders everywhere and has spurred Epeli Hau'ofa's theories about the great ocean networks that bridge the Pacific.[7]

Last Latte stone standing in the House of Taga, on the Island of Tinian. Photo: Laura Beauregard/ USFWS .

4.3 Global Encounters

Encounters between the Chamorro people and other islanders across Oceania, in particular the people of the Philippines, Yap, Palau, the Caroline Islands, and Southeast Asia precede interaction with the Spanish by many centuries. The first documented interaction between Chamorro and Spaniards took place in the 16th century. Ferdinand Magellan, a Portuguese explorer employed by the King of Spain, arrived in the Mariana Islands in 1521, and Miguel Lopez de Legaspi claimed the islands for Spain in 1565. Of note, Magellan visited the island of Maug during the 16th century, finding approximately 20 residents and limited fresh water and sugarcane. A number of European crew members abandoned ship at this time and one, Gonzalo de Vigo, lived for several years among the Chamorro residents.[4,8]



The Chamorro "Flying Proa" was named by Magellan in 1521 when he arrived in the islands. These canoes could sail circles around the slower Magellan fleet. Drawing by Baron George Anson in "The sailing boat: a description of English and foreign boats," by Henry Coleman Folkard (1870).

At the time of Magellan's arrival to the Mariana Archipelago, Chamorro society was stratified into tiers: the matao class of high status positions; the atcha'ot or middle group consisting of relatives of the matao; and at the base of the hierarchy was the manachang.[3] The matao were quick to exchange food and water for iron goods brought by sailors. Many ships anchored in Mariana waters in the years following Magellan's arrival, which spurred the iron trade between the Chamorro population and foreign sailors in the economic system known as "hierro commerce." Iron was fashioned into tools for canoe production and fishing equipment. There are 17th century reports about toolmakers on Rota describing how Chamorro people were able to sharpen metal pieces using cobblestones, and shape iron nails into fish hooks.[9]

Amicable relations shifted soon after the Spanish mission was established on Guam. The Mariana Islands became a colony of Spain in 1668 at which time the islands were named after Mariana of Austria, the widow of Spain's King Phillip IV.[10] From 1671-1685, the Spanish-Chamorro Wars compounded the disease-induced population decline among the Chamorro. Multiple battles ensued as Chamorro warriors fought against foreign governance and a high number of Chamorro deaths occurred in three battles against the Agaña Forts: the first in 1671-1672, the second in 1676-1677, and again in 1684.[11]

Guam became the Spanish colony's main outpost in the Mariana Archipelago. Residents from across the Archipelago were forcibly relocated from their home islands to the island of Guam in order for the government to manage the previously dispersed population. Although Rota was never completely depopulated, the rest of the Northern Mariana Islands were scarcely inhabited from 1740-1815.

Word of the Spanish-Chamorro wars traveled across the Pacific on trade routes and via Chamorro refugees. This knowledge discouraged travel to the Mariana Islands amongst Carolinians until Carolinian navigator Luito sailed to Guam in 1778. According to Dr. Darcy, "Luito's voyage restored the old links along Mutau-uol, a seaway between Gaferut and Guam that was remembered in a navigational chant." The Spanish colonial administration welcomed Luito, encouraged him to commence trade in the Marianas, and ensured that Luito's crew obtained goods such as iron. The

This photograph from the German era captures the two cultural groups of CNMI. To the left, Chamorros reflect the Spanish impact; to the right, Carolinians wear traditional dress. Photo courtesy of CNMI Historic Preservation Office

ancient sea lane between the Mariana and Caroline Islands proved to be a beneficial route for 18th century commerce as well. Guam became popular amongst the Carolinians as a place to locate iron, copper, and other resources.[4]

Spanish administrators began employing Carolinian voyagers who arrived on Guam to transport food between islands within the Mariana Archipelago. Vegetables grown on Rota and dried pork and beef from animals raised on Tinian were ferried across the water to feed the population on Guam.[2] The Carolinian sailors became well acquainted with the Mariana Islands and learned that the northern islands had been almost entirely vacated. When a typhoon hit the Caroline Islands in 1815, 120 canoes filled with an estimated 900 people set sail for Guam from the Caroline island of Lamotrek. Although the majority of the fleet was lost in a storm en route, some Carolinians did survive the journey and settled on the Mariana island of Saipan.[12]

In 1818, the Spanish granted Carolinians official permission to settle on the island of Saipan as long as the immigrants converted to Catholicism. Waves of immigration continued through the 19th century as tsunamis and typhoons caused destruction to the low-lying Caroline Islands. The development of plantations on the Mariana Islands also prompted the migration of Carolinian workers to Rota, Tinian, and Pagan.

Movement between Guam and other islands in the archipelago allowed Chamorro people to slowly repopulate the Northern Mariana Islands, and the Spanish relocation efforts that moved the Chamorro population to Guam eventually eased. Diaz and Kauanui note that today, "Chamorros of the Mariana Islands refer to themselves as *Taotao Tano* (people of the land) while residents of the Caroline atolls refer to themselves as *Re Metau* (people of the sea)…Among the *Re Metau* there is a distinction between those who have "remained" [in the Caroline Islands] … and the *Refalawasch,* who have settled the islands of the Northern Marianas since the 18th and 19th centuries."[13]

The city of Hagåtña (La Ciudad de Hagåtña), on the island of Guam, was the first city of European governance in the Pacific during the Spanish colonial period. This is where Sirena lived, the

mythological maiden after whom the Sirena Deep is named (the deepest point of the Trench Unit/Refuge). The following account is derived from a manuscript, titled, *I Tetehnan*. This manuscript was the third part of a series of Chamorro proverbs that were translated and published in 1978 by Anthony J. Rameriz. Her story is considered a proverb rather than a legend and likely adapted into the Chamorro culture by missionaries, Spanish government officials, or native mariners in the late 1700s.

The Tale of Sirena

A playful young girl named Sirena once lived near the Hagåtña River, at the place where fresh spring waters dividing the city met the ocean at the river's mouth. Sirena loved the water and she used all of her free time for swimming in the sea or river.

One day, Sirena's nana (mother) sent her to gather coconut shells so she could make coal for the clothes iron. While gathering the shells Sirena couldn't resist the refreshing river. There she swam for a long time, paying little attention to anything else while her nana called for her impatiently.

Sirena's matlina (godmother) happened to come by for a visit while Sirena's nana waited for her daughter to return. Sirena's nana began complaining about her daughter, becoming angrier the more she spoke. She knew Sirena was probably swimming in the river rather than completing her chores. In irritation, Sirena's nana angrily cursed her daughter with the words, "Since Sirena loves the water more than anything, she should become a fish!" However, her matlina, realizing the harshness and power of the woman's words, quickly interjected, "Leave the part of her that belongs to me as human".

Suddenly, Sirena, still swimming in the river, began to feel a change coming over her. To her surprise and dismay, the lower half of her body transformed into the tail of a fish! She had fins like a fish, and her skin was covered with scales! However, from the waist up, she remained a girl. She was transformed into a mermaid!

In her new form, Sirena was unable to leave the water. Her nana soon saw what had happened to her daughter. Regretful of her curse, she tried to take back her harsh words, but she could not undo Sirena's fate. So as not be seen or caught by any passerby Sirena gave a final farewell to her mother before she swam out to sea:

"Oh Nana, do not worry about me, for I am a mistress of the sea, which I love so much. I would rather be back home with you. I know you were angry when you cursed me, but I wish you had punished me some other way. I would rather you had whipped me with your strap than to be the way I am now. Nana, take a good look at me, for this will be the last time we will see each other."

With these words, Sirena disappeared among the waves. To this day, sailors and others still report sightings of the mermaid, forever watching their shores and protecting them. It is said that she can only be captured with a net of human hair.

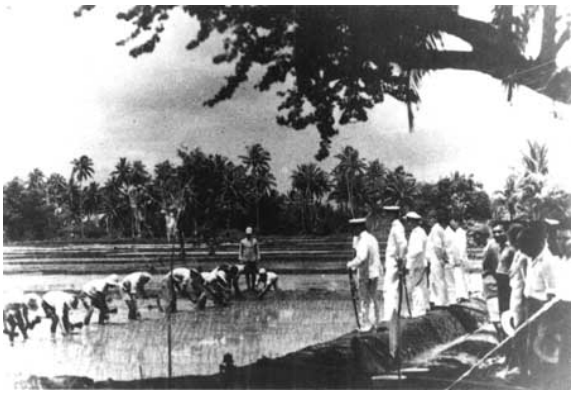
4.4 The Administration and Militarization of the Mariana Islands

The Mariana Islands have been administered by four different countries since the 17th century: Spain, (1668-1898), Germany (1899-1914), Japan (in CNMI 1914-1945, in Guam 1941-1944), and United States (in CNMI f1945-present; in Guam 1898-1941, 1944-present). Guam was ceded to the U.S. in 1898 after the Spanish-American War, and in 1899 Germany purchased the Mariana Islands north of Guam from Spain. This divided governance in the archipelago: Germany governed what is now the CNMI (all islands north of Guam) as part of German New Guinea and the United States governed Guam.

During the 1890s, Japanese businesses engaged in guano mining and copra-making operations at Asuncion and Farallon de Pajaros.[4] In 1903, Asuncion and Farallon de Pajaros were leased to another Japanese company to hunt birds for their feathers as an export to Paris to meet the fashion demands for feather hats, garments, and accessories. At the turn of the 20thcentury, European millinery trade drastically increased harvest rates of seabirds on these and other Pacific Islands. Under the German administration, islands were leased to a German company for seabird plumage in 1909.[12] Primary targets included tropicbirds, terns, and brown boobies.[3] After just three years, bird populations had been reduced to levels such that further exploitation was deemed uneconomical.[14]

Saipan was seized by Japan in on October 14, 1914, marking the end of the German period in what is now the CNMI. At the onset of WWI, Japan assumed control of government and the Northern Mariana Islands became one of six Japanese naval districts of Micronesia. Between WWI and II, Japanese military vessels sailed from Saipan to Asuncion moving people and supplies between islands. Oral histories have confirmed photographic evidence that Okinawan employees of the Japanese military processed fish while living on Maug.[15]

By the late 1930s, Japan was increasing its military capacity in the Northern Mariana Islands. Japanese forces bombed the U.S. Territory of Guam on December 8, 1941. This attack was simultaneous with attacks against other U.S. possessions around the Pacific (including Hawai‘i and U.S. bases in the Philippines), bringing the United States into WWII.[16] The aerial assault was followed by an invasion by 5,400 men. The American force at Guam was small: just 274 sailors and 153 Marines supported by about 80 Insular Force Guard Chamorro militiamen. On December 10, 1941, the Naval Governor of Guam George McMillin surrendered the island to Japan.



Lt. Commander Homura, governor of Japanese-occupied Guam, and his military aides, watch over Chamorro laborers. Photo: National Archives and Records

From 1941-1944, the U.S. military fought against Germany and Italy as an ally of England until it could reorient its focus from a defensive to an offensive posture in the Pacific. Imperial Japanese forces occupied Guam during World War II and renamed the island Ōmiya-Jima (Great Shrine Island). As the largest island in Micronesia, it served as a supply base for transiting Japanese military ships throughout the occupation. During that time, Chamorros endured many hardships; from forced labor to rape, executions, and massacres.[16]

The United States attacked Japanese forces on Saipan and Tinian in June of 1944 and then invaded Guam on July 21, 1944. There was tremendous loss of life in the battles that took place on Saipan, Tinian, and Guam. Two hundred fifty-two of the 9,000 Japanese troops defending Tinian became prisoners of war; the rest died in battle or committed suicide to avoid capture. An unknown number of Chamorro and Carolinian people died or were maimed in the war; 60,000 Japanese nationals (ethnically composed of Okinawan, Korean, and Japanese people); and 5,000 Americans died during these battles.[16]

Large scale amphibious attack at the beaches of Tinian Island in 1944. Photo: National Archives and Records

The U.S. officially occupied Tinian on August 1, 1944 and recaptured Guam on August 10, 1944. Rota and the islands north of Saipan were governed by Japan until September 2, 1945 when the U.S. assumed control. The U.S. Naval Military Government administered the Northern Mariana Islands until 1947. From 1947-1975, the Northern Mariana Islands were part of the United Nations' Trust Territory of the Pacific Islands and were administered by the United States under a United Nations mandate. The Trusteeship Agreement was intended to assist the Trust Territories, all former colonies, in a movement toward self-governance.

In 1975, the people of the Northern Mariana Islands and the United States entered a political Covenant that established a Commonwealth under the sovereignty of the United States. The Covenant was put to vote in a plebiscite on June 17, 1975 and approved by the U.S. House of Representatives through a joint resolution July 21, 1975.[17] On March 6, 1977 CNMI voters ratified the Commonwealth Constitution which took effect on January 9, 1978.

Many areas were set aside for wildlife conservation, including the 3 northernmost islands at the center of the Islands Unit. The CNMI Constitution requires that the islands of Maug, Farallon de Parajos (Uracas), Asuncion, and other islands specified by law, "*be maintained as uninhabited places and used only for the preservation and protection of natural resources, including but not limited to bird, wildlife and plant species*." [25]

Guam, unlike its neighboring islands in Micronesia, was not assigned to the U.S. under the Trusteeship Agreement. The Guam Organic Act of 1950 established Guam as an unincorporated organized territory of the United States, which provided for a civilian government. The Immigration and Nationality Act of 1952 granted U.S. citizenship to all persons born on Guam on or after April 11, 1899.[18]

4.5 Joint Region Marianas and Coast Guard Sector Guam

U.S. military presence in the Mariana Archipelago persisted after World War II, continuing through the Vietnam War and Cold War operations. United States Navy Naval Base Guam and the United States Air Force Andersen Air Force Base merged on October 1, 2009 to create Joint Region Marianas. Andersen Air Force Base on Guam is considered one of two critical bases in the Asia Pacific region (the other location is Diego Garcia in the Indian Ocean).

Naval Base Guam is home of Commander Submarine Squadron 15, Coast Guard Sector Guam and Naval Special Warfare Unit One and supports 28 other tenant commands. It is the home base of dozens of Pacific Command, United States Pacific Fleet, and Seventh Fleet units. Coast Guard Sector Guam's area of responsibility includes Guam, the CNMI, the Republic of Palau, and the Federated States of Micronesia (Kosrae, Pohnpei, Chuuk, and Yap).

When he established the Marianas Trench Marine National Monument, President George W. Bush publicly stated that "*the policy of the United States shall be to continue measures established in the Papahānaumokuākea Marine National Monument to protect the training, readiness, and global mobility of U.S. Armed Forces, and ensure protection of navigation rights and high seas freedoms under the law of the sea, which are essential to the peace and prosperity of civilized nations*." He further noted that "*the security of America, the prosperity of its citizens, and the protection of the ocean environment are complementary and reinforcing priorities. As the United States takes measures to conserve and protect the living and non-living resources of the ocean, it shall ensure preservation of the navigation rights and high seas freedoms enjoyed by all nations under the law of the sea…*".

The DOD will continue to conduct exercises in the region and has committed to adopt appropriate measures to minimize impacts on natural resources within the Monument. The 2020 Mariana Islands Training and Testing (MITT) Supplemental Environmental Impact Statement addresses ongoing and proposed military training activities within the Mariana Islands Range Complex (MIRC), which overlaps portions of the Monument. Proposed at-sea training and testing activities are similar to those that have been occurring in the MIRC for decades. The potential impacts, found to be negligible in the July 2020 Record of Decision, have been addressed and are to be mitigated as identified in the NMFS ESA Section 7 Biological Opinion for the MITT. A description of the military training activities and potential effects may be viewed on-line at http://mitt-eis.com.

USCG provides law enforcement in the Monument
Photo: USCG

4.6 Demographic and Economic Setting in Guam and the CNMI

4.6.1 Population

As of the 2010 Census, the Mariana Archipelago had a total population of 213,241 residents; 159,358 in Guam, and 53,883 in the CNMI.[4] The ethnic composition of the Archipelago is diverse with the majority of the population identifying themselves as Pacific Islander, Chamorro, Asian, Filipino, or mixed ethnic background. Among them, 86,608 identified themselves as Chamorro and 2,703 identified as Carolinian.[19]

Guam
Guam has two official languages: Chamorro and English. Pacific Islanders are the largest ethnic group at 49% of the total population. This category is further divided to include Carolinian, Chamorro, Chuukese, Kosraean, Marshallese, Palauan, Pohnpeian, Yapese, and Other Native Hawaiian and Other Pacific Islander. Chamorro has the largest representation with 75% of all Pacific Islanders. Asians account for 32% of the total population with this category further divided into Chinese, Filipino, Japanese, Korean, Taiwanese, Vietnamese, and Other Asian. Filipinos comprise the majority of this category with 81% of the Asian population. Rounding out the ethnicities for Guam are Mixed Ethnicity 9%, White 7%, Black <1%, Hispanic <1%, and Other Ethnic Origin <1%.[19]

CNMI
Three official languages are observed in the CNMI: Chamorro, Carolinian, and English. Of the 53,883 residents recorded in the 2010 Census, Asians comprise the ethnic majority with 49% of the population. Filipinos lead this category with 35% of the total CNMI population. The Asian group also includes Bangladeshi, Chinese, Japanese, Korean, Nepalese, Thai, and Other Asian. The next largest group are Pacific Islanders with 34%. This category is further divided to include Carolinian, Chamorro, Chuukese, Kosraean, Marshallese, Palauan, Pohnpeian, Yapese, and Native Hawaiian and Other Pacific Islander. Chamorro are the largest group in this category with 23% of the CNMI residents. The remaining ethnicities are Mixed Ethnicity 12%, White 2%, Other Ethnic Origin <1%, Black <1%, and Hispanic <1%.[19]

4.6.2 Education

The percentage of the population who were high school graduates or higher was 79.4 for Guam and 82.4 for CNMI. Persons with a Bachelor's Degree or higher were 20.4% for Guam and 20.2% for CNMI. There is one public four-year college, University of Guam, one public two-year institution, Guam Community College, and a private institution, Pacific Island Bible College, on Guam. The Northern Marianas College in Saipan, CNMI, is a two-year college with satellite campuses in Tinian and Rota.[19]

4.6.3 Income and Employment

As of the 2010 U.S. Census, the average household income in CNMI was $31,463; the unemployment rate is 11.2%. The average household income for Guam is $ 60,671; and the unemployment rate is 8.2%.[19]

National defense spending comprises a large part of the economic industry in Guam, and to a lesser extent in the CNMI on Saipan and Tinian. Tourism is also a primary industry on Guam, second to the military. Most visitors to Guam arrive by air from Japan (78%) and Korea (10%). Aquatic wildlife from the marine environment supports tourism in the form of snorkeling, scuba diving, and recreational fishing. Other industries include transshipment services, concrete products, printing and publishing, food processing, and textiles.[20]

Although the CNMI economy benefits substantially from U.S. financial assistance, tourism remains the main form of industry. Geographic location and historic linkage continue to tie the CNMI tourism industry to the economic shifts of Japan, Korea, and China. As a share of total arrivals, the Japanese tourists comprise a little less than one-half, while Korean visitors account for roughly one-third. The current agriculture sector consists of cattle ranches and small farms producing coconuts, breadfruit, tomatoes, and melons.[20]

4.7 Ecotourism

Ecotourism is defined as "responsible travel to natural areas that conserves the environment and improves the well-being of local people."[21] This approach to tourism has gained momentum for its potential to co-exist with the natural and socio-cultural environment of a destination.

Participants in Visitor Exit Surveys consistently rank "nature and scenic activities" in their top ten reasons for traveling to the CNMI.[22] This statistic has encouraged the Mariana Visitors Authority to develop their islands' niche ecotourism market with a focus on historic sites, snorkeling and scuba excursions, bird watching tours, and tourism that can support the production of aquaculture and agriculture. The Marianas is the third fastest growing tourist destination in the world, according to the United Nations World Travel Organization.

The "*Guam Tourism 2020 Plan*" suggests a focus on accurately representing Chamorro culture in the tourism industry through museum exhibitions and live performances; shaping the identity of Guam as a visitor destination around the unique identity of the Chamorro people and their cultural values; and, the development of nature-based tourism to support aquaculture and agricultural production.

A few ecotourism ventures have been permitted and conducted at Maug, including an interpretative cruise around the caldera's inner perimeter followed by a snorkel to see and learn about the marine life. These activities are expected to expand in the next decade.

The lagoon of Maug in the Islands Unit.
Photo: Sephani Gordon/Open Boat Films/NOAA

4.8 Cultural and Socioeconomic Importance of Fishing

A study on traditional fishing patterns in the Monument was conducted in 2013.[23] Fishermen are held in high esteem in CNMI and Guam communities, and their catch frequently plays an important role in ceremonies and cultural festivities. The practice of sharing one's catch with family and friends is common throughout the Pacific; it maintains connections among family members and across the larger community, and links present day activities to deeply rooted cultural values. One member of the Mariana fishing community explains that visits to the waters around Maug, Asuncion, and Farallon de Pajaros, along with the fishing legacies that keep these places alive in the minds of people today "makes you feel like you are actually an islander."

Fishers have traveled to the Island Unit waters around Maug, Asuncion, and Farallon de Pajaros to maintain the cultural tradition of fish sharing among the fishing crew, among the fishing crew member's family and friends, and among community members. The waters around the northern islands are not only considered by Archipelago residents to be abundant with resources, indicative of island life, and free; but intimately connected with generations of ancestors who also fished in these waters, shared their catch, and consumed the fish at important religious and ceremonial events.

A 2012 survey of fishers who have fished in what now constitutes the Islands Unit shows that from 1979-2010, an average of 2.3 trips per year were made to this area for the purpose of fishing.[24] Other trips were made for the purpose of research, charter, visitation/exploratory trips but included fishing for food. For example, almost all (98%) of the reported trips included fishing, regardless of the stated primary purpose of the trip (129 total trips from 1939- 2010). The research also found that formal and informal exchange of marine resources from the Islands Unit provides a food source for residents; maintains an important connection between residents and this culturally significant place; and allows for gift giving, trade, and monetary transactions independent of commercial markets. The non-market transactions between fishers and other members of their community make it financially feasible for fishing to occur in the Islands Unit through monetary cost recovery and resource sharing.

References

1. Bo Flood, N., *Marianas Island Legends, Myth and Magic*. The Bess Press, Honolulu. 2001.

2. Bingham Bill, *Seeking for the Origins; The Dao of the Chamorro Creation Myth.* Micronesian Journal of the Humanities and Social Sciences, 2003. (Northern Marianas College): p. 7.

3. Rainbird Paul, *Archeaology of Micronesia*. 2004: Cambridge University Press. p. 106.

4. Russell, S., *Gani Revisted: A Historical Overview of the Mariana Archipelago's Northern Islands.* Pacific Studies, 1998. p. 83-105.

5. Carson, M.T., *An Overview of latte period archaeology.* Micronesica, 2012. Micronesian Area Research Center, University of Guam, Mangilao, GU 96923 p. 1-79.

6. Andrew, L., et al., *Estorian i latte: A story of latte*. Micronesia, 2012. p. 8-120.

7. D'Arcy, P., *Connected by the Sea: Towards a Regional History of the Western Caroline Islands.* The Journal of Pacific History, 2001. p. 163-182.

8. Levesque, R., *European Discovery.* Quebec: Levesque Publcations, 1992. Vol. 1 of History of Micronesica: A Collection of Source Documents. Taylor & Francis, Abingdon, Oxfordshire, U.K.

9. Quimby, F., *The Hierro Commerce.* The Journal of Pacific History, 2011. p. 1-26.

10. Rogers, R.F. and D.A. Ballendorf, *Magellan's Landfall in the Marina Islands.* Journal of Pacific History, 1989. p. 193-208.

11. Rogers, R.F., *Destiny's Landfall: A History of Guam* University of Hawaii Press, 1995: p. 70.

12. Spennemann Dirk H. R., *Japanese Economic Exploitation of Central Pacific Seabird Populations, 1898-1915*. Pacific Studies, 1998. p. 41.

13. Diaz, V.M. and J.K. Kauanui, *Native Pacific Cultural Studies on the Edge.* The Contemporary Pacific, 2001. p. 315-342.

14. R., S.D.H., *Exploitation of bird plumages in the German Mariana Islands.* Micronesica, 1999. p. 309-318.

15. Kotowicz D. and Gionfriddo B., *Stories from the Islands Unit. DVD*. 2014, Urban Spider Design.

16. Farrell, D.A., *History of the Northern Mariana Islands.* Public School system, Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands, 1991: p. 343.

17. Horey, J.E., *The Right to Self-Government.* Asian-Pacific Law & Policy Journal, 2003.

18. 8 U.S.C. 1407 - *Persons living in and born in Guam*, in *Chapter 12 Immigration and Nationality*.

19. *Profile of General Demographic Characteristics: 2010*, in *2010 Guam Demographic Profile Data*, U.S.C. Bureau, Editor. 2010.

20. *CIA World Fact Book 2014*. Available from: https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/cq.html

21. *The International Ecosystem Society*. March 27, 2015]; Available from: https://www.ecotourism.org/what-is-ecotourism.

22. Camacho, K.L., *After 9/11: Militarized Borders and Social Movements in the Mariana Islands.* American Quarterly, 2012. p. 685-713.

23. Kotowicz, D. and L. Richmond, *Traditional fishing patterns in the Marianas Trench Marine National Monument*, N.M.F.S. Pacific Islands Fish. Sci. Cent., NOAA, Editor. 2013, Pacific Islands Fish. Sci. Cent. Admin.: Honolulu, HI 96822-2396.

24. NOAA, *Results of Human Dimension Monument-Related Research*, P.I.F.S. Center, Editor. 2013.

25. Constitution of the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands, Article XIV, § 2

Chapter 5. Environmental Effects Analysis

This environmental assessment (EA) is being prepared using the 1978 CEQ NEPA Regulations. NEPA reviews initiated prior to the effective date of the 2020 CEQ regulations may be conducted using the 1978 version of the regulations. The effective date of the 2020 CEQ NEPA Regulations was September 14, 2020. This review began on April 5, 2011, and the agency has decided to proceed under the 1978 regulations. This chapter presents an analysis of the potential effects to the environment as a result of implementing the proposed actions and alternatives described in Chapter 2. Proposed actions within the Monument that are beyond those described in this management plan would need a separate environmental analysis. The effects of carrying out the proposed actions and activities to the natural and human environment are compared between alternatives followed by discussion on the cumulative effects.

5.1 Overview of Effects Analysis and Terminology

The environmental effects analysis compares the alternatives for each topic or location with the resulting negative or beneficial effect. First, the environmental effects of implementing the ongoing Monument management activities under the no change/no action alternative (Alternative 1) are examined. The effects of Alternative 1 are then compared to the effects of Alternative 2, implementing all of the activities in the action plan on a phased schedule, funds permitting, and Alternative 3, implementing a subset of prioritized activities each year.

To aid in analyzing the effects to the environment of various activities, the Council on Environmental Quality (40 CFR, Section 1508.27) provides guidance on the context and intensity of potential effects. Based on this guidance, the terms intermediate, minor, and negligible are used to describe the degree of the potential effects. The word negligible is used to describe a neutral or unnoticeable effect compared to the current situation. The effects can be negative or beneficial.

- **Negligible**. Resources would not be affected, or the effects would be at or near the lowest level of detection. Resource conditions would not change or would be so slight there would not be any measurable or perceptible consequence to a species, habitat, recreation opportunity, visitor experience, or cultural resource.
- **Minor**. Effects would be detectable but localized, small, and of little consequence to a species, habitat, recreation opportunity, visitor experience or cultural resource. Mitigation, if needed to offset adverse effects, would be easily implemented and successful.
- **Intermediate**. Effects would be readily detectable and localized; with consequences to a species, habitat, recreation opportunity, visitor experience, or cultural resource. Mitigation measures would be needed to offset adverse effects and would be extensive, moderately complicated to implement, and probably successful.

- **Major** (significant). Effects would be obvious and would result in substantial consequences to a species, habitat, recreation opportunity, visitor experience, or cultural resource within the local area and region. Extensive mitigating measures may be needed to offset adverse effects and would be large scale in nature, very complicated to implement, and may not have a guaranteed probability of success. Major negative effects could include the irretrievable loss of the resource.

The time and duration of effects have also been defined as follows:
- Short-term or Temporary. An effect that generally would last less than one year or season.
- Long-term. A change in a resource or its condition that would last longer than a single year or season, and covering a long period of time.

The environmental effects analysis was conducted using the following assumptions:
- Staff time and resources needed to implement an activity will be the same for Alternative 2 or 3.
- The annual budget to implement activities is unknown and will fluctuate from year-to-year.

5.2 Summary of Effects

A summary of the environmental effects analysis is presented on the next page in Table 5.1. Current management, the No Change Alternative 1, does provide minimal benefit to the marine ecosystem through exploration and research activities; however, effects are described in terms of the change from current conditions. Therefore, Alternative 1 generally has negligible, if any, effects because little or no change to management programs occurs under this alternative. It is expected that Alternative 3 will offer flexibility and improved capability to respond to ongoing management needs rather than implementing actions on a set, phased schedule in Alternative 2, although the environmental effect of each should be similar. Effects from Alternatives 2 and 3 are summarized in the table using the above definitions to describe the magnitude of change from the current condition.

5.3 Effects Analysis

This effects analysis assumes that selecting the No Change Alternative 1 would maintain the current management regime provided by federal and territorial regulations, ongoing activities and uses and would continue at current levels, and that choosing the No Change alternative would result in negligible, short-term effects without the benefit of additional resource protection measures that would be implemented in the Alternatives 2 or 3.

Many of the proposed activities do not include access to the Monument. Proposed public activities that do involve access to the Monument will be reviewed by the USFWS, NOAA, and CNMI Monument managers and best management practices (BMPs) will be provided in accordance with the proposed permit process. When the Monument management agencies enter the Monument to conduct proposed activities, they will also be required to meet all environmental compliance regulations. The proposed permit process is designed to prevent adverse effects to the resources in the Monument or minimize them when necessary.

The effects of activities that would be conducted by personnel aboard NOAA research vessels are addressed in the Programmatic Environmental Assessment (PEA) for Fisheries Research Conducted and Funded by the Pacific Fisheries Science Center. This PEA led to a finding of no significant

impact, and was signed by the PIFSC responsible program manager in April 2010. These activities all have well established BMPs with vessel cleaning and clean-gear methods carried out to minimize the risk of marine invasive species introductions and/or negative effects to Monument resources. Many of these BMPs will be incorporated into the proposed Monument permit process due to their proven effectiveness.

Table 5.1. Summary of Effects of Alternatives 1, 2, and 3.

Effects	**Alternative 1 –** No Change (No Action)	**Alternative 2 -** Phased Implementation Schedule	**Alternative 3 -** Prioritized Implementation
Activities Common to All	Beneficial, negligible to minor, long-term	Beneficial, minor to intermediate, long-term	Beneficial, intermediate, long-term
To T&E Species	Negligible, short-term	Beneficial, minor to intermediate & long-term	Beneficial, intermediate & long-term
To Air & Water Quality	Beneficial, negligible to minor, long-term	Beneficial, minor to intermediate & long-term	Beneficial, minor to intermediate & long-term
To the Islands Unit	Negligible, long-term	Beneficial, intermediate & long-term	Beneficial, intermediate & long-term
To the Volcanic Unit/Arc of Fire Refuge	Negligible, long-term	Beneficial, minor & long-term	Beneficial, minor & long-term
To the Trench Unit/Refuge	Negligible, long-term	Beneficial, minor & long-term	Beneficial, minor & long-term
To Cultural & Maritime Resources	Negligible, long-term	Beneficial, minor to intermediate, & long-term	Beneficial, minor & long-term
Of Exploration & Research	Beneficial, minor to intermediate, long-term	Beneficial, intermediate & long-term	Beneficial, intermediate & long-term
To Opportunities for Public Use & Access	Negligible, long-term	Beneficial, intermediate & long-term	Beneficial, intermediate & long-term
To Regional Economic Impacts	Negligible, long-term	Beneficial, minor & long-term	Beneficial, minor & long-term
To Environmental Justice	Negligible, long-term	Negligible, long-term	Negligible, long-term
Of Climate Change	Negligible, long-term	Negligible, long-term	Negligible, long-term
From Other Reasonably Foreseeable Events and Activities from Others	Minor negative, long-term	Negligible to minor, long-term	Negligible to minor, long-term
Cumulative Effects	Minor negative to negligible, long-term	Beneficial, minor to intermediate & long-term	Beneficial, intermediate & long-term

5.3.1 Effects of Management Actions Common to All Alternatives

Elements common to all alternatives include: management approach, appropriateness and compatibility, climate change, implementation subject to funding availability, territory coordination, regulatory compliance, and threatened and endangered species protection and recovery. Each of these actions, when implemented, is designed to produce positive results in management of the Monument resources. The management approach includes adaptive management, ecosystem based management, and multiple objective planning. Together, this methodology allows the Monument managers to address ecosystem needs using the best available knowledge in partnership with community members and non-government agencies to achieve the greatest benefit most efficiently. The appropriateness and compatibility of each proposed activity will be assessed to ensure consistency with applicable laws, regulations, and policies prior issuing a permit. All management activities will include consideration for climate change impacts (both the effects of activity to climate change and

the effect of climate change upon the activity). Implementation subject to funding availability drives the need to carefully consider and prioritize each activity for the most productive use of existing resources.

Under all alternatives, the Monument managers will continue to coordinate management activities with the Department of State, the Department of Defense, United States Coast Guard, the CNMI Government, and the Government of Guam. In addition, all management activities will be reviewed to ensure regulatory compliance with federal and CNMI laws are met. Threatened and endangered species protection and recovery are top priorities for Monument managers. All management activities will be reviewed to ensure the continued existence of listed species are not jeopardized and recovery actions will be implemented where possible and appropriate.

Conclusion. The effects of implementing the management actions that are common to all alternatives are considered to have beneficial, negligible to minor, long-term effects to the natural and human environment under Alternative 1. The effects are slight more beneficial, minor to intermediate, and long-term under Alternatives 2. Under Alternative 3, the effects could be beneficial, immediate to major, and long-term with the flexibility to prioritize activities on an annual basis.

5.3.2 Effects of Management Actions to T&E Species

The requests to access the Monument to date (other than those from managing agencies) have been for scientific research, ecotourism, and filming. In these cases, the applicants were issued a USFWS Special Use Permit with BMPs and stipulations to protect T&E species. The effects of the proposed activities were considered short-term and negligible as a result of the SUP conditions that the permittees were required to carry-out for protection of Monument resources. Requests to access any areas of the Monument will be reviewed through the proposed permit process (described in *2.3.2 Coordination of Management, Access, and Permitting Action Plan*) to ensure any potential negative effects of the activity will be prevented or minimized. The permittee will be required to comply with Monument BMPs and any other ESA, Essential Fish Habitat, MMPA, or NPHA resource protection requirements to prevent any detrimental effect to threatened or endangered species located in Monument waters.

As a result of the conservation measures of the proposed activities in the action plans, the potential effects to T&E species may be considered beneficial and long-term. Examples include 1) the assessment and monitoring to ensure non-commercial fishing is a sustainable activity; 2) monitoring scientific research and any other authorized activities to ensure such actions contribute to the protection of the Monument resources as outlined in the *Marine Resources Conservation & Monitoring Action Plan*; 3) the *Surveillance and Enforcement Action Plan* proposed activities will support long-term protection of the resources and T&E species found in the Monument by ensuring compliance with environmental laws and regulations and making sure the NOAA nautical charts and U.S. Coast Pilot 10® are accurate and up-to-date; 4) Proposed activities to decrease the incidence of fishing gear, marine debris, and marine invasive species in the *Marine Debris* and *Marine Invasive Species Action Plans* serve to provide long-term benefits to T&E species in the Monument; and, 5) in the event of an emergency or natural disaster, the effects to federally or CNMI and/or Guam-listed T&E species would be alleviated to the greatest extent possible through the contingency and response planning activities in the *Emergency Response & Natural Resources Damage Assessment Action Plan.*

Conclusion. Under Alternative 1, continued effects to T&E species are expected to be negligible and short-term. Through the proposed permit process, research, non-commercial fishing, and cultural or recreational activities are expected to continue to be beneficial, minor to intermediate, and long-term in Alternative 2; and, beneficial, intermediate to major, and long-term in Alternative 3 due to the ability to be responsive to changing environmental conditions affecting threatened and endangered species. The effects to federally or CNMI and/or Guam listed T&E species as result of the proposed activities in all the action plans in Alternatives 2 and 3 are considered to be the same as above.

5.3.3 Effects of Management Actions to Water and Air Quality

Since 2010 there have been 22 requests by international and domestic research organizations to conduct research activities in the Trench Unit/Refuge and/or the Volcanic Unit/Arc of Fire Refuge. The PIFSC has conducted three cruises to the Islands Unit since 2010, for a total average of 4.25 requests to conduct research in the Monument per year. This number is anticipated to remain constant or slightly increase over the next 10 years due to the geologic conditions in the Marianas that are conducive for climate change and ocean acidification research. The estimated 4-5 annual expeditions are considered to have negligible effects to water and air quality.

The proposed management activities do not include actions that would disperse materials into waters or air with the exception of research vessels, entering the Monument to conduct permitted activities. Through the proposed permit process and the further development and implementation of BMPs as part of the *Coordination of Management, Access, and Permitting Action Plan*, every attempt will be made to prevent disbursement of materials into the waters or air of the Monument. In the event oil is discharged from a vessel into Monument waters, the operator is required to report the event to the USCG. The USCG will respond with a level of action that is commensurate the nature of the discharge and contact Monument managers for appropriate follow-up activity. A description of the oil discharge response process is in the *Emergency Response and NRDA Action Plan*.

The USCG and IMO ballast water requirements apply to Monument waters. No ballast water discharge is to be allowed within the boundaries of the Islands Unit except in emergencies as defined by the USCG: (33 CFR § 15.1512). This and other permit conditions are expected to minimize adverse effects to Monument waters. Air emissions for large ships and ocean vessels are regulated by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency and the IMO to limit emissions to acceptable standards. Smaller vessels that might be expected to access the Monument waters may contribute air emissions from diesel powered engines, however, the number and duration of vessels expected to visit the Monument are minimal. Other activities outlined in the action plans, coupled with the proposed permit process, will promote beneficial and long-term effects to the air and waters of the Monument.

Conclusion. Under the No Change Alternative 1, ongoing management and research activities to the Monument have been minimal and the effect to the air and waters are considered negligible and long-term. The overall effect to Monument waters and air quality (with the additional pro-active resource protection activities under Alternatives 2 and 3) is expected to be beneficial, minor to intermediate, and long-term.

5.3.4 Effects of Management Actions to the Islands Unit

Access to the Islands Unit was documented at 3.8 trips per year for all types of activities from 1979-2010.[1] This trend is expected to grow slightly with increased interest in conducting scientific research for climate change and ocean acidification in the Maug cauldron, as well as marine hydrology trends and newly discovered vent species around other seamounts in the Islands Unit. Monument managers will monitor the access requests and take the appropriate measures to minimize potential adverse effects such as marine invasive species introductions or coral reef damage from ship anchors if there is a considerable increase. To prevent these impacts, access requests to the Monument for fishing, exploration and research, or cultural purposes will be reviewed by the Monument managers under the proposed permit process. Any permits issued will require the permittees to implement the BMPs and any additional conservation measures required under ESA, MMPA, MSA, or NHPA to minimize effects to the resources in the Islands Unit.

Just a few proposed activities will require access to the Islands Unit over the next 5 years. A number of the actions will rely on partner institutions or a NOAA ship in collaboration with the PIFSC to get to the Islands Unit, whereby BMPs are implemented to prevent potential discharges or invasive species introductions. Developing a process to remove marine debris in the Islands Unit is a top priority with on-site benefits. Preparing an Environmental Sensitivity Index (ESI) is beneficial in assessing potential damage to resources at risk during an emergency situation. ESI maps can be used to identify vulnerable locations, establish protection priorities, and identify cleanup strategies in advance to facilitate a quicker and more effective response. Establishing research sites where only low-impact research would be conducted is also intended to have long term benefits.

The proposed activities under either Alternative 2 or 3, are expected to be beneficial and long-term due to the protective measures of the activities planned. Other examples include 1) implementing the *Ocean Literacy, Environmental Education, and Public Outreach Action Plan* and interpretive programs that provide an understanding of the ocean's influence on humankind and vice versa, with learning materials that address seven essential ocean principles including climate change and ocean acidification, 2) monitoring the Islands Unit ecosystem to ensure the resources are not degraded and the fisheries are managed sustainably through the *Marine Resources Conservation and Monitoring Action Plan*, 3) developing an assessment of marine invasive species vector pathways, introduction risk reduction BMPs, and monitoring programs in the *Marine Invasive Species Action Plan* to protect the Islands Unit ecosystem, and 4) assessing the need and value of establishing International Maritime Organization protection measures for the Islands Unit.

Conclusion. Effects to the Islands Unit under Alternative 1 are considered to be negligible and long-term. Effects to the Islands Unit from proposed additional management activities as a result of implementing Alternatives 2 and 3 are expected to be beneficial, intermediate, and long-term. Having the projects on a set schedule in Alternative 2 may assure they do get completed rather than competing with changing priorities in Alternative 3.

5.3.5 Effects of Management Actions to the Volcanic Unit/Arc of Fire Refuge

Implementing BMP protocols, developing an invasive species observation plan, updating navigation charts, and developing a geo-referenced research map are among the proposed management activities planned for the Volcanic Unit/Arc of Fire Refuge. Access is limited by the technical and financial requirements of conducting research in this environment. Exploration and research has been conducted primarily for seafloor mapping and submarine volcanoes/vent research using manned and remotely operated underwater vehicles by both U.S. and international researchers. Research scientists from institutions and other government agencies are issued an SUP with BMPs to reduce the risk of causing adverse effects.

International research scientists must also submit their research requests to OPA via the online Research Application Tracking System (RATS). After a multi-agency review of the proposed activities, and if the proposal is approved, they are issued a letter of endorsement by the State Department in addition to the SUP. The potential types of adverse effects that may occur from access are primarily introduction of invasive species, damage to vent resources, and overharvest of marine species. Under Alternatives 2 and 3, new exploration and research activities are proposed, contingent upon funding and competing priorities. To prevent potential impacts, any scientific research or exploration activities conducted will reviewed through the proposed JMP process with requirements to implement the BMPs to reduce the risk of invasive species introductions and prevent or minimize effects to the submerged lands and resources of the Monument.

Conclusion. Under Alternative 1, continued exploration and research activities are expected to have negligible and long-term effects to the Volcanic Unit/Arc of Fire Refuge. Under Alternatives 2 and 3, exploration and research activities would be conducted in compliance with the proposed permit process conditions, thus are considered to have beneficial, long-term effects to resources in the Volcanic Unit/Arc of Fire Refuge.

5.3.6 Effects of Management Actions to the Trench Unit/Refuge

Monument managers will continue to work with partners to study, explore, and conserve the features and resources of the Monument. Exploration and research in the Trench Unit/Refuge have been conducted over the years primarily to learn about plate tectonics and the geologic phenomena that occur in the Mariana Trench using manned and remotely operated underwater vehicles. Although access to the Trench Refuge/Unit has been limited by the technical and financial requirements of conducting research in this environment, modern technology has recently opened the opportunities to well-financed adventure-explorers with film crews.

Research has occurred by both U.S. and international researchers. Research scientists from institutions, adventure-explorers, and other agencies are issued an SUP with stipulations required to protect Monument resources. International research scientists must also submit their research requests to OPA via the online Research Application Tracking System (RATS). After a multi-agency review of the proposed activities, and if the proposal is approved, they are issued a letter of endorsement by the State Department in addition to the SUP.

The potential types of adverse impacts that may occur from access are primarily introduction of invasive species, damage to vent resources, and harm to marine species found in the depths of the Trench Unit/Refuge. To prevent these potential impacts, when requests for access are received,

Monument managers will review the proposal and issue permits that require the applicable BMPs and stipulations are carried-out to minimize adverse effects to the Trench Unit/Refuge. As noted in *1.6.1 Scope of the Plan*, submarine cable proposals for the Trench Unit/Refuge are beyond the scope of this management plan and require separate NEPA assessment for the right-of-way language.

Conclusion. Under Alternative 1, effects to the Mariana Trench Unit/Refuge are expected to be negligible and long-term. Under Alternatives 2 and 3, the effects to the submerged lands and resources in the Monument are considered beneficial and long-term with the proposed coordination of management process and BMPs provided with new permits.

5.3.7 Effects of Management Actions on Cultural and Maritime Resources

When the proposed activities in the cultural and maritime heritage action plan are funded and surveys are conducted in the Monument waters, all actions will be carried out in accordance with the BMPs and provisions adopted in the proposed public access and permitting section to prevent or minimize adverse effects. Proposed partnerships with indigenous communities are intended to incorporate culturally appropriate maritime heritage research and activities. Cultural and maritime resources would be handled and cared for in accordance with National Historic Preservation Act and in agreement with the CNMI Historic Preservation Office. The findings of cultural surveys and subsequent reports would be a benefit to archaeologists, historians, and the CNMI and Guam communities.

Traditional access to the Monument for culturally significant, subsistence, and religious uses is anticipated to have no impact if these activities are conducted in accordance with the BMPs and conditions of an SUP or a non-commercial fishing permit.

Conclusion. Under Alternative 1, there are no Monument-focused ongoing cultural or maritime resources activities conducted by Monument managers. As cultural and maritime resource projects sometimes are not a priority in relation to invasive species or endangered species protection and recovery needs, Alternative 2 may assure these projects are funded by being on a set schedule. Thus Alternative 2 may be beneficial, minor to intermediate, and long-term. If the proposed activities in Alternative 3 are implemented, the effects to cultural and maritime resources are considered beneficial, minor, and long-term.

5.3.8 Effects of Exploration and Research

Research is needed to understand how Monument ecosystems and natural processes work to aid in decision making. The bottom features of the trench are likened to inverted islands of biodiversity and each submarine volcano is likewise a submerged island. Each feature may host unique biological communities and could potentially be susceptible to invasions by organisms not native to that feature. Possible impacts include: (1) disturbance of foraging sea birds and pelagic fish; (2) disturbance of marine mammals; (3) disturbance of endangered and threatened sea turtles; (4) release of pollution and contaminants; (5) disturbance and damage to invertebrates and algae; (6) disturbance to benthic marine organisms; (7) introduction of metals and other equipment needed to travel to the bottom and then discarded in order to return to the surface; and, (8) accidental introduction of non-native extremophile species from equipment used during the operations.

Monument managers will review proposed activities and ensure BMPs and associated regulations are followed to minimize effects of the research activities. Accidental introduction of non-native species or cross contamination of species between deep sites has been documented at other deep-sea locations. A submersible transferred 38 limpets from the Gorda Ridge at 7457 feet depth to the Juan de Fuca Ridge after a 2-day journey of 394 miles. When the samples from this site were analyzed, the limpets were detected to be alive, having survived the time and depth of decompression and re-compression between the two sites.[2] As a precaution, permits will require disinfection of hard equipment surfaces (i.e., with diluted bleach solution or freshwater pressure wash) before deploying to other locations. Exploration and research activities are anticipated to have negligible negative impacts if these activities are conducted in accordance with the BMPs and conditions of an SUP.

Conclusion. The effects of exploration and research activities associated with Alternative 1 are considered negligible and long-term. Under Alternatives 2 or 3, using the proposed permit process, the effects of exploration and research activities are considered to be beneficial, intermediate and long-term.

5.3.9 Effects to Opportunities for Public Use and Access

Public access for non-commercial fishing and traditional cultural practices will primarily occur in the Islands Unit, as access to the Trench Refuge/Unit and Volcanic Unit/Arc of Fire Refuge are limited by the technical nature of equipment required to get there. Only the upper pinnacle of Zealandia Bank north of Sarigan is within close proximity to local boaters. The number of vessel days by vessel type transiting Monument waters from August 2011-June 2012 was approximately: 400 cargo, 75 fishing, 20 passenger, 10 pleasure, 15 research, 70 tanker, and 30 with no vessel type data.[3] The UN reported 95,402 registered commercial ships transporting about 11 billion tons of cargo across the global ocean in 2019.[4] Vessels may still pass through the Monument without engaging in any other activity not having a direct bearing on passage (innocent passage).

The JMP process will ensure Monument resources are adequately protected while allowing for appropriate public uses. Under Alternatives 2 and 3, public access and use is encouraged using the proposed JMP review process. All Monument visitors would be required to comply with the proposed permit provisions in effort to prevent or minimize effects to Monument resources. Public use activities for non-commercial fishing and traditional cultural practices are anticipated to have negligible impact if these activities are conducted in accordance with the BMPs and conditions of an SUP or a non-commercial fishing permit. A permit fee schedule will be negotiated by the MMCT members concurrent with the development of the JMP. The permit fees are anticipated to be nominal and not cause a burden to permit applicants.

Conclusion. Effects to opportunities for public use and access under Alternative 1 are considered negligible and long-term. Under Alternatives 2 and 3, the effects to opportunities for public use and access are considered beneficial and long-term with the additional conservation and monitoring measures identified in a number of the proposed action plans.

5.3.10 Regional Economic Impacts of Current and Proposed Management Alternatives

Under Alternative 1, minor positive economic benefits to the CNMI and Guam communities will continue through the influx of agency personnel travel expenses for ongoing public workshops and meetings. With the exception of the triennial PIFSC RAMP ship visits, the activities in Alternatives 2 and 3 are primarily administrative in nature and minor positive economic benefits will continue resulting from travel and reserving meeting rooms for the MTMAC, public meetings, and teacher workshops. The USFWS is currently remodeling a Monument office and visitor contact station in Garapan, co-located with the National Park Service. Agency spending for Monument-related work and staff contributes to the local economies. Depending on staffing needs, NOAA may position a Monuments Program staff member in the NOAA Saipan Field Office.

There has been a rise in exploration and research activity since Monument designation, with an average of four requests/year by many entities including PMEL, USGS, universities, and foreign institutions. The vessels often stay in Apra Harbor or Tanapag Harbor, where ship crews visit local businesses with a positive effect on local economies. When the new visitor contact station is established on Saipan, island residents and visiting tourists will be able to learn about the unique phenomena that takes place in the Mariana Trench, the submarine volcanoes, and the Islands Unit ecosystem. Increased awareness of the Monument is anticipated to bring in a small amount of economic revenue to the local community from the travel expenses associated with film and research teams. The proposed activities that would engage local communities as well as potential visits to the Monument will benefit the local economy with the need to purchase goods and supplies. Support travel and accommodations for personnel working in CNMI and Guam for Monument activities will also contribute to local economies.

Conclusion. The ongoing activities under Alternative 1 are considered negligible and long-term. Under Alternatives 2 and 3, a minor positive economic stimulus is expected through increased government spending in the area to implement the proposed activities; thus, minor beneficial and long-term effects are anticipated.

5.3.11 Environmental Justice

The EPA oversees environmental justice compliance and defines environmental justice as: “the fair treatment and meaningful involvement of all people regardless of race, color, national origin, or income with respect to the development, implementation, and enforcement of environmental laws, regulations, and policies.” Further, EPA defines a community with potential environmental justice populations as one that has a greater percentage of minority or low-income populations than does an identified reference community (identified reference community is the CNMI. Minority populations are those populations having 1) 50% minority population in the affected area (USEPA 1998a); or 2) a significantly greater minority population than the reference area. There are no specific thresholds provided for low-income or poverty populations.

There are small communities on the Islands of Pagan and Agrihan of the CNMI, with the majority of the local population located on the Islands of Saipan, Tinian, and Rota of the CNMI and on Guam. Development of this draft MMP was completed with public input from the CNMI and Guam, which involved local government representatives, residents, teachers, and others from the community. None of the proposed strategies would negatively affect environmental justice because activities

would provide "*fair treatment and meaningful involvement of all people regardless of race, color, national origin, or income with respect to the development, implementation, and enforcement of environmental laws, regulations, and policies*."

At this time, only commercial activities are charged a fee to obtain an SUP issued by USFWS. Permits provide a means to balance use and conservation of protected species. Additionally, some permits promote conservation efforts by authorizing scientific research, generating data, or allowing wildlife management activities to go forward. As noted in Chapter 2, NOAA is authorized under the MSFCA to collect a fee to cover the administrative costs incurred in issuing fishing permits. The USFWS is required to consider cost recovery and fair market value when providing goods, resources, or services to a non-FWS entity. Therefore, a permit fee schedule will be negotiated by the MMCT members concurrent with the development of the JMP. The permits to be issued for non-commercial activities may have a nominal charge solely to cover the agencies' administrative fees to review and process the permits, thereby not being a burden to the applicant. Therefore, it is anticipated that proposed actions under Alternatives 2 and 3 would have negligible environmental justice effects.

Conclusion: Effects to environmental justice from proposed management actions under Alternatives 1, 2, and 3 are considered to be negligible for the long-term.

5.3.12 Potential Effects from Climate Change

Rising sea level could adversely affect coral reef ecosystems; and increased ocean temperatures and acidification have been identified as threats. Monument managers will work in cooperation with research scientists and other Monument visitors to minimize carbon output as much as possible. Due to the limited amount of current access and activity that takes place in Monument waters, the effects to climate change and ocean acidification are considered to be negligible and minor.

The activities proposed in Alternatives 2 and 3 seek to find solutions and capitalize on the conditions found in the Monument for scientific studies. The proposed management activities will contribute some GHG emissions through access to the Monument waters and operating activities of vessels conducting research; however those negative impacts are intended to be offset with the positive results of the research to be conducted. In addition, many vessel operators conduct "green operations" to minimize energy consumption and reduce GHG output which may be positive or negligible short-term benefit.

Conclusion. Under Alternative 1, the effects of climate change will advance without any well-planned or funded research and monitoring to gain a greater understanding of the effects of global climate changes. This lost opportunity is considered negligible and long-term. The effects from climate change on the Monument resources as result of implementing the proposed activities of Alternatives 2 and 3 are considered negligible and long-term.

5.3.13 Reasonably Foreseeable Events and Activities from Others

At this time there are only a few known reasonably foreseeable events and activities from others that would affect the human or natural environment in the Monument. Cable crossings, inadvertent trespass, or potential ship groundings leading to more marine debris and resource damage will likely continue. The new federal Ocean Policy to "*Advance the Economic, Security, and Environmental Interest of the U.S.*" provides tools to reduce conflicts by coordinating U.S. departments' ocean

management and facilitating collaboration among government entities, industry, the science community, and other stakeholders. Monument managers will continually check with the CNMI and Guam partners to be apprised of foreseeable events and activities from others.

Conclusion. Under Alternative 1, with no MMP in place, reasonably foreseeable events and activities from others that are proximate to the Monument would most likely be continued. These effects are considered to be negative, minor, and long-term. Under Alternatives 2 and 3, the positive actions result in overall effects considered to be negligible to minor, beneficial and long-term.

5.4 Cumulative Effects Assessment

Cumulative effects can result from the incremental effects of a project when added to other past, present, and reasonably foreseeable future projects in the area. Cumulative impacts can result from individually minor but cumulatively significant actions over a period of time. This assessment is intended to consider the interaction of activities in the Monument waters and with other actions occurring over a larger spatial and temporal frame of reference.

The Council on Environmental Quality (CEQ) regulations for implementing the provisions of NEPA defines several different types of effects that should be evaluated in an EA including direct, indirect, and cumulative. The CEQ (40 CFR § 1508.7) provides the following definition of cumulative effects: "*The impact on the environment which results from the incremental impact of the action when added to other past, present, and reasonably foreseeable future actions regardless of what agency (Federal or non-Federal) or person undertakes such other actions*."

The majority of known non-management and non-research-related actions that take place in Monument waters are those of the DOD; national security; innocent passage; or emergencies. According to the Proclamation, these activities are not subject to the Proclamation directives.

Conclusion. The cumulative effects of Alternative 1 are considered minor to negligible, negative, and long-term. Unmonitored access has the potential to introduce invasive species, marine debris, opportunistic over-fishing and other destructive activities. Under Alternative 2, conservation monitoring and protection measures would be implemented and the cumulative effects are expected to be beneficial, minor to intermediate, and long-term. Alternative 3, by being responsive and offer more flexibility to change management priorities, is considered beneficial, intermediate, and long-term.

References:

1. Kotowicz, D and L. Richmond, 2013. Traditional fishing patterns in the Marianas Trench Marine National Monument. Pacific Islands Fisheries Science Center Administrative Report H-13-05, 46 p. 2013.

2. Voight, J.R. et al. 2012. Science Gear as a Vector for Non-Native Species at Deep Sea Hydrothermal Vents. Conservation Biology. 26:928-942.

3. Franklin E., and Mancini F. (2015). Marine Invasive Species and Vector Pathways of the Pacific Marine National Monuments, a Report to the National Marine Fisheries Service, NOAA, June 2015. Hawai‘i Institute of Marine Biology, School of Ocean and Earth Science and Technology, University of Hawai‘i at Mānoa.

4. *Review of Maritime Transport 2019*. Printed at United Nations, Geneva. October 2019 UNCTAD/RMT/2019.

Appendix A. Known Species List

The list of known species is continuously growing. New species are discovered during most expeditions to explore the depths of the Monument.

A.1 Fish Species

SCIENTIFIC NAME	COMMON NAME
Abudefduf septemfasciatus	Banded sergeant
Abudefduf sexfasciatus	Scissortail sergeant
Abudefduf sordidus	Blackspot sergeant
Abudefduf vaigiensis	Indo-Pacific sergeant
Acanthocybium solandri	Wahoo
Acanthurus achilles	Achilles tang
Acanthurus blochii	Ringtail surgeonfish
Acanthurus dussumieri	Eyestripe surgeonfish
Acanthurus guttatus	Whitespotted surgeonfish
Acanthurus leucopareius	Whitebar surgeonfish
Acanthurus lineatus	Lined surgeonfish
Acanthurus mata	Elongate surgeonfish
Acanthurus nigricans	Whitecheek surgeonfish
Acanthurus nigricauda	Epaulette surgeonfish
Acanthurus nigrofuscus	Brown surgeonfish
Acanthurus nigroris	Bluelined surgeonfish
Acanthurus nubilus	Bluelinedsurgeon
Acanthurus olivaceus	Orangespot surgeonfish
Acanthurus pyroferus	Chocolate surgeonfish
Acanthurus thompsoni	Thompson's surgeonfish
Acanthurus xanthopterus	Yellowfin surgeonfish
Aetobatus narinari	Spotted eagle ray
Alectis ciliaris	African pompano
Aluterus scriptus	Scrawled filefish
Amanses scopas	Broom filefish
Amblyeleotris fasciata	Red-banded/Barred shrimpgoby
Amphiprion chrysopterus	Orangefin anemonefish
Amphiprion clarkii	Yellowtail clownfish
Anampses caeruleopunctatus	Bluespotted wrasse
Anampses meleagrides	Spotted wrasse
Aphareus furca	Small toothed jobfish
Apogon angustatus	Broadstriped cardinalfish
Apogon novemfasciatus	Sevenstriped cardinalfish
Apogonidae	Apogonidae species
Apolemichthys trimaculatus	Threespot angelfish
Aprion virescens	Green jobfish
Arothron meleagris	Guineafowl puffer
Arothron nigropunctatus	Blackspotted puffer

Fish Species continued

SCIENTIFIC NAME	COMMON NAME
Arothron stellatus	Starry toadfish
Aspidontus taeniatus	False cleanerfish
Aulostomus chinensis	Chinese trumpetfish
Balistapus undulatus	Orange-lined triggerfish
Balistoides conspicillum	Clown triggerfish
Balistoides viridescens	Titan triggerfish
Barathrites sp	Cusk-eel
Bassozetus sp.	Cusk-eel
Blenniidae	Blenny species
Bodianus anthioides	Lyretail hogfish
Bodianus axillaris	Axilspot hogfish
Bodianus bilunulatus	Tarry hogfish
Bodianus loxozonus	Blackfin hogfish
Bothus mancus	Flowery flounder
Caesio teres	Yellow and blue-back fusilier
Calotomus carolinus	Carolines parrotfish
Cantherhines dumerilii	Whitespotted filefish
Cantherhines pardalis	Honeycomb filefish
Canthigaster amboinensis	Spider-eye puffer
Canthigaster solandri	Spotted sharpnose
Canthigaster valentini	Valentini's sharpnose puffer
Caracanthus maculatus	Spotted coral croucher
Carangoides ferdau	Blue trevally
Carangoides orthogrammus	Island trevally
Caranx ignobilis	Giant trevally
Caranx lugubris	Black jack
Caranx melampygus	Bluefin trevally
Caranx sexfasciatus	Bigeye trevally
Carcharhinus amblyrhynchos	Grey reef shark
Carcharhinus melanopterus	Blacktip reef shark
Centropyge bispinosa	Two-spined angelfish
Centropyge fisheri	Orange angelfish
Centropyge flavissima	Lemonpeel angelfish
Centropyge heraldi	Yellow angelfish
Centropyge multifasciata	Barred angelfish
Centropyge shepardi	Mango angelfish
Cephalopholis argus	Peacock hind
Cephalopholis miniata	Coral hind
Cephalopholis sexmaculata	Sixblotch hind
Cephalopholis sonnerati	Tomato hind
Cephalopholis spiloparaea	Strawberry hind
Cephalopholis urodeta	Darkfin hind
Chaetodon auriga	Threadfin butterflyfish
Chaetodon citrinellus	Speckled butterflyfish

Fish Species continued

SCIENTIFIC NAME	COMMON NAME
Chaetodon ephippium	Saddle butterflyfish
Chaetodon flavocoronatus	Yellow-crowned butterflyfish
Chaetodon lunula	Raccoon butterflyfish
Chaetodon lunulatus	Oval butterflyfish
Chaetodon mertensii	Atoll butterflyfish
Chaetodon meyeri	Scrawled butterflyfish
Chaetodon ornatissimus	Ornate butterflyfish
Chaetodon punctatofasciatus	Spotband butterflyfish
Chaetodon quadrimaculatus	Fourspot butterflyfish
Chaetodon reticulatus	Mailed butterflyfish
Chaetodon trifascialis	Chevron butterflyfish
Chaetodon unimaculatus	Teardrop butterflyfish
Cheilinus chlorourus	Floral wrasse
Cheilinus oxycephalus	Snooty wrasse
Cheilinus trilobatus	Tripletail wrasse
Cheilodipterus artus	Wolf cardinalfish
Cheilodipterus quinquelineatus	Five-lined cardinalfish
Chlorurus frontalis	Tan-faced parrotfish
Chlorurus microrhinos	Steephead parrots
Chlorurus sordidus	Daisy parrotfish
Chromis acares	Midget chromis
Chromis agilis	Agile chromis
Chromis amboinensis	Ambon chromis
Chromis margaritifer	Bicolor chromis
Chromis vanderbilti	Vanderbilt's chromis
Chromis viridis	Blue green damselfish
Chromis xanthura	Paletail chromis
Chrysiptera brownriggii	Surge damselfish
Chrysiptera traceyi	Tracey's demoiselle
Cirrhilabrus katherinae	Katherine's wrasse
Cirrhitichthys falco	Dwarf hawkfish
Cirrhitus pinnulatus	Stocky hawkfish
Cirripectes variolosus	Red-speckled blenny
Coris aygula	Clown coris
Coris gaimard	Yellowtail coris
Coryphaenoides sp.	Rattail
Coryphaenoides yaquinae	Abyssal grenadier
Ctenochaetus binotatus	Twospot surgeonfish
Ctenochaetus cyanocheilus	Bluelip bristletooth
Ctenochaetus hawaiiensis	Chevron tang
Ctenochaetus striatus	Striated surgeonfish
Dascyllus aruanus	Whitetail dascyllus
Dascyllus reticulatus	Reticulate dascyllus
Dascyllus trimaculatus	Threespot dascyllus

Fish Species continued

SCIENTIFIC NAME	COMMON NAME
Dasyatidae	Stingray species
Decapterus macarellus	Mackerel scad
Diodon hystrix	Spot-fin porcupinefish
Ecsenius bicolor	Bi-color blenny
Elagatis bipinnulata	Rainbow runner
Epinephelus fasciatus	Blacktip grouper
Epinephelus hexagonatus	Starspotted grouper
Epinephelus lanceolatus	Giant grouper
Epinephelus macrospilos	Snubnose grouper
Epinephelus maculatus	Highfin grouper
Epinephelus melanostigma	One-blotch grouper
Epinephelus merra	Honeycomb grouper
Epinephelus socialis	Surge grouper
Epinephelus tauvina	Greasy grouper
Euthynnus affinis	Kawakawa
Exallias brevis	Leopard blenny
Fistularia commersonii	Bluespotted cornetfish
Forcipiger flavissimus	Yellow longnose butterflyfish
Forcipiger longirostris	Longnose butterflyfish
Genicanthus watanabei	Blackedged angelfish
Gnathodentex aureolineatus	Striped large-eye bream
Gomphosus varius	Bird wrasse
Gracila albomarginata	Masked grouper
Gymnosarda unicolor	Dogtooth tuna
Gymnothorax flavimarginatus	Yellow-edged moray
Gymnothorax javanicus	Giant moray
Gymnothorax meleagris	Turkey moray
Gymnothorax undulatus	Undulated moray
Halichoeres biocellatus	Red-lined wrasse
Halichoeres hortulanus	Checkerboard wrasse
Halichoeres margaritaceus	Pink-belly wrasse
Halichoeres marginatus	Dusky wrasse
Halichoeres melasmapomus	Cheekspot wrasse
Halichoeres ornatissimus	Ornamented wrasse
Hemigymnus fasciatus	Barred thicklip
Hemigymnus melapterus	Blackeye thicklip
Hemitaurichthys polylepis	Pyramid butterflyfish
Hemitaurichthys thompsoni	Thompson's butterflyfish
Heniochus chrysostomus	Threeband pennantfish
Heniochus monoceros	Masked bannerfish
Heteropriacanthus cruentatus	Glasseye
Himantura fai	Pink whipray
Hologymnosus doliatus	Pastel ringwrasse
Istigobius decoratus	Decorated goby

Fish Species continued

SCIENTIFIC NAME	COMMON NAME
Katsuwonus pelamis	Skipjack tuna
Kyphosus cinerascens	Blue seachub
Kyphosus pacificus	Grey sea chub
Kyphosus vaigiensis	Brassy chub
Labroides bicolor	Bicolor cleaner wrasse
Labroides dimidiatus	Bluestreak cleaner wrasse
Labroides pectoralis	Blackspot cleaner wrasse
Labropsis xanthonota	Yellowback tubelip
Lepidozygus tapeinosoma	Fusilier damselfish
Liparid spp.	Snailfish
Lotilia graciliosa	Whitecap goby
Lutjanus bohar	Two-spot red snapper
Lutjanus fulvus	Blacktail snapper
Lutjanus gibbus	Humpback red snapper
Lutjanus kasmira	Common bluestripe snapper
Lutjanus monostigma	Onespot snapper
Macolor macularis	Midnight snapper
Macolor niger	Black and white snapper
Macropharyngodon meleagris	Blackspotted wrasse
Malacanthus latovittatus	Blue blanquillo
Meiacanthus atrodorsalis	Forktail blenny
Melichthys niger	Black triggerfish
Melichthys vidua	Pinktail triggerfish
Monotaxis grandoculis	Humpnose big-eye bream
Mulloidichthys flavolineatus	Yellowstripe goatfish
Mulloidichthys vanicolensis	Yellowfin goatfish
Myripristis amaena	Brick soldierfish
Myripristis berndti	Blotcheye soldierfish
Myripristis kuntee	Shoulderbar soldierfish
Myripristis murdjan	Pinecone soldierfish
Myripristis vittata	Whitetip soldierfish
Naso annulatus	Whitemargin unicornfish
Naso brevirostris	Spotted unicornfish
Naso caesius	Gray unicornfish
Naso hexacanthus	Sleek unicornfish
Naso lituratus	Orangespine unicornfish
Naso tonganus	Bulbnose unicornfish
Naso unicornis	Bluespine unicornfish
Naso vlamingii	Bignose unicornfish
Nebrius ferrugineus	Tawny nurse shark
Nemateleotris magnifica	Fire goby
Neocirrhites armatus	Flame hawkfish
Neoniphon argenteus	Clearfin squirrelfish
Neoniphon opercularis	Blackfin squirrelfish

Fish Species continued

SCIENTIFIC NAME	COMMON NAME
Neoniphon sammara	Sammara squirrelfish
Novaculichthys taeniourus	Rockmover wrasse
Odontaspis ferox	Smalltoothed sand tiger
Odonus niger	Redtoothed triggerfish
Oplegnathus punctatus	Spotted knifejaw
Ostracion cubicus	Yellow boxfish
Ostracion meleagris	Whitespotted boxfish
Oxycheilinus digramma	Cheeklined wrasse
Oxycheilinus unifasciatus	Ringtail maori wrasse
Pachycara sp.	Eelpout
Paracanthurus hepatus	Palette surgeonfish
Paracirrhites arcatus	Arc-eye hawkfish
Paracirrhites forsteri	Blackside hawkfish
Paracirrhites hemistictus	Whitespot hawkfish
Parapercis clathrata	Latticed sandperch
Parapercis millepunctata	Black dotted sand perch
Parapercis sp	Sandperch species
Parupeneus cyclostomus	Goldsaddle goatfish
Parupeneus insularis	Twosaddle goatfish
Parupeneus multifasciatus	Manybar goatfish
Parupeneus pleurostigma	Sidespot goatfish
Pempheris oualensis	Silver sweeper
Pervagor janthinosoma	Blackbar filefish
Plagiotremus rhinorhynchos	Bluestriped fangblenny
Plagiotremus tapeinosoma	Piano fangblenny
Platax teira	Tiera batfish
Plectorhinchus picus	Painted sweetlip
Plectroglyphidodon dickii	Blackbar devil
Plectroglyphidodon imparipennis	Brighteye damselfish
Plectroglyphidodon johnstonianus	Johnston Island damsel
Plectroglyphidodon lacrymatus	Whitespotted devil
Plectroglyphidodon leucozonus	Singlebar devil
Plectroglyphidodon phoenixensis	Phoenix devil
Pogonoperca punctata	Spotted soapfish
Pomacanthus imperator	Emperor angelfish
Pomacentrus vaiuli	Ocellate damselfish
Pomachromis guamensis	Guam damsel
Pseudanthias cooperi	Red-bar anthias
Pseudanthias pascalus	Amethyst anthias
Pseudobalistes flavimarginatus	Yellowmargin triggerfish
Pseudocheilinus evanidus	Striated wrasse
Pseudocheilinus hexataenia	Sixline wrasse
Pseudocheilinus octotaenia	Eight-lined wrasse
Pseudocheilinus tetrataenia	Four-lined wrasse

Fish Species continued

SCIENTIFIC NAME	COMMON NAME
Pseudocoris yamashiroi	Redspot wrasse
Pseudodax moluccanus	Chiseltooth wrasse
Pseudojuloides atavai	Polynesianwrasse
Pseudojuloides cerasinus	Smalltail wrasse
Ptereleotris evides	Blackfin dartfish
Ptereleotris heteroptera	Blacktail goby
Ptereleotris zebra	Chinese zebra goby
Pterocaesio marri	Marr's fusilier
Pterocaesio tile	Dark-banded fusilier
Pterois antennata	Broadbarred firefish
Pygoplites diacanthus	Royal angelfish
Rhinecanthus rectangulus	Wedge-tail triggerfish
Sargocentron caudimaculatum	Silverspot squirrelfish
Sargocentron diadema	Crown squirrelfish
Sargocentron microstoma	Smallmouth squirrelfish
Sargocentron spiniferum	Sabre squirrelfish
Sargocentron tiere	Blue lined squirrelfish
Saurida gracilis	Gracile lizardfish
Scarus altipinnis	Filament-finned parrotfish
Scarus forsteni	Forsten's parrotfish
Scarus frenatus	Bridled parrotfish
Scarus ghobban	Blue-barred parrotfish
Scarus oviceps	Dark capped parrotfish
Scarus rubroviolaceus	Ember parrotfish
Scarus schlegeli	Yellowband parrotfish
Scomberoides lysan	Doublespotted queenfish
Scombridae	Tuna species
Sphyraena barracuda	Great barracuda
Sphyraena helleri	Heller's barracuda
Sphyraena qenie	Blackfin barracuda
Sphyraenidae	Barracuda species
Spratelloides delicatulus	Delicate round herring
Stegastes fasciolatus	Pacific gregory
Stethojulis bandanensis	Red shoulder wrasse
Stethojulis strigiventer	Stripebelly wrasse
Sufflamen bursa	Boomerang triggerfish
Sufflamen chrysopterum	Halfmoon triggerfish
Sufflamen fraenatum	Masked triggerfish
Symphurus thermophilus	Tonguefish
Synodontidae	Lizardfish species
Synodus binotatus	Two-spot lizard fish
Synodus variegatus	Variegated lizardfish
Taeniura meyeni	Blotched fantail ray
Thalassoma amblycephalum	Bluntheaded wrasse

Fish Species continued

SCIENTIFIC NAME	COMMON NAME
Thalassoma lutescens	Yellow-brown wrasse
Thalassoma purpureum	Surge wrasse
Thalassoma quinquevittatum	Fivestripe wrasse
Thalassoma trilobatum	Christmas wrasse
Thunnus albacares	Yellowfin tuna
Triaenodon obesus	Whitetip reef shark
Tylosurus crocodilus	Houndneedlefish
Valenciennea strigata	Blueband goby
Variola louti	Yellow-edged lyretail
Xanthichthys auromarginatus	Gilded triggerfish
Xanthichthys caeruleolineatus	Bluelined triggerfish
Zanclus cornutus	Moorish idol
Zebrasoma flavescens	Yellow tang

A.2 Marine Mammals

SCIENTIFIC NAME	COMMON NAME
Balaenoptera borealis	Sei whale
Balaenoptera physalus	Fin whale
Balanoptera brydei	Bryde's whale
Balanoptera musculus	Blue whale
Feresa attenuata	Pygmy killer whale
Globicephala macrorhynchus	Short-finned pilot whale
Grampus griseus	Risso's dolphin
Kogia sima	Kogia spp.
Megaptera novaeangliae	Humpback whale
Mesoplodon densirostris	Blainville's beaked whale
Mesoplodon sp.	Mesoplodon sp.
Peponocephala electra	Melon-headed whale
Physeter macrocephalus	Sperm whale
Pseudorca crassidens	False killer whale
Stenella attenuata	Pantropical spotted dolphin
Stenella longirostris	Spinner dolphin
Steno bredanensis	Rough-toothed dolphin
Tursiops sp.	Bottlenose dolphin
Ziphius cavirostris	Cuvier's beaked whale

A.3 Marine Reptiles

SCIENTIFIC NAME	COMMON NAME
Chelonia mydas	Green turtle
Dermochelys coriacea	Leatherback turtle
Eretmochelys imbricate	Hawksbill turtle

A.4 Seabirds

SCIENTIFIC NAME	COMMON NAME
Anos minutus	Black noody
Anos stolidus	Brown noddy
Fregata minor	Great frigatebird
Gygis alba	White tern
Oceanodroma luecorhoa	Leach's storm-petrel
Oceanodroma matsudairae	Matsudaira's storm-petrel
Phaethon lepturus	White-tailed tropicbird
Phaethon rubricauda	Red-tailed tropicbird
Pluvialis fulva	Newell's shearwater
Pterodroma sandwichensis	Hawaiian Petrel
Puffinus auricularis	Short-tailed shearwater
Puffinus iherminieri	Audubon's shearwater
Puffinus pacificus	Wedge-tailed shearwater
Sterna fuscata	Sooty tern
Sula dactylatra	Masked booby
Sula leucogaster	Brown booby
Sula sula	Red-footed booby

A.5 Invertebrate Species

SCIENTIFIC NAME	COMMON NAME
Abyssorchomene sp.	Scavenging amphipod
Acanthaster planci	Crown-of-thorns starfish
Actinopyga obesa	Plump sea cucumber
Actinopyga varians	White-spotted sea cucumber
Actinopyga sp.	Sea cucumber
Alicella gigantean	Supergiant amphipod
Alpheus deuteropus	Petroglyph shrimp
Alpheus lottini	Pacific snapping shrimp
Alviniconcha hessleri	Deep water sea snail
Ascidiacea	Sea squirt
Asterina sp.	Starfish
Astralium sp.	Star snail
Benthesicymnus crenatus	Deep-sea prawn
Bohadschia argus	Leopard sea cucumber
Brachyura	Crab
Calcinus sp.	Hermit crab
Cerithium sp.	Cerith snail
Chama sp.	Jewel box clam
Charonia sp.	Triton
Chromodoris sp.	Nudibranch
Cirripedia	Barnacle
Clathria mima	Encrusting red sponge
Cliona sp.	Sponge
Conus miles	Solider cone
Conus moreleti	Cone snail
Coralliophila violacea	Violet coral shell
Corticium sp.	Sponge
Crinoidea	Crinoid
Cryptodendrum adhaesivum	Pizza anemone
Cymatium sp.	Triton snail
Cymo quadrilobatus	Blue-eyed coral crab
Cypraea annularis	Ring cowrie
Cypraea helvola	Star cowrie
Cypraea isabella	Cone snail
Dardanus guttatus	Blue-spotted hermit crab
Dendropoma maxima	Opercualte worm snail
Diadema sp.	Sea urchin
Didemnum sp.	Tunicate
Diogenidae	Left-handed hermit crabs
Echinometra mathaei	Rock boring urchin
Echinostrephus aciculatus	Needle-spined urchin
Echinostrephus molaris	Burrowing urchin
Echinothrix calamaris	Banded sea urchin

Invertebrate Species continued

SCIENTIFIC NAME	COMMON NAME
Echinothrix diadema	Diadema urchin
Eurythenes sp.	Deep-sea amphipod
Fasciolariidae	Tulip snail
Filograna sp	Tubeworm
Foraminiferida	Amoeboid protist
Fryeria rueppellii	Wart slug
Glossodoris sp.	Nudibranch
Grapsidae	Talon crab
Gymnodoris sp.	Nudibranch
Haliclona sp.	Demosponge
Haminoea cymbalum	Cymbal bubble snail
Haminoea sp.	Bubble snail
Harpa harpa	Harp snail
Heteractis crispa	Sebae anemone
Heteractis sp.	Sea anemone
Holothuria atra	Black sea cucumber
Holothuria edulis	Pink and black sea cucumber
Holothuria sp	Sea cucumber
Holothuria whitmaei	Black teatfish
Hydroidolina	Hydroid
Hydrondellea sp.	Deep-sea Amphipod
Ircinia sp	Sponge
Jorunna funebris	Dotted nudibranch
Lambis lambis	Common spider conch
Lambis sp.	Spider conch
Leucetta chagosensis	Lemon sponge
Linckia guildingi	Common comet star
Linckia laevigata	Blue sea star
Linckia multifora	Dalmation linckia starfish
Loimia medusa	Spaghetti worm
Macrorhynchia philippina	Stinging hydroid
Millepora platyphylla	Blade fire coral
Mysid sp.	Mysid shrimp
Nassarius sp	Mud snail
Octopoda	Octopus
Ophiuroidea	Brittle star
Ostreoida	Oyster
Paguritta kroppi	Kropp's coral hermit crab
Paguritta sp.	Coral hermit shrimp
Palythoa sp.	Zoanthid
Paralicella sp.	Lysianassoid amphipoda
Pearsonothuria graeffei	Graeffe's sea cucumber
Pectinidae	Scallop
Pedum sp	Coral clam

Invertebrate Species continued

SCIENTIFIC NAME	COMMON NAME
Pedum spondyloideum	Coral clam
Pennaria sp.	Hydroid
Percnon planissimum	Flat rock crab
Phyllidia annulata	Dorid nudibranch
Phyllidia carlsonhoffi	Sea slug
Phyllidia pustulosa	Pustulose wart slug
Phyllidia tula	Sea slug
Pinctada margaritifera	Black -lip pearl oyster
Plesiopenaeus armatus	Deep-water shrimp
Pleuroploca sp.	Horse conch
Polycarpa cryptocarpa	Tunicate
Porifera	Sponge
Princaxelia sp.	Deep-sea amphipod
Pseudoliomera speciosa	Showy xanthid crab
Pteraeolidia ianthina	Blue dragon nudibranch
Pyura sp.	Tunicate
Quoyula madreporarum	Single-tooth coral loving snail
Sabellidae	Christmas tree worm
Saron sp.	Common Marble Shrimp
Scopelocheirus sp.	Lysianassid amphipod
Serpulidae	Annelid worm
Spirobranchus giganteus	Horned feather worm
Spirobranchus sp.	Christmas tree worm
Spirorbis sp.	Polychaete worm
Spondylus sp.	Spondylus
Stenopus hispidus	Banded coral shrimp
Stenopus sp.	Crustacean
Stichopus chloronotus	Greenfish
Stylissa massa	Commercial top shell
Tectus pyramis	Pyram top shell
Terebella sp.	Feather duster worm
Terpios sp.	Demosponge
Thuridilla bayeri	Painted slug
Trapezia sp.	Guard crab
Tridacna crocea	Boring clam
Tridacna maxima	Small giant clam
Tridacna sp.	Giant clam
Trizopagurus sp	Halloween hermit crab
Trochus niloticus	Commercial top shell
Turbo argyrostomus	Silver-mouthed turban
Turbo sp.	Turbo snail
Vasum sp.	Vase snail

A.6 Coral Species

SCIENTIFIC NAME	SCIENTIFIC NAME
Acanthastrea echinata	*Heliopora coerulea*
Acropora abrotanoides	*Hydnophora exesa*
Acropora cerealis	*Hydnophora microconos*
Acropora digitifera	*Isopora palifera*
Acropora diversa	*Leptastrea bewickensis*
Acropora gemmifera	*Leptastrea pruinosa*
Acropora humilis	*Leptastrea purpurea*
Acropora monticulosa	*Leptastrea transversa*
Acropora nasuta	*Leptoria phrygia*
Acropora paniculata	*Leptoseris incrustans*
Acropora quelchi	*Leptoseris mycetoseroides*
Acropora samoensis	*Lobophyllia corymbosa*
Acropora surculosa	*Lobophyllia hemprichii*
Acropora tenuis	*Merulina ampliata*
Acropora verweyi	*Millepora cylindrica*
Astreopora gracilis	*Millepora platyphylla*
Astreopora myriophthalma	*Millepora tuberosa*
Astreopora randalli	*Montastraea curta*
Coscinaraea exesa	*Montastraea valenciennesi*
Cyphastrea agassizi	*Montipora caliculata*
Cyphastrea chalcidicum	*Montipora foveolata*
Distichopora violacea	*Montipora grisea*
Drupa grossularia	*Montipora hoffmeisteri*
Drupa ricina	*Montipora incrassata*
Dysidea granulosa	*Montipora lobulata*
Dysidea herbacea	*Montipora nodosa*
Euphyllia glabrescens	*Montipora socialis*
Favia danae	*Montipora tinian*
Favia favus	*Montipora verrucosa*
Favia helianthoides	*Pavona bipartita*
Favia matthaii	*Pavona clavus*
Favia pallida	*Pavona duerdeni*
Favia stelligera	*Pavona explanulata*
Favites abdita	*Pavona maldivensis*
Favites pentagona	*Pavona minuta*
Favites russelli	*Pocillopora ankeli*
Fungia scutaria	*Pocillopora damicornis*
Galaxea fascicularis	*Pocillopora elegans*
Goniastrea edwardsi	*Pocillopora eydouxi*
Goniastrea pectinata	*Pocillopora meandrina*
Goniastrea retiformis	*Pocillopora setchelli*
Goniopora fruticosa	*Pocillopora verrucosa*
Goniopora lobata	*Porites australiensis*
Goniopora minor	*Porites densa*

Coral Species continued

SCIENTIFIC NAME

Porites lobata
Porites lutea
Porites monticulosa
Porites rus
Porites solida
Porites vaughani
Protopalythoa sp
Psammocora contigua
Psammocora digitata
Psammocora haimeana
Psammocora nierstraszi
Psammocora superficialis
Sarcophyton sp
Scapophyllia cylindrica
Scolymia australis
Sinularia sp.
Stylaster sp.
Stylocoeniella armata
Stylocoeniella guentheri
Stylophora mordax
Stylophora pistillata
Turbinaria irregularis
Turbinaria reniformis
Turbinaria stellulata
Zoanthus sp

Plate and pillar coral (Porites rus) at Maug.
Photo: Jean Kenyon/USFWS

Appendix B. USFWS Compatibility Determinations and Appropriate Use Findings

B.1 Uses Evaluated

The following section includes full Compatibility Determinations (CD)s for all Refuge uses that are required to be evaluated at this time. According to USFWS policy, CDs will be completed for all uses proposed within a national wildlife refuge that have been determined to be appropriate. The Volcanic Unit/Arc of Fire Refuge and Trench Unit/Refuge will be referred to collectively as "Monument/Refuge units" in this CD. The USFWS planning policy recommends preparing CDs for all individual uses, specific use programs, or groups of related uses associated with the proposed action. The following CDs are included in this public review draft MMP/EA for public comment:

Table B.1 Summary of Compatibility Determinations.

Refuge Use	Page	Compatible?	Year Due for Reevaluation
Photography, Videography, Filming, or Audio Recording	B-4	yes	2030
Research, Exploration, Scientific Collections, and Surveys	B-15	yes	2030

B.1.1 Compatibility – Legal and Historical Context

Compatibility is a tool refuge managers use to ensure that recreational and other uses do not interfere with wildlife conservation, the primary focus of refuges. Compatibility is not new to the Refuge System and dates back to 1918 as a concept. As policy, it has been used since 1962. The Refuge Recreation Act of 1962 directed the Secretary of the Interior to allow only those public uses of Refuge lands that were "compatible with the primary purposes for which the area was established."

Legally, Refuges are closed to all public uses until officially opened. Regulations require that adequate funds be available for administration and protection of refuges before opening them to any public uses. However, wildlife-dependent recreational uses (hunting, fishing, wildlife observation and photography, environmental education and interpretation) are to receive enhanced consideration and cannot be rejected simply for lack of funding resources unless the refuge has made a concerted effort to seek out funds from all potential partners. Once found compatible, wildlife-dependent recreational uses are deemed the priority public uses at the refuge. If a proposed use is found not compatible, the refuge manager is legally precluded from approving it. Economic uses that are conducted by or authorized by the refuge also require CDs.

Under compatibility policy, uses are defined as recreational, economic/commercial, or management use of a refuge by the public or a non-Refuge System entity. Uses generally providing an economic return (even if conducted for the purposes of habitat management) are also subject to CDs. The USFWS does not prepare CDs for uses when the USFWS does not have jurisdiction. For example, the USFWS may have limited jurisdiction over Refuge areas where property rights are vested by others; or where legally binding agreements exist. In addition, aircraft over-flights, emergency actions, some activities on navigable waters, and activities by other Federal agencies are exempt from the compatibility review process.

New compatibility regulations were adopted by the USFWS in October 2000. The regulations require that a use must be compatible with both the Refuge System mission and the purpose(s) of the individual Refuge. This standard helps to ensure consistency in application across the Refuge System. The Administration Act also requires that CDs be in writing and that the public have an opportunity to comment on most use evaluations.

The NWRS mission emphasizes that the needs of fish, wildlife, and plants must be of primary consideration. The Improvement Act defined a compatible use as one that ". . . in the sound professional judgment of the Director, will not materially interfere with or detract from the fulfillment of the mission of the System or the purposes of the Refuge." Sound professional judgment is defined under the Improvement Act as ". . . a finding, determination, or decision, that is consistent with principles of sound fish and wildlife management and administration, available science and resources . . ." Compatibility for wildlife-dependent uses may depend on the level or extent of a use.

Court interpretations of the compatibility standard have found that compatibility is a biological standard and cannot be used to balance or weigh economic, political, or recreational interests against the primary purpose of the refuge. The USFWS recognizes that CDs are complex. For this reason, refuge managers are required to consider principles of sound fish and wildlife management and best available science in making these determinations. Evaluations of the existing uses on the Monument/Refuge units are based on the professional judgment of USFWS and planning personnel including reviews of relevant scientific literature.

B.1.2 Appropriate Use Findings

The Appropriate Refuge Uses Policy outlines the process that the USFWS uses to determine when general public uses on refuges may be considered. Priority public uses previously defined as wildlife-dependent uses (hunting, fishing, wildlife observation and photography, and EE and interpretation) under the Improvement Act are generally exempt from appropriate use review. Other exempt uses include situations where the USFWS does not have adequate jurisdiction to control the activity and refuge management activities. In essence, the Appropriate Use policy, 603 FW 1 (2006), provides refuge managers with a consistent procedure to first screen and then document decisions concerning a public use. When a use is determined to be appropriate, a refuge manager must then decide if the use is compatible before allowing it on a refuge. The policy also requires review of existing public uses. During the MMP planning process, the USFWS Monument Manager evaluated all existing and proposed Refuge uses at the Mariana Arc of Fire NWR and Mariana Trench NWR using the following guidelines and criteria as outlined in the appropriate use policy:

- Do we have jurisdiction over the use?
- Does the use comply with applicable laws and regulations (Federal, State, tribal and local)?
- Is the use consistent with applicable Executive orders and Department and USFWS policies?
- Is the use consistent with public safety?
- Is the use consistent with goals and objectives in an approved management plan or other document?
- Has an earlier documented analysis not denied the use or is this the first the use has been proposed?
- Is the use manageable within available budget and staff?
- Will this be manageable in the future within existing resources?
- Does the use contribute to the public's understanding and appreciation of the refuge's natural or cultural resources, or is the use beneficial to the refuge's natural or cultural resources?
- Can the use be accommodated without impairing existing wildlife-dependent recreational uses or reducing the potential to provide quality, compatible, wildlife dependent recreation into the future?

Using this process and these criteria, and as documented on the following pages, the Monument Manager determined the following uses are appropriate, and directed that a CD be completed for these uses: Photography, Videography, Filming, or Audio Recording; and Research, Exploration, Scientific Collections, and Surveys.

Table B.2. Summary of Appropriate Use Findings.

Refuge Use	Page	Appropriate?
Photography, Videography, Filming, or Audio Recording	B-12	yes
Research, Exploration, Scientific Collections, and Surveys	B-23	yes

B.2 Compatibility Determination for Photography, Videography, Filming, or Audio Recording

Refuge Name(s): Mariana Trench National Wildlife Refuge and
Mariana Arc of Fire National Wildlife Refuge within the
Marianas Trench Marine National Monument

County and State: Insular area of the United States; and, Northern Mariana Islands

Establishing and Acquisition Authority(ies):

The Marianas Trench Marine National Monument (Monument) was established by Presidential Proclamation 8335 on January 6, 2009. Implementing the direction from the Proclamation, the Interior Secretary on January 16, 2009, delegated management of the Monument to the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS) by Secretarial Order 3284. The Secretary also directed that the "Trench Unit" and the "Volcanic Unit" of the Monument to be managed as units of the National Wildlife Refuge System (later titled the Mariana Trench National Wildlife Refuge and Mariana Arc of Fire National Wildlife Refuge, respectively; and hereafter collectively called "Monument/Refuge unit(s)"). The Secretarial Order establishing these areas as units of the Refuge System is authorized under the Fish and Wildlife Act of 1956; the National Wildlife Refuge System Administration Act of 1966, as amended; Section 2 of the Reorganization Plan No. 3 of 1950; and the Refuge Recreation Act of 1962.

The Monument and its two Refuge units are managed by the USFWS through the Mariana Islands Refuges & Monument Complex, headquartered in Dededo, Guam.

Refuge Purpose(s):

"... for the development, advancement, management, conservation, and protection of fish and wildlife resources ... 16 U.S.C. § 742f(a)(4) "... for the benefit of the United States Fish and Wildlife Service, in performing its activities and services. Such acceptance may be subject to the terms of any restrictive or affirmative covenant, or condition of servitude ..." 16 U.S.C. § 742f(b)(1) (Fish and Wildlife Act of 1956).

"... conservation, management, and ... restoration of the fish, wildlife, and plant resources and their habitats ... for the benefit of present and future generations of Americans..." 16 U.S.C. § 668dd(a)(2) (National Wildlife Refuge System Administration Act)

"... suitable for— (1) incidental fish and wildlife-oriented recreational development, (2) the protection of natural resources, (3) the conservation of endangered species or threatened species ..." 16 U.S.C. § 460k-1 "... the Secretary ... may accept and use ... real ... property. Such acceptance may be accomplished under the terms and conditions of restrictive covenants imposed by donors ..."16 U.S.C. § 460k-2 (Refuge Recreation Act (16 U.S.C. § 460k-460k-4), as amended).

*applicable for both refuge units

Other Management Direction:

Presidential Proclamation 8335
"…for the purpose of protecting the objects identified above…" "… [Interior Secretary] shall not allow or permit any appropriation, injury, destruction, or removal of any feature of this monument except as provided for by this proclamation or as otherwise provided for by law"

"…Regulation of Scientific Exploration and Research…Subject to such terms and conditions as the Secretary deems necessary for the care and management of the objects of this monument, the Secretary of the Interior may permit scientific exploration and research within the monument, including incidental appropriation, injury, destruction, or removal of features of this monument for scientific study…"

Secretarial Order 3284
"…For each of the areas subject to this delegation, the Director of the [USFWS] shall provide for the proper care and management of the monument, including all objects of scientific and historic interest therein; the conservation of fish and wildlife; and the development of programs to assess and promote national and international monument-related scientific exploration and research." (Section 4.a.(2) . . . subject to the provisions of the proclamation [8335] establishing this Monument. . .")

National Wildlife Refuge System Mission
The mission of the National Wildlife Refuge System (Refuge System) is to administer a national network of lands and waters for the conservation, management, and where appropriate, restoration of the fish, wildlife, and plant resources and their habitats within the United States for the benefit of present and future generations of Americans.

Description of Use(s):

The National Wildlife Refuge System Improvement Act of 1997 identifies compatible wildlife photography as well as hunting, fishing, wildlife observation, environmental education and interpretation as priority wildlife-dependent public uses of the Refuge System. As one of the six priority public uses of the Refuge System, wildlife photography is to be encouraged when compatible with the purpose(s) of the refuge. However, wildlife photography is distinguished from commercial photography[1],[2] in national wildlife refuges. Refuge System principles for wildlife photography can apply to these deep Monument/Refuge units also, including: facilitating safe wildlife viewing opportunities; promoting public understanding of, and increase public's appreciation for, America's natural resources; facilitating and providing opportunities for quality educational experiences consistent with criteria describing quality found in 605 FW 1.6.

Due to the extreme depths and sophisticated technological capability needed to access Monument/Refuge units; photography, video, filming, and audio recording ("recording") are the primary ways that the USFWS and others may gain access to and information about the area. The use may be conducted by recording equipment attached to manned submersibles, remotely operated

[1] The USFWS manual defines commercial photography as "a visual recording (motion or still) by firms or individuals (other than news media representatives) who intend to distribute their photographic content for money or other consideration. This includes the creation of educational, entertainment, or commercial enterprises as well as advertising audio-visuals for the purpose of paid product or services, publicity, and commercially oriented photo contests (FWS policy: 605 FW 5.6).
[2] Commercial recordings are also described in Title 43 of the CFR, Section 5.1, "no picture may be filmed, and no television production or sound track made on any area administered by the USFWS … of the DOI, by any person other than amateur or bona fide newsreel and news television photographers and soundmen, unless written permission has been obtained from the USFWS having jurisdiction over the area."

unmanned vehicles, or landers. This equipment may have lighting adequate for navigation and illuminating subjects and provisions for luring marine organisms using bait.

The purposes of recordings are to further the global understanding of the Monument/Refuge units, the Earth and its natural resources and processes, deep ocean exploration, and to improve the management of such resources. Because of the extreme environments of the Monument/Refuge units and their relative inaccessibility, very little is known about these areas. Activities are therefore essentially innovative exploration, and recording is a means to not only collect data, but to disseminate it to the world.

In this CD we consider "recordings" differently than may be considered on a more mainstream refuge CD. We collectively consider activities done for wildlife photography, for news and educational purposes (considered priority refuge uses), as well as documentaries and commercial purposes. We are considering these together because the activities conducted in the extreme environment of these monument units are 1) functionally the same, 2) limited to a few individuals and institutions that have the fiscal and technical capability to access the deep areas, and 3) there is little likelihood that recordings made would not have commercial value and intentions of some commercial use. For example, the permittee may film the Trench floor, record the sounds of serpentine mud volcanoes, and video the explorers and scientists in their work. Because all of these activities in the Monument/Refuge units are novel and exceptional throughout the world, these recordings may be included in a live "virtual classroom" event, be broadcast through news media, and be the subject of a documentary. After filming and editing, the permittee could also attempt to sell the recordings made for commercial purposes. Products made in this area are appealing to the general public because it exposes an exceptional environment - representing some of the last frontiers of discovery on Earth. It is also captivating because it is accessible to only highly specialized equipment and has been inaccessible to humans for decades. Commercial filming, video, photography or audio recording that are not related to natural, historic, or cultural subjects of the Monument/Refuges are not covered under this CD (e.g. extreme sports photography, filming a movie unrelated to the Monument or Refuge mission, etc.). We clearly note these are exceptional and unique circumstances that warrant treating both commercial and noncommercial activity together; this should not be viewed as precedent for doing so on other national wildlife refuges.

All recording proposals are anticipated to coincide with other projects for exploration, research, survey or scientific collecting; however, these scientific activities are considered in a separate CD. This recordings CD only covers the acquisition of digital or photographic information does not consider or include any sampling or specimen collections. Recordings may be conducted in the Monument/Refuge unit benthic environments as long as it meets the criteria of being related to natural, historic, or cultural features. Commercial use proposals must also specify how they plan to contribute to the achievement of the Refuge System mission and Monument and Refuge purposes. Recording proposals may be for any time of the year and may be requested for any bottom area of the Monument/Refuge units. The USFWS in consultation with NOAA and others, as applicable, will evaluate each proposal and may put limits on the activities in an effort to ensure that negative impacts to resources are avoided or limited.

Recording projects involving video, filming, photography or sound would likely have different protocols and methods for recording the bottom environments and species of the Monument/Refuge unit as well as different strategies for reaching diverse audiences. Therefore, each proposal necessitates its own management review during the permitting process. Each project would be carefully reviewed to prevent any significant short-term, long-term, or cumulative impacts. Proposals for educational, interpretation, media, documentary or commercial recordings would be evaluated by USFWS staff, applicable partners at the NOAA, experts with the USGS, as well as other subject-

matter experts as determined necessary by the USFWS. Evaluations and reviews would be conducted to determine if the species recorded, methods used, or habitat type and locations affected may lead to undesirable cumulative impacts. All projects would be required to have a Monument/Refuge unit Special Use Permit (SUP). This degree of review would help ensure numerous levels and types of impacts are carefully considered before any permit for commercial or non-commercial photography, filming, video, or audio recording is issued. Within the SUP, conditions would be clearly defined so as to protect and conserve the existing resources found within the Monument/Refuge unit. Some of the standard and specific conditions are included in this CD under Stipulations Necessary to Ensure Compatibility. Per Presidential Proclamation 8335, nothing in this CD shall restrict scientific exploration or research activities by or for the Secretary of Commerce, and nothing shall be construed to require a permit or authorization for the Secretary of Commerce or his respective scientific activities.

Availability of Resources:

Due to the complex nature of accessing the extreme depths and environments of the Monument/Refuge units for recordings, only a handful of entities have the technology and capability to access their benthic environments. It is estimated that no more than 3 photography, filming, video, and audio recording SUPs would be issued in a calendar year. The bulk of the cost for this SUP is incurred in staff time to review proposals, coordinate with applicants, ensure commercial uses contribute to the achievement of the Refuge System mission and Monument/Refuge purposes, write SUPs, oversee on-going projects, and review the project post-recording development and results. Law enforcement and dissemination of information about the projects in the Monument are not included in these cost estimates. We project that administering a recording project SUP may require 4 weeks of intermittent staff time. A permit fee set at one third of the Offsetting Revenue below ($2,800) would be collected from each of the three SUP permittees per calendar year.

The protected area of these Monument/Refuge units is at the bottom (the submerged lands and benthic resources) of the Mariana Trench and submarine volcanoes and does not include the overlying water column. Access to it is through unmanned, remotely operated vehicles or manned submersibles. There are no USFWS facilities in this extreme environment. Permittees would pay the cost of all their actions related to these Monument/Refuge units. Permittees working in the Monument/Refuge units would have to be self-sufficient for safely accessing the Monument/Refuge unit and would be required to obtain any additional permits needed for the actions. Any accidents or responses involving the permittees will be their sole financial responsibility. Any funds expended by the USFWS above general SUP administration, or as a result of an accident or response, will be reimbursed by the permittee.

Category and Itemization	**Annual ($/yr)**
Administration and Management	$4,400
Monitoring & Adaptive Management	$4,200
Total Offsetting Revenues	**$8,600**

Anticipated Impacts of the Use(s):

Most of the possible impacts recognized are over or within the water column, and therefore outside the boundary of both Monument/Refuge units (covering only at the bottom). These impacts may include: (1) disturbance of foraging sea birds and pelagic fish; (2) disturbance of marine mammals;

(3) disturbance of endangered and threatened sea turtles; (4) release of pollution and contaminants; (5) disturbance and damage to fish, invertebrates, and algae.

Possible impacts to the Monument/Refuges' bottom community may include (1) disturbance to benthic marine organisms by submersible devices or artificial light; (2) introduction of metals and other materials or equipment that are needed to travel to the bottom, and then discarded into the Monument/Refuge unit in order to return to the surface; and (3) accidental introduction of non-native extremophile species from equipment or bait used during the operation.

The bottom features of the trench are likened to inverted islands of biodiversity and each submarine volcano is likewise a submerged island. Each may hold unique biological communities from feature to feature and could potentially be susceptible to invasions by organisms that are not native to that feature. However, accidental introduction of non-native extremophile species or cross contamination of species between deep sites has been documented at other deep-sea locations. A submersible transferred 38 limpets from the Gorda Ridge at 7457 feet depth to the Juan de Fuca Ridge after a 2-day journey of 394 miles. When the samples from this site were analyzed, the limpets were detected to be alive, having survived the time and depth of decompression and re-compression between the two sites. As a precaution, SUPs would require external hard surfaces of bottom equipment be disinfected with diluted bleach solution; or, rinsed and/or soaked with fresh water; before deploying to other locations.

All recording would be designed and managed in a fashion using best management practices to eliminate or minimize these impacts. However, even with proper management and execution of a well-planned project, so little is known about the Trench unit, certain responses may occur that could not be predicted or are not easily recognized.

Although a single such project within a single year may cause few, if any, negative resource impacts, it may in fact cause cumulative impacts over multiple years or when considered additively with all other projects to occur within the Monument/Refuge unit. Therefore, it is critical for refuge managers to examine all projects with a multi-year timeframe in mind and consider all photography and audio and video recording projects that are planned concurrently in the Monument before approval is granted. It may be appropriate to set a limit to the number of such projects occurring in a particular habitat or relative to a single species or species group.

Public Review and Comment:

Public review and comments on this CD are solicited in conjunction with the release of the Marianas Trench Marine National Monument Draft MMP/EA (2020), in order to comply with NEPA and USFWS policy.

Determination: (check one below)

___ Use is Not Compatible
_✓_ Use is Compatible With Following Stipulations

Stipulations Necessary to Ensure Compatibility:
Applicants for recording would be required to obtain a USFWS SUP through the joint Monument permitting process. These permits may stipulate more detailed access restrictions and regulations to protect wildlife or Monument/Refuge integrity from anticipated site-specific negative effects caused by the project. At the discretion of the Refuge Project Leader, USFWS-approved staff may be assigned to accompany filming expeditions. Per Presidential Proclamation 8335, nothing in this CD shall restrict scientific exploration or research activities by or for the Secretary of Commerce, and nothing shall be construed to require a permit or authorization for the Secretary of Commerce or his respective scientific activities.

GENERAL TERMS AND CONDITIONS:
A more comprehensive list of Refuge conditions and restrictions is included in 50 CFR Part 27. Not all of these conditions and restrictions would apply to every photography, filming, video or audio recording project. The type of use and where the activity occurs would determine the appropriate conditions.

The USFWS encourages and supports compatible filming and photography in order to acquire information upon which decisions regarding management of units of the Refuge System may be based and to provide access to this remote area to the public through the products of this work. Priority will be given to projects that contribute to the knowledge base of and management for biodiversity, enhancement, protection, use, preservation, and management of native wildlife populations and their habitat. Commercial uses must contribute to the achievement of the Refuge System mission and Refuge/Monument purpose, (50 CFR 29.1)

In accordance with Department of the Interior filming regulations (43 CFR Part 5.1)

- Utmost care will be exercised to see that no natural features are injured, and after completion of the work the area will, as required by the official in charge, either be cleaned up and restored to its prior condition or left, after clean-up, in a condition satisfactory to the official in charge.
- Credit will be given to the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service . . .and the Department of the Interior through the use of an appropriate title or announcement.
- Pictures will be taken of wildlife only when such wildlife will be shown in its natural state or under approved management conditions if such wildlife is confined.
- Any special instructions received from the official in charge of the area will be complied with.
- Any additional information relating to the privilege applied for by this application will be furnished upon request of the official in charge.

SPECIFIC TERMS AND CONDITIONS:
All photography, filming, video, and audio recording permit holders would be required to submit an annual report to the Marianas National Wildlife Refuges and Monument Complex Project Leader that summarizes their activities for a given year and a final report when the project is completed. The report would include at a minimum the following: project title, SUP number, fiscal year, progress, important findings, and problems encountered, proposed resolution to problems, preparer, and date prepared. The report and all publications and products derived from the SUP will appropriately

acknowledge the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service and those activities were conducted under a National Wildlife Refuge System permit. Appropriate acknowledgement should also be given to the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, when applicable. All reports, publications, or products will reference the Marianas Trench Marine National Monument.

If the proposed methods would materially impact, appropriate, injure, destroy, or remove any Monument/Refuge resource, the permittee must identify the issues in advance. Highly intrusive or manipulative photography or recording is generally not permitted. As much of these recordings will be experimental due to the extreme environment, any non-anticipated disturbance would immediately be brought to the attention of the Monument Project Leader or Superintendent.

Permittees are responsible for acquiring and/or renewing any necessary additional permits prior to beginning or continuing their project.

Permittee would be responsible to cover all Refuge costs associated with the recording activity beyond what is predicted in this CD.

The Monument Superintendent, Project Leader, or designee can suspend or modify conditions or terminate research that is already permitted and in progress should unacceptable, unforeseen, or unexpected impacts or issues arise or be noted.

Permittee must provide USFWS with at least one free copy of all products, commercial or otherwise, generated in the Monument/Refuge units for the non-commercial, governmental use of informing people about the Monument, Refuge, and the National Wildlife Refuge System.

All films, books, and other recordings of images and sounds collected in the Monument/Refuge would need to reference the fact that they were collected with permission of the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service in the Monument/Refuge.

Justification:

Photography, videography, filming, and audio-visual recordings in the Monument/Refuge units are inherently valuable to the USFWS, governmental partners, and the public and are a necessary tool to further the aims of public education programs and public outreach as well as the primary method for gathering scientific information. The permitting of these pursuits supports the Presidential directive to study and protect this sensitive area. This is particularly true in this case where many of the resources remain undiscovered, unknown, and presumably in pristine or relatively pristine condition. By allowing recordings in conjunction with other uses (e.g., exploration, scientific collection, and surveys) proposed for the area we are encouraging a use that will have minimal impact but enormous reward in the form of information and inspiration. Thus, by effectively administering, tracking, and managing proposed uses through SUPs, the use would not materially interfere with or detract from the fulfillment of Proclamation 8335, the Refuge System mission, or the purposes for which these refuge units were established.

Mandatory Reevaluation Date: (provide month and year for "allowed" uses only)

_____ Mandatory 15-year reevaluation date (for wildlife-dependent public uses)

____2030___ Mandatory 10-year reevaluation date (for all uses other than wildlife-dependent public uses)

NEPA Compliance for Refuge Use Decision: (check one below)

_____ Categorical Exclusion without Environmental Action Statement

_____ Categorical Exclusion and Environmental Action Statement

__✓__ Environmental Assessment and Finding of No Significant Impact

_____ Environmental Impact Statement and Record of Decision

Signatures:

The Compatibility Determination for Wildlife Observation, Interpretation, and Photography is compatible with stipulations.

Project Leader, Mariana Islands Refuges & Monument Complex Approval:

_____

(Signature) (Date)

Concurrence:

Refuge Supervisor, Pacific Islands Refuges and Monuments Office

_____

(Signature) (Date)

Regional Chief, National Wildlife Refuge System:

_____

(Signature) (Date)

FINDING OF APPROPRIATENESS OF A REFUGE USE

Refuge Name: Mariana Trench National Wildlife Refuge and
Mariana Arc of Fire National Wildlife Refuge within the
Marianas Trench Marine National Monument

Use: Photography, Videography, Filming, or Audio Recording

Decision Criteria:	YES	NO
(a) Do we have jurisdiction over the use?	✔	
(b) Does the use comply with applicable laws and regulations (Federal, State, tribal, and local)?	✔	
(c) Is the use consistent with applicable Executive orders and Department and USFWS policies?	✔	
(d) Is the use consistent with public safety?	✔	
(e) Is the use consistent with goals and objectives in an approved management plan or other document?	✔	
(f) Has an earlier documented analysis not denied the use or is this the first time the use has been proposed?	✔	
(g) Is the use manageable within available budget and staff?	✔	
(h) Will this be manageable in the future within existing resources?	✔	
(i) Does the use contribute to the public's understanding and appreciation of the refuge's natural or cultural resources, or is the use beneficial to the refuge's natural or cultural resources?	✔	
(j) Can the use be accommodated without impairing existing wildlife-dependent recreational uses or reducing the potential to provide quality (see section 1.6D, 603 FW 1, for description), compatible, wildlife-dependent recreation into the future?	✔	

This form is not required for wildlife-dependent recreational uses; take regulated by the State, or uses already described in a refuge CCP or step-down management plan approved after October 9, 1997. Where we do not have jurisdiction over the use ("no" to (a)), there is no need to evaluate it further as we cannot control the use. Uses that are illegal, inconsistent with existing policy, or unsafe ("no" to (b), (c), or (d)) may not be found appropriate. If the answer is "no" to any of the other questions above, we will **generally** not allow the use.

If indicated, the refuge manager has consulted with State fish and wildlife agencies. Yes ___ No __ N/A✓

When the Monument manager finds the use appropriate based on sound professional judgment, the refuge manager must justify the use in writing on an attached sheet and obtain the refuge supervisor's concurrence. Based on an overall assessment of these factors, my summary conclusion is that the proposed use is:

Not Appropriate_____ **Appropriate** ✓

Refuge Manager: Tammy Mae Summers Date: 7/15/2020

If found to be **Not Appropriate**, the refuge supervisor does not need to sign concurrence if the use is a new use. If an existing use is found **Not Appropriate** outside the CCP process, the refuge supervisor must sign concurrence. If found to be **Appropriate**, the refuge supervisor must sign concurrence.

Refuge Supervisor: RICARDO LOPEZ Digitally signed by RICARDO LOPEZ Date: 2020.11.03 16:14:11 -10'00' Date:_____

FWS Form 3-2319

Attachment 1: Appropriate Uses Justification

Date: July 10, 2020

Refuge: Mariana Trench National Wildlife Refuge and
Mariana Arc of Fire National Wildlife Refuge within the
Marianas Trench Marine National Monument (Monument/Refuge units)

Project: Photography, Videography, Filming, or Audio Recording

Summary: The Monument/Refuge units receive requests to conduct Photography, Videography, Filming, or Audio Recording on submerged Refuge lands. Applicants must submit a proposal that would outline: (1) objectives of the project; (2) justification for the project; (3) detailed methodology and schedule; (4) potential impacts on Monument/Refuge units' wildlife and/or habitat, including disturbance (short-term and long-term), injury, or mortality; (5) personnel required; (6) costs to Monument/Refuge units, if any; and (7) end products (i.e., films, publications). Proposals would be reviewed by USFWS staff, Regional Office Branch of Refuge Biology, and other Partners as appropriate prior to USFWS issuing a SUP in coordination with the joint Monument permitting process. Projects will not be open-ended, and at a minimum, will be reviewed annually.

For each of the findings listed on USFWS Form 3-2319, a justification has been provided below:

a. Do we have jurisdiction over the use?

Some or all of the proposed activities would take place within Monument/Refuge units boundaries. The USFWS has jurisdiction over those projects that are sited within Monument/Refuge units boundaries.

b. Does the use comply with applicable laws and regulations (Federal, State, tribal, and local)?

Proposed research activities should comply with all applicable laws and regulations. Any restrictions or qualifications that are required to comply with law and regulations would be specified in the SUP.

c. Is the use consistent with applicable Executive orders and Department and USFWS policies?

Through the review of individual projects, the USFWS would ensure that they are consistent with applicable policies, especially Research on USFWS Lands Policy (803 FW 1).

d. Is the use consistent with public safety?

Through individual project review, the USFWS will ensure that each project is consistent with public safety. If necessary, stipulations to ensure public safety will be included in the project's SUP.

e. Is the use consistent with goals and objectives in an approved management plan or other document?

Photography, videography, filming, and audio-visual recordings in the Monument/Refuge units are inherently valuable to the USFWS, governmental partners, and the public and are a necessary tool to further the aims of public education programs and public outreach as well as the primary method for gathering scientific information. The permitting of these pursuits supports the Presidential directive to study and protect this sensitive area.

f. Has an earlier documented analysis not denied the use or is this the first time the use has been proposed?

Earlier documented analysis has approved the use and touted the benefits of photography, videography, filming, and audio-visual recordings on national wildlife refuges.

g. Is the use manageable within available budget and staff?

The Monument/Refuge units expects to receive ~3 requests per year for this activity, and it is manageable with available budget and staff.

h. Will this be manageable in the future within existing resources?

The proposed activity at current levels would be manageable in the future with the existing resources.

i. Does the use contribute to the public's understanding and appreciation of the Monument/Refuge units' natural or cultural resources, or is the use beneficial to the Monument/Refuge units' natural or cultural resources?

The proposed use is beneficial to the Monument/Refuge units' natural and cultural resources because the types of research projects approved are those that have the distinct likelihood to help achieve Monument/Refuge units' purposes by providing information useful for the management of trust resources and may contribute to the public's understanding and appreciation of natural and/or cultural resources.

j. Can the use be accommodated without impairing existing wildlife-dependent recreational uses or reducing the potential to provide quality (see section 1.6D, 603 FW 1, for description), compatible, wildlife-dependent recreation into the future?

The USFWS will ensure that the photography, videography, filming, and audio-visual recordings activities will not impair future wildlife-dependent recreational use of the Monument/Refuge units during individual project review, prior to issuing a SUP for the project.

B.3 Compatibility Determination for Research, Exploration, Scientific Collections, and Surveys

Refuge Name(s): Mariana Trench National Wildlife Refuge and
Mariana Arc of Fire National Wildlife Refuge within the
Marianas Trench Marine National Monument

County and State: Insular area of the United States; and, Northern Mariana Islands (CNMI)

Establishing and Acquisition Authority(ies):

The Marianas Trench Marine National Monument (Monument) was established by Presidential Proclamation 8335 on January 6, 2009. Implementing the direction from the Proclamation, the Interior Secretary on January 16, 2009, delegated management of the Monument to the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS) by Secretarial Order 3284. The Secretary also directed that the "Trench Unit" and the "Volcanic Unit" of the Monument to be managed as units of the National Wildlife Refuge System (later titled the Mariana Trench National Wildlife Refuge and Mariana Arc of Fire National Wildlife Refuge, respectively; and hereafter collectively called "Monument/Refuge unit(s)"). The Secretarial Order establishing these areas as units of the Refuge System is authorized under the Fish and Wildlife Act of 1956; the National Wildlife Refuge System Administration Act of 1966, as amended; Section 2 of the Reorganization Plan No. 3 of 1950; and the Refuge Recreation Act of 1962.

The Monument and its two Refuge units are managed by the USFWS through the Mariana Islands Refuges & Monument Complex, headquartered in Dededo, Guam.

Refuge Purpose(s):

"... for the development, advancement, management, conservation, and protection of fish and wildlife resources ... 16 U.S.C. § 742f(a)(4) "... for the benefit of the United States Fish and Wildlife Service, in performing its activities and services. Such acceptance may be subject to the terms of any restrictive or affirmative covenant, or condition of servitude ..." 16 U.S.C. § 742f(b)(1) (Fish and Wildlife Act of 1956).

"... conservation, management, and ... restoration of the fish, wildlife, and plant resources and their habitats ... for the benefit of present and future generations of Americans..." 16 U.S.C. § 668dd(a)(2) (National Wildlife Refuge System Administration Act)

"... suitable for— (1) incidental fish and wildlife-oriented recreational development, (2) the protection of natural resources, (3) the conservation of endangered species or threatened species ..." 16 U.S.C. § 460k-1 "... the Secretary ... may accept and use ... real ... property. Such acceptance may be accomplished under the terms and conditions of restrictive covenants imposed by donors ..."16 U.S.C. § 460k-2 (Refuge Recreation Act (16 U.S.C. § 460k-460k-4), as amended).

*applicable for both refuge units

Other Management Direction:

Presidential Proclamation 8335
"…for the purpose of protecting the objects identified above…" "… [Interior Secretary] shall not allow or permit any appropriation, injury, destruction, or removal of any feature of this monument except as provided for by this proclamation or as otherwise provided for by law"

"…Regulation of Scientific Exploration and Research…Subject to such terms and conditions as the Secretary deems necessary for the care and management of the objects of this monument, the Secretary of the Interior may permit scientific exploration and research within the monument, including incidental appropriation, injury, destruction, or removal of features of this monument for scientific study…"

Secretarial Order 3284
"…For each of the areas subject to this delegation, the Director of the [USFWS] shall provide for the proper care and management of the monument, including all objects of scientific and historic interest therein; the conservation of fish and wildlife; and the development of programs to assess and promote national and international monument-related scientific exploration and research." (Section 4.a.(2) . . . subject to the provisions of the proclamation [8335] establishing this Monument. . .")

National Wildlife Refuge System Mission
The mission of the National Wildlife Refuge System (Refuge System) is to administer a national network of lands and waters for the conservation, management, and where appropriate, restoration of the fish, wildlife, and plant resources and their habitats within the United States for the benefit of present and future generations of Americans.

Description of Use(s):

When determined compatible on a refuge-specific basis research, scientific collecting, and surveys (research) are allowable uses and are conducted on refuges by independent researchers, partnering agencies, and educational groups. Scientific exploration, as a directive of the Monument's Presidential Proclamation 8335 and Secretarial Order 3284, are further allowable uses for these Monument/Refuge units. The USFWS defines the research uses as:

- Research: Planned, organized, and systematic investigation of a scientific nature.
- Scientific collecting: Gathering of refuge natural resources or cultural artifacts for scientific purposes.
- Surveys: Scientific inventory and monitoring.

The research and exploration scientific use may be conducted from manned submersibles, remotely operated unmanned vehicles, or landers. This equipment may have lighting adequate for navigation and illuminating subjects and provisions for luring marine organisms using bait.

The purposes of research and exploration are to further the understanding of the Earth, its natural resources and processes and to improve the management of such resources. Because of the extreme environments of the Monument/Refuge units and their relative inaccessibility, very little is known about these areas. Much of the science is, therefore, essentially innovative exploration. The types of research and exploration will vary greatly but are predicted to mainly revolve around fundamental exploration and characterization; discovering, characterizing, and understanding bottom-dwelling eukaryotes, bacteria, and archaea; discovering, characterizing, and understanding geologic features

and habitats; as well as characterizing and understanding geologic, biologic, oceanographic, physical, and chemical processes.

Research and exploration proposals may be for any time of the year and may be requested for any bottom area of the Monument/Refuge units. The USFWS in consultation with NOAA and others, as applicable, will evaluate each proposal and may put limits on the activities to ensure that negative impacts to resources are avoided or limited.

Each research or exploration project would likely have different protocols and methods; therefore, each study necessitates its own scientific review. Each project would be carefully reviewed to prevent any significant short-term, long-term, or cumulative impacts. New research or exploration requests would be evaluated by USFWS staff, applicable scientific partners at NOAA and USGS, as well as other subject-matter experts as determined necessary by the USFWS. Evaluations and reviews would be conducted to determine if the species studied, methods used, or habitat type and locations affected may lead to undesirable cumulative impacts. All projects would be required to have a Monument/Refuge unit Special Use Permit (SUP). This degree of review would help ensure numerous levels and types of impacts are carefully considered before any permit for research or exploration is issued. Within the SUP, conditions would be clearly defined so as to protect and conserve the existing resources found within the Monument/Refuge. Some of the standard and specific conditions are included in this CD under Stipulations Necessary to Ensure Compatibility.

Collections of scientific specimens would be closely monitored and tracked as donations or loans to the permittee. Donations or loans of collections would be managed in accordance with Title 50 of the Code of Federal Regulations, sections 12.35 – 12.38, FWS Manual 701 FW 5, and Director's Order No. 109, as amended.

This use has been primarily proposed because the collecting and analyzing scientific data is extremely valuable to the USFWS for its ongoing management of the Monument/Refuge units, and helps to fulfill direction given in Presidential Proclamation 8335. The gathered information would also be used by other scientists, managers, decision-makers, and teachers around the world. The published manuscripts from this research help to disseminate the USFWS mission and the significance of the Monument and its resources to other researchers and the public.

Per Presidential Proclamation 8335, nothing in this CD shall restrict scientific exploration or research activities by or for the Secretary of Commerce, and nothing shall be construed to require a permit or authorization for the Secretary of Commerce or his respective scientific activities.

Availability of Resources:

Due to the complex nature of the research and exploration at the extreme depths and environments of the Monument/Refuge units, only a handful of entities have the technology and capability to access their benthic environments. During the period of this Interim CD, it is estimated that no more than three science SUPs would be issued in a calendar year. At this level, we will manage this use at the projected level with current capabilities. We do so because the research and exploration of these units cannot currently be accomplished by the USFWS, so little is known about these areas, and all science investigations will expand knowledge of these deep sites – also benefitting management of them. Proposed use beyond three SUPs would require SUP application fees. The bulk of the cost for research SUPs is incurred in staff time to review scientific proposals, coordinate with researchers, write SUPs, oversee on-going research projects, and review the research results. Law enforcement and dissemination of information about research and surveys in the monument are not included in

these cost estimates. We project that administering a research project SUP may require 4 weeks of intermittent staff time.

The protected area of these Monument/Refuge units is at the bottom (the submerged lands and benthic resources) of the Mariana Trench and submarine volcanoes and does not include the overlying water column. Access to it is through unmanned, remotely operated vehicles or manned submersibles. There are no USFWS facilities in this extreme environment. Permittees would pay the cost of all their actions related to the Monument/Refuge units. Researchers working in the Monument/Refuge units would have to be self-sufficient for safely accessing the Monument/Refuge units and would be required to obtain any additional permits for the actions. Any accidents or responses involving the permittees will their sole financial responsibility. Any funds expended by the USFWS as a result of an accident or response will be reimbursed by the permittee.

Category and Itemization	**Annual ($/yr)**
Administration and Management	$4,400
Monitoring & Adaptive Management	$4,200
Total Offsetting Revenues	**$8,600**

The numbers above reflect the current estimated costs for three permits per year. Estimated costs were calculated using 5 % of the base cost of a GS12/5 biologist, 2% cost of a GS13/5 Monument Project Leader, and 5% of a GS7/5 biological technician assuming this use would use that "portion of a year" to administer.

Anticipated Impacts of the Use(s):

Most of the possible impacts recognized are over or within the water column, and therefore outside the boundary of both Monument/Refuge units (covering only the bottom). These impacts may include: (1) disturbance of foraging sea birds and pelagic fish; (2) disturbance of marine mammals; (3) disturbance of endangered and threatened sea turtles; (4) release of pollution and contaminants; (5) disturbance and damage to fish, invertebrates, and algae.

Possible impacts to the Monument/Refuges' bottom community may include (1) disturbance to benthic marine organisms; (2) introduction of metals and other materials or equipment that are needed to travel to the bottom, and then discarded into the Monument/Refuge unit in order to return to the surface; and (3) accidental introduction of non-native extremophile species from equipment used during the operations.

The bottom features of the trench are likened to inverted islands of biodiversity and each submarine volcano is likewise a submerged island. Each may hold unique biological communities from feature to feature and could potentially be susceptible to invasions by organisms that are not native to that feature. Possible impacts include: (1) disturbance of foraging sea birds and pelagic fish; (2) disturbance of marine mammals; (3) disturbance of endangered and threatened sea turtles; (4) release of pollution and contaminants; (5) disturbance and damage to invertebrates and algae; (6) disturbance to benthic marine organisms; (7) introduction of metals and other equipment needed to travel to the bottom and then discarded in order to return to the surface; and, (8) accidental introduction of non-native extremophile species from equipment used during the operations.

Accidental introduction of non-native species between deep sites has been documented at other deep-sea locations. A submersible transferred 38 limpets from the Gorda Ridge at 7457 feet depth to the Juan de Fuca Ridge after a 2-day journey of 394 miles. When the samples from this site were analyzed, the limpets were detected to be alive, having survived the time and depth of decompression and re-compression between the two sites. As a precaution, permits will require disinfection of hard equipment surfaces (i.e., with diluted bleach solution) before deploying to other locations.

All research would be designed and managed in a fashion using best management practices to eliminate or minimize these impacts. However, even with proper management and execution of a well-planned project, so little is known about the Trench unit, certain responses may occur that could not be predicted or are not easily recognized.

Although a single research or exploration project within a single year may cause few, if any, negative resource impacts, it may in fact cause cumulative impacts over multiple years or when considered additively with all research and exploration projects to occur within the Monument/Refuge units. Therefore, it is critical for refuge managers to examine all projects with a multi-year timeframe in mind and consider all research that is planned concurrently in the Monument before approval is granted. It may be appropriate to set a limit to the number of research or exploration projects occurring in a particular habitat or relative to a single species or species group.

Public Review and Comment:

Public review and comments on this CD are solicited in conjunction with the release of the Marianas Trench Marine National Monument Draft MMP/EA (2019), in order to comply with NEPA and USFWS policy.

Determination: (check one below)

___ Use is Not Compatible
_✓_ Use is Compatible with Following Stipulations

Stipulations Necessary to Ensure Compatibility:

Researchers would be required to obtain a USFWS SUP through the joint Monument permitting process. These permits may stipulate more detailed access restrictions and regulations to protect wildlife or Monument/Refuge integrity from anticipated site-specific negative effects caused by the research project. At the discretion of the Monument Project Leader, USFWS-approved staff may be assigned to accompany researchers. Per Presidential Proclamation 8335, nothing in this CD shall restrict scientific exploration or research activities by or for the Secretary of Commerce, and nothing shall be construed to require a permit or authorization for the Secretary of Commerce or his respective scientific activities.

GENERAL TERMS AND CONDITIONS:
A more comprehensive list of Refuge conditions and restrictions is included in 50 CFR Part 27. Not all of these conditions and restrictions would apply to every exploration or research project, or scientific collection or survey. The type of use and where the activity occurs would determine the appropriate conditions.

It is the policy of the USFWS to encourage and support research, inventory and monitoring studies in units of the NWRS in order to provide scientific data upon which decisions regarding management may be based. The USFWS will also permit the use of a refuge for other investigatory scientific purposes when such use is compatible with the objectives for which the refuge is managed. Priority will be given to studies that contribute to the knowledge base of and management for biodiversity, enhancement, protection, use, preservation, and management of native wildlife populations and their habitat.

SPECIFIC TERMS AND CONDITIONS:
All scientific specimens are the property of the United States and collections are required to comply with USFWS regulations and policy as donations or loans to the permittee. Donations or loans of collected specimens would be managed in accordance with Title 50 of the Code of Federal Regulations, sections 12.35 – 12.38, FWS Manual 701 FW 5, Director's Order No. 109 (as amended), and any other applicable USFWS or Interior Department regulation or guidance. Collections shall not be shared or distributed beyond the permittee without the expressed permission of the USFWS. Any loan remains the property of the United States and the USFWS may demand its return at any time.

All research permit holders would be required to submit an annual report to the Mariana Islands Refuges & Monument Complex Project Leader that summarizes their activities for a given year and a final report when the project is completed. The report would include at a minimum the following: study title, SUP number, fiscal year, progress, important findings, and problems encountered, proposed resolution to problems, disposition of any collected samples, preparer, and date prepared. The report and all publications and products derived from the SUP will appropriately acknowledge the U.S. Fish & Wildlife Service and those activities were conducted under National Wildlife Refuge System permit. Appropriate acknowledgment should also be given to the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, when applicable. All reports, publications, or products will reference the Marianas Trench Marine National Monument.

If the proposed research methods would materially impact, appropriate, injure, destroy, or remove any Monument/Refuge resource, the researcher must identify the issues in advance. Highly intrusive or manipulative research is generally not permitted. As much of this work will be experimental due to the extreme environment, any non-anticipated disturbance would immediately be brought to the attention of the Monument Project Leader or Superintendent.

Researchers are responsible for acquiring and/or renewing any necessary additional permits required prior to beginning or continuing their project.

The Monument Project Leader, Superintendent, or designee can suspend or modify conditions or terminate research or exploration that is already permitted and in progress should unacceptable, unforeseen, or unexpected impacts or issues arise or be noted.

Justification:

Research and exploration in the Monument and Refuge units is inherently valuable to the FWS, governmental partners, and global scientific community; and is a key Presidential directive in the protection of this significant area. Research and exploration in the Monument/Refuge units can be especially valuable when it is intended to expand the knowledge base of those who are given the responsibility of managing resources. This is particularly true in this case where many of the resources remain undiscovered, unknown, and presumably in pristine or relatively pristine condition. By facilitating research, exploration, scientific collection, and surveys we are able to learn of the resources within the Monument and the possibilities it holds for expanding scientific understanding of our world. Thus, by effectively administering, tracking, and managing proposed scientific uses through SUPs, the use would not materially interfere with or detract from the fulfillment of Proclamation 8335, the Refuge System mission, or the purposes for which these refuge units were established.

Mandatory Reevaluation Date: (provide month and year for "allowed" uses only)

_____ Mandatory 15-year reevaluation date (for wildlife-dependent public uses)

__2030_____ Mandatory 10-year reevaluation date (for all uses other than wildlife-dependent public uses)

NEPA Compliance for Refuge Use Decision: (check one below)

_____ Categorical Exclusion without Environmental Action Statement

_____ Categorical Exclusion and Environmental Action Statement

__✓__ Environmental Assessment and Finding of No Significant Impact

_____ Environmental Impact Statement and Record of Decision

Signatures:

The Compatibility Determination for Wildlife Observation, Interpretation, and Photography is compatible with stipulations.

Project Leader, Mariana Islands Refuges and Monument Complex Approval:

_____

(Signature) (Date)

Concurrence:

Refuge Supervisor, Pacific Islands Refuges and Monuments Office

_____

(Signature) (Date)

Regional Chief, National Wildlife Refuge System:

_____

(Signature) (Date)

FINDING OF APPROPRIATENESS OF A REFUGE USE

Refuge Name: Mariana Trench National Wildlife Refuge and
Mariana Arc of Fire National Wildlife Refuge within the
Marianas Trench Marine National Monument

Use: Research, Exploration, Scientific Collections, and Surveys

Decision Criteria:	YES	NO
(a) Do we have jurisdiction over the use?	✔	
(b) Does the use comply with applicable laws and regulations (Federal, State, tribal, and local)?	✔	
(c) Is the use consistent with applicable Executive orders and Department and USFWS policies?	✔	
(d) Is the use consistent with public safety?	✔	
(e) Is the use consistent with goals and objectives in an approved management plan or other document?	✔	
(f) Has an earlier documented analysis not denied the use or is this the first time the use has been proposed?	✔	
(g) Is the use manageable within available budget and staff?	✔	
(h) Will this be manageable in the future within existing resources?	✔	
(i) Does the use contribute to the public's understanding and appreciation of the refuge's natural or cultural resources, or is the use beneficial to the refuge's natural or cultural resources?	✔	
(j) Can the use be accommodated without impairing existing wildlife-dependent recreational uses or reducing the potential to provide quality (see section 1.6D, 603 FW 1, for description), compatible, wildlife-dependent recreation into the future?	✔	

This form is not required for wildlife-dependent recreational uses; take regulated by the State, or uses already described in a refuge CCP or step-down management plan approved after October 9, 1997. Where we do not have jurisdiction over the use ("no" to (a)), there is no need to evaluate it further as we cannot control the use. Uses that are illegal, inconsistent with existing policy, or unsafe ("no" to (b), (c), or (d)) may not be found appropriate. If the answer is "no" to any of the other questions above, we will **generally** not allow the use.

If indicated, the refuge manager has consulted with State fish and wildlife agencies. Yes ✔ No __

When the refuge manager finds the use appropriate based on sound professional judgment, the refuge manager must justify the use in writing on an attached sheet and obtain the refuge supervisor's concurrence. Based on an overall assessment of these factors, my summary conclusion is that the proposed use is:

Not Appropriate_____ **Appropriate** ✔

Refuge Manager: Tammy Mae Summers Date: 7/15/2020

If found to be **Not Appropriate**, the refuge supervisor does not need to sign concurrence if the use is a new use. If an existing use is found **Not Appropriate** outside the CCP process, the refuge supervisor must sign concurrence. If found to be **Appropriate**, the refuge supervisor must sign concurrence.

Refuge Supervisor: RICARDO LOPEZ Digitally signed by RICARDO LOPEZ Date: 2020.11.03 16:17:02 -10'00' Date:_____

FWS Form 3-2319

Attachment 1: Appropriate Uses Justification

Date: July 10, 2020

Refuge: Mariana Trench National Wildlife Refuge and
Mariana Arc of Fire National Wildlife Refuge within the
Marianas Trench Marine National Monument (Monument/Refuge units)

Project: Research, Exploration, Scientific Collections, and Surveys

Summary: The Monument/Refuge units receive requests to conduct scientific research on submerged Refuge lands. Research applicants must submit a proposal that would outline: (1) objectives of the study; (2) justification for the study; (3) detailed methodology and schedule; (4) potential impacts on Monument/Refuge units' wildlife and/or habitat, including disturbance (short-term and long-term), injury, or mortality; (5) personnel required; (6) costs to Monument/Refuge units, if any; and (7) end products (i.e., reports, publications). Research proposals would be reviewed by Refuge staff, Regional Office Branch of Refuge Biology, and others as appropriate prior to the Refuge issuing a SUP. Projects will not be open-ended, and at a minimum, will be reviewed annually.

For each of the findings listed on USFWS Form 3-2319, a justification has been provided below:

a. Do we have jurisdiction over the use?

Some or all of the proposed activities would take place within Monument/Refuge units boundaries. The USFWS has jurisdiction over those research projects that are sited within Monument/Refuge units boundaries.

b. Does the use comply with applicable laws and regulations (Federal, State, tribal, and local)?

Proposed research activities should comply with all applicable laws and regulations. Any restrictions or qualifications that are required to comply with law and regulations would be specified in the SUP.

c. Is the use consistent with applicable Executive orders and Department and USFWS policies?

Through the review of individual projects, the Refuge would ensure that they are consistent with applicable policies, especially Research on USFWS Lands Policy (803 FW 1).

d. Is the use consistent with public safety?

Through individual project review, the USFWS will ensure that each project is consistent with public safety. If necessary, stipulations to ensure public safety will be included in the project's SUP.

e. Is the use consistent with goals and objectives in an approved management plan or other document?

Research activities are approved in instances where they can provide meaningful data that may contribute to Monument/Refuge units management and public appreciation of natural resources.

f. Has an earlier documented analysis not denied the use or is this the first time the use has been proposed?

Earlier documented analysis has approved the use and touted the benefits of research, scientific collecting, and surveys on national wildlife refuges.

g. Is the use manageable within available budget and staff?

The Monument/Refuge units expects to receive ~3 requests per year for this activity, and it is manageable with available budget and staff.

h. Will this be manageable in the future within existing resources?

The proposed activity at current levels would be manageable in the future with the existing resources.

i. Does the use contribute to the public's understanding and appreciation of the Monument/Refuge units' natural or cultural resources, or is the use beneficial to the Monument/Refuge units' natural or cultural resources?

The proposed use is beneficial to the Monument/Refuge units' natural and cultural resources because the types of research projects approved are those that have the distinct likelihood to help achieve Monument/Refuge units' purposes by providing information useful for the management of trust resources and may contribute to the public's understanding and appreciation of natural and/or cultural resources.

j. Can the use be accommodated without impairing existing wildlife-dependent recreational uses or reducing the potential to provide quality (see section 1.6D, 603 FW 1, for description), compatible, wildlife-dependent recreation into the future?

The USFWS will ensure that the research activities will not impair future wildlife-dependent recreational use of the Monument/Refuge units during individual project review, prior to issuing a SUP for the project.

Appendix C. Implementation Plan

C.1 Overview

The Monument Management Plan (MMP) provides long-term guidance for management decisions over a 15-year horizon and sets forth desired outcomes, with strategies and activities to reach those outcomes. Implementation of the MMP will require changes in funding, which will be sought from a variety of sources. This plan will depend on additional congressional allocations, partnerships, grants, and other means. There are no guarantees that additional Federal funds will be made available to implement any of these projects. For some projects, non-federal sources of funds will need to be obtained (both public and private) by partners. Activities and projects identified will be implemented as funds become available.

In USFWS-required Comprehensive Conservation Plans (CCPs), the agency identifies financial and staffing needs to implement the proposed CCP. Because the Marianas Trench MMP is fulfilling USFWS CCP requirements and is also a coordinated document between USFWS, NOAA, and the CNMI government, this task becomes significantly more complex with multiple programs within each agency potentially engaged in implementing the MMP and multiple methodologies for agencies to develop budget projections for that implementation. As a result, this Appendix presents a range of costs and staffing for implementation of this MMP. Each agency will work within its individual budgetary processes to identify budget proposals and funding opportunities. This estimate does not include costs for the PIFSC or other NOAA offices to conduct research activities, nor does it include non-staffing operational costs of the Government of CNMI.

Neither this draft MMP, nor any subsequent final plan constitutes a commitment of funds, or a commitment to request funds, by the federal agencies. All funding for current and possible future Monument activities is subject to the budgeting and appropriations process of the federal government. Each agency develops annual budget projections and priorities separately, and allocates funds based on its own programmatic, legal, and policy requirements. The cycle and timelines for funding and planning vary.

C.2 Costs to Implement the Monument Management Plan

Staffing and operational costs reflect management spending of base funds allocated each year. These are considered recurring costs and are usually associated with day-to-day operations and projects that last longer than three years. USFWS management responsibilities for the Monument are under the Marianas Islands Refuges & Monument Complex with offices in Guam and Saipan, with funding coordinated through the Pacific Islands Refuges & Monuments Office in Hawai‘i. The USFWS Monument Superintendent and staff members have concurrent responsibility for managing the Guam National Wildlife Refuge.

The NOAA PIRO receives annual funding to manage the four Pacific Marine National Monuments with its partners. Projects and grants have been awarded to implement the strategies in the Marianas and will continue to do so when funding is available. Currently there are no agency personnel within CNMI tasked solely with management responsibilities of the Marianas Trench Marine National Monument.

Each agency is fulfilling management needs with existing staff from internal programs. Depending upon degrees of involvement, timelines, expertise, and other factors, management of the Monument across all agencies is projected to entail between 5 and 15 full time equivalent employees (FTE) with expertise in resource management, biology, geology, cultural practitioners, planners, outreach and education, law enforcement, administration, maintenance, and vessel operations. Staffing at this span could be phased through short and long term targets to address the short- , mid- and long-term priorities outlined in the MMP. Partnerships with other institutions could also substitute, or supplement, government employees.

At an average $91,000 annual salary and estimated benefits at 30%, (Federal General Schedule, GS-9 or Regular Military Compensation O-2) equivalent for Saipan, CNMI; recurring costs to staff the Monument at the span of staffing identified (5 – 15 FTEs) would range from $455,000 to $1,365,000 per year. For the Pacific Islands stations, operational costs to fund general management capacity in the FWS Refuge System are calculated at 35% of staff salaries. Operational funds are necessary for basic management operations such as utilities, office equipment, trainings, general printing, supplies, etc. At the range projected, these recurring operational costs are estimated from $160,000 to $3,200,000 annually. Additional implementation of management activities would be developed by Monument Managers as we move closer to understanding needs for specific activities.

C.3 Additional Planning Required

This Monument management plan provides guidance for nearly all of the management strategies but further specifics are needed to meet the National Wildlife Refuge System Administration Act requirements. These specific requirements are or will be addressed in the following step-down plans.

Table C-1. Step-down plans to be completed

Step-down Plan	Target Completion Date
Habitat Management Plan	2020 – this MMP meets HMP requirements
Inventory and Monitoring Plan	2022
Visitor Services Plan	2024

C.4 Additional Implementation

The MMP includes direction for several projects to be implemented over the next 15 years. Within the MMP, a 15-year implementation design was prepared to carry-out the action plan strategies for the fiscal years 2021-2035. Under the preferred Alternative 3, a Monument Management Coordination Team (MMCT) comprised of Monument managers from USFWS, NOAA, and CNMI will select the activities to be implemented annually based on an assigned priority using ranking criteria described in section 2.2.3, Summary of Alternatives. Under Alternative 2, activities will be implemented in phases, during the short-, mid-, or long-term timeframes identified in each action plan. Using either Alternative 2 or 3, generally the strategies and activities build upon one another to achieve the management goals for the 15-year period.

The MMCT will meet annually, at a minimum, to evaluate the progress and effectiveness of the previous year strategies and activities executed. Based on sufficient resources, funding availability, capacity, and partners support, they will to develop a work strategy to plan for the upcoming year's

activities. This process is based on three key management frameworks; adaptive management, ecosystem based management, and multiple objectives planning, as described in section 2.3. This approach allows Monument managers to consider new or changing resource conditions and adjust accordingly within actual funding allocations.

As the planning process for the follow-up management plan is expected to take two years, public scoping for the next plan would be initiated in the year 2033. Monument managers will provide an assessment of progress and accomplishment of the existing management strategies and begin the formal planning process for the next 15-year plan.

A compilation of proposed activities for all of the action plans is provided in the following pages in the *Summary of Proposed Activities and Management Alternative Comparison.*

Note to Reviewers: All alternatives are subject to availability of funding and staff. Activities included in Alternative 1 (No Change) are indicated by a check mark (✓). Alternative 2 (Set Schedule) shows the target implementation phase. Alternative 3 (Prioritized Implementation) shows the funding priority given activities in the first year, with (1) being the highest priority and (4) the lowest priority for that year. Priorities are reassessed annually under Alternative 3.

Key:

Alternative 1	Alternative 2	Alternative 3
✓= on-going activity	Short-term = implement within 3 years	(1) = priority 1 (2021)
	Mid-term = implement year 4-7	(2) = priority 2 (2021)
	Long-term = implement in 8-15 years	(3) = priority 3 (2021)
		(4) = priority 4 (2021)

Action Plan Acronyms:
MRCM = Marine Resource Conservation and Monitoring;
CMAP = Coordination of Management, Access and Permitting;
SNF = Sustainable Non-commercial Fishing;
SAE = Surveillance and Enforcement;
MIS = Marine Invasive Species Control;
MD = Marine Debris;
ERDA = Emergency Response and Natural Resource Damage Assessment;
E&R = Exploration and Research; CMH = Cultural and Maritime Heritage;
OEP = Ocean Literacy, Environmental Education, and Public Outreach; and
IC = International Collaboration.

Marianas Trench MNM - Summary of Proposed Activities and Management Alternatives Comparison				
Project Title		**Alt 1**	**Alt 2**	**Alt 3**
MRCM Strategy 1: Coordinate and promote Monument-related non-commercial fishing and scientific research.				
Activity 1.1	Provide access for activities related to sustainable non-commercial fishing and exploration and research that preserves the marine resources of the Monument.	✓	Short-term	(1)
Activity 1.2	Work with partners and the scientific and local communities to monitor and assess the impacts from authorized Monument activities.		Short-term	(1)
Activity 1.3	Review the data and records from authorized fishing activities in the Monument and assess compliance with marine resource conservation needs.		Short-term	(1)
MRCM Strategy 2: Assess the status of endangered species, fisheries, habitats, and geologic features of the Monument.				
Activity 2.1	Work with partners to conduct population studies for marine mammals and T&E species, and CNMI species of concern.	✓	Short -term	(2)
Activity 2.2	Work with partners to continue the assessments of coral reef communities and other benthic habitats in the Monument.	✓	Short-term	(1)
Activity 2.3	Identify management options to maintain ecological integrity for species and systems considered vulnerable to climate change.		Mid-term	(2)
MRCM Strategy 3: Identify threats to endangered species, fisheries, habitats, and geologic features found in the Monument.				
Activity 3.1	Identify key species or functional groups on which to focus management efforts.		Short-term	(1)
Activity 3.2	Work with partners to develop long-term monitoring projects to determine how natural and anthropogenic events outside of the Monument impact the resources over time.		Long-term	(3)
MRCM Strategy 4: Identify measures to reduce or minimize threats to the Monument resources.				
Activity 4.1	Implement and refine BMPs to protect endangered and threatened marine species, habitats, and geologic features.		Short-term	(1)
Activity 4.2	Investigate the feasibility and necessity of deploying remote surveillance technologies to aid in resource protection.		Mid-term	(2)
Activity 4.3	Facilitate efforts to reduce and minimize fishery bycatch and incidental mortality.		Long-term	(3)
MRCM Strategy 5: Work with the MTMAC to include traditional knowledge in the management of the Monument.				
Activity 5.1	Solicit advice from SHPO and cultural groups on traditional knowledge pertaining to management of marine resources.		Short-term	(3)
CMAP Strategy 1: Establish a Monument Management Coordination Team to facilitate coordinated management of the Monument.				
Activity 1.1	Prepare and sign a MOU for management roles and responsibilities shared between USFWS, NOAA, and CNMI.		Short-term	(1)
Activity 1.2	Annually, prepare a brief "State of the Monument" report on the status of the Monument and implementation of the MMP.		Short-term	(2)
Activity 1.3	Assess and determine format and frequency of MTMAC meetings with the MMCT.		Short-term	(3)
CMAP Strategy 2: Develop a joint Monument permit and a single permit application for all Monument activities requiring permits.				
Activity 2.1	In consultation with NOAA and CNMI, USFWS will modify the existing approved SUP to serve as the JMP.		Short-term	(1)
CMAP Strategy 3: Develop a single public portal (website) to eliminate duplication of effort within one year of MMP publication.				
Activity 3.1	Work with USFWS Visitor Services to modify existing website to include NOAA & CNMI logos.		Short-term	(1)
SNF Strategy 1: Improve information about fisheries stocks status within the Monument.				
Activity 1.1	Acquire baseline data about fishery populations.	✓	Mid-term	(2)
SNF Strategy 2: Assess fisheries landings from the Islands Unit to ensure sustainable harvests and maintain effective regulations.				
Activity 2.1	Track the landings and species from submitted logbooks to better inform management decision-making.		Mid-term	(4)
SNF Strategy 3: Identify threats to fisheries resources and develop management actions in the Islands Unit to ensure sustainable, healthy fish stocks are maintained.				
Activity 3.1	Analyze fisheries data to guide management actions for sustainable fishery stocks.		Mid-term	(4)

Project Title		Alt 1	Alt 2	Alt 3
SNF Strategy 4: Provide the residents of CNMI and Guam easy access to permit applications, record forms, log books, etc.				
Activity 4.1	Incorporate the sustainable non-commercial fishing permit application into the new JMP permit application.		Short-term	(1)
Activity 4.2	Establish locations in the CNMI and Guam where fishers can find JMP applications and Monument-related fishing information.		Mid-term	(3)
SAE Strategy 1: Incorporate Monument information and regulations to existing interagency agreements and integrate Monument-specific protections into existing boundary and mapping tools.				
Activity 1.1	Integrate the Monument into existing interagency agreements and evaluate the necessity for additional interagency agreements.	✓	Short-term	(1)
Activity 1.2	Ensure that Monument boundaries are updated on official NOAA nautical charts and U.S. Coast Pilot®10.	✓	Short-term	(1)
SAE Strategy 2: Analyze vessel traffic data to assess the need for additional surveillance within the Monument.				
Activity 2.1	Conduct a ship travel assessment to inform compliance and enforcement needs in Monument waters.		Short-term	(4)
Activity 2.2	Assess effectiveness of Google Earth VMS data sharing.		Mid-term	(4)
SAE Strategy 3: Consider suitable programs, tools, and technologies to augment effective law enforcement.				
Activity 3.1	Investigate the feasibility and necessity of deploying remote surveillance technologies to aid in resource protection.		Long-term	(3)
MIS Strategy 1: Develop a marine invasive species prevention best management practices protocol for all Monument visitors to use.				
Activity 1.1	Review existing marine invasive species prevention measures and BMPs to establish standard protocols.		Short-term	(2)
Activity 1.2	Develop a reference guide for Monument visitors that explains BMP developed in MIS Activity 1.1.		Short-term	(2)
MIS Strategy 2: Assess the vessel numbers transiting Monument waters, the purpose of their passage, travel patterns and primary pathways, and isolate potential vectors for species introductions.				
Activity 2.1	Identify vector pathways, and assess spatial and temporal water vessel and aircraft traffic patterns.	✓	Short-term	(1)
MIS Strategy 3: Assess the need for and the feasibility of a marine invasive species inspection process.				
Activity 3.1	Review trip data and determine whether the Monument would benefit from vessel inspections for Guam & CNMI boaters.	✓	Short-term	(1)
MIS Strategy 4: Confirm the presence or absence of invasive species in the Monument.				
Activity 4.1	Analyze the MARAMP towed-diver survey data to verify the presence or absence of invasive species and establish a baseline for marine invasive species in the Monument		Mid-term	(3)
Activity 4.2	Develop database that identifies marine species in the Monument, prioritizing known invaders in the tropical and subtropical Pacific marine environment.		Mid-term	(3)
MIS Strategy 5: Develop a marine invasive species observation plan and support existing observation activities.				
Activity 5.1	Create a marine invasive species observation program for researchers to assist with detecting potential introductions.		Mid-term	(3)
MD Strategy 1: Decrease potential incidences of grounded and abandoned vessels in the Monument.				
Activity 1.1	Update navigation aids with Monument boundary and feature information.		Short-term	(1)
Activity 1.2	Assess the need and value of establishing International Maritime Organization Protection Measures for the Islands Unit.		Mid-term	(2)
MD Strategy 2: Decrease incidences of fishing gear and solid waste disposal in the Mariana Archipelago that could drift into Monument waters.				
Activity 2.1	Modify and circulate waste management education materials.		Long-term	(3)
Activity 2.2	Conduct outreach workshops in the CNMI and Guam about fishing gear loss solutions.	✓	Mid-term	(3)
Activity 2.3	Develop protocols to prevent marine debris from U.S. fishing fleets that fish in the CNMI and Guam EEZs and partner with them for removal incentives.		Long-term	(4)

	Project Title	Alt 1	Alt 2	Alt 3
MD Strategy 3: Develop a process to inventory and remove marine debris in the Islands Unit.				
Activity 3.1	Establish a marine debris data gathering procedure for the Islands Unit.		Long-term	(1)
Activity 3.2	Consider using remote monitoring technology to address marine debris.		Long-term	(2)
Activity 3.3	Work with partners to establish a centralized, inter-agency marine debris inventory and response fund.		Long-term	(3)
ERDA Strategy 1: Provide USCG with a Monument Contingency Plan to enable a streamlined response and damage assessment in the event of emergencies in the Monument.				
Activity 1.1	Prepare a Monument Contingency Plan to supplement the MIACP.		Short-term	(2)
Activity 1.2	Prepare an Environmental Sensitivity Index (ESI) for the Monument's Islands Unit.		Mid-term	(2)
Activity 1.3	Prepare a NRDA representative contact list.		Short-term	(2)
ERDA Strategy 2: Ensure preparation, response, and training needs are met for ERDA protocol in the Monument.				
Activity 2.1	Monument managers will collaborate with the PRiMO coalition to identify training and funding needs associated with the ERDA protocol.		Mid-term	(3)
E&R Strategy 1: Work with partners to assess the current state of knowledge about the resources in the Monument, and to prioritize research to fill in the gaps.				
Activity 1.1	Complete a review of the current scientific literature of research that has occurred in the Monument, and make it available to the public on an appropriate internet site(s).	✓	Short-term	(3)
Activity 1.2	Review current data to determine the abundance and distribution of the marine resources in the monument, and the location of geological features found in the Monument.		Long-term	(3)
Activity 1.3	Collect available spatial data sources to determine the distribution of the various habitats, geological features, and biological resources.		Long-term	(3)
Activity 1.4	Conduct a vulnerability assessment to understand potential climate change scenarios.	✓	Short-term	(1)
E&R Strategy 2: Work with partners to study, explore, and conserve the features and resources of the Monument.				
Activity 2.1	Work with partners to conduct scientific studies on the characteristics of the Monument's unique processes and resources.	✓	Short-term	(1)
Activity 2.2	Work with partners to characterize the ocean basins and resources in the Monument.	✓	Short-term	(1)
Activity 2.3	Characterize geological, physical, chemical, and biological ocean processes, communities, and environments.	✓	Short-term	(2)
Activity 2.4	Develop a geo-referenced system of documentation that tracks locations and types of exploration and research activities in the Monument.		Mid-term	(3)
Activity 2.5	Identify and establish long-term study sites at appropriate locations within the Monument.		Long-term	(3)
Activity 2.6	Locate areas within the Monument that demonstrate potential for climate change resilience.		Long-term	(4)
E&R Strategy 3: Identify opportunities to implement novel approaches to management of the Monument and to find ways to further collaboration with the scientific community and the general public.				
Activity 3.1	Convene a team of Technical Advisors who can aid monument managers in evaluation of research proposals and management activities.		Mid-term	(3)
Activity 3.2	Convene a working group to identify key climate change research questions.		Mid-term	(3)
Activity 3.3	Consider establishing sites where only low-impact research would be conducted, in order to maintain ecosystem integrity.		Long-term	(2)
Activity 3.4	Identify opportunities to use advanced underwater technologies such as: ROVs; autonomous underwater vehicles; and ocean gliders to increase the pace, scope, and efficiency of exploration and research.		Mid-term	(2)

	Project Title	Alt 1	Alt 2	Alt 3
CMH Strategy 1: Collaborate with Chamorro and Carolinian communities, the CNMI Historic Preservation Office, the Guam Historic Resources Division, and other interested groups to identify cultural & maritime heritage resources related to the Monument.				
Activity 1.1	Establish partnerships with indigenous communities to conduct culturally appropriate maritime heritage research and activities		Short-term	(1)
Activity 1.2	Connect with agencies managing the Maritime Heritage Grants program to determine eligibility for funding and seek out NGOs and universities for potential research projects.		Mid-term	(2)
Activity 1.3	Identify, characterize, and inventory Cultural & Maritime Heritage resources located in the Monument using a GIS-based inventory program.		Mid-term	(3)
Activity 1.4	Develop a Cultural & Maritime Heritage preservation and protection program for historic resources in the Monument.		Mid-term	(3)
CMH Strategy 2: Facilitate development of interpretive programs for the Monument's Cultural & Maritime Heritage.				
Activity 2.1	Prepare Educational materials to augment Cultural & Maritime Heritage programs.		Mid-term	(3)
Activity 2.2	Coordinate Cultural & Maritime Heritage outreach programs with educators and community organizations.		Mid-term	(3)
OEP Strategy 1: Engage educators and organizations in the CNMI and Guam to support ocean literacy.				
Activity 1.1	Identify potential CNMI and Guam-based educators to establish a network of ocean literacy products and material contributors.		Short-term	(2)
Activity 1.2	Identify gaps in ocean literacy and ocean resource-related environmental education programs and seek ways to contribute resources to existing programs.		Short-term	(2)
OEP Strategy 2: Collaboratively develop curriculum for the Mariana Archipelago that incorporates traditional knowledge of the Carolinian and Chamorro communities.				
Activity 2.1	Determine which materials should be incorporated into ocean literacy, environmental education, and public outreach programs.		Mid-term	(3)
Activity 2.2	Collaboratively develop materials that address the 7 essential ocean principles from an indigenous point of view, and make them available in locally spoken languages.		Mid-term	(3)
Activity 2.3	Develop educational products featuring the Monument's unique resources to bring the Monument to the CNMI and Guam communities.		Short-term	(3)
OEP Strategy 3: Provide quality environmental education and ocean literacy programs for Mariana Islands residents and visitors complimented with distance learning tools and novel delivery tools.				
Activity 3.1	Identify where ocean literacy programs should be targeted to maximize community participation.		Short-term	(1)
Activity 3.2	Identify appropriate distance learning tools and integrate new media/technology.		Short-term	(1)
OEP Strategy 4: Establish a visitor contact station/ multipurpose facility where the collective story of the Monument ecosystem is told through imagery, sounds, artifacts and scheduled programming.				
Activity 4.1	Monument managers will continue to grow/expand Monument visitor contact stations in the CNMI and Guam, and provide support/guidance as resources permit.	✓	Short-term	(1)
Activity 4.2	Develop an education and outreach ocean literacy program in partnership with Monument managers and local community experts.	✓	Mid-term	(2)
OEP Strategy 5: Promote eco-tourism, recreational, and economic ventures that are compatible with Monument ecosystems in collaboration with the Marianas Visitors Authority and other partners.				
Activity 5.1	Establish guidelines and protocols for sustainable tourism and related economic ventures within the Monument.		Long-term	(3)
IC Strategy 1: Routinely participate in national and international ocean stewardship forums to exchange knowledge and learn new marine protected area policies, methods, and technologies.				
Activity 1.1	Participate in the Big Ocean network to incorporate relevant MPA management methods into Monument activities.	✓	Short-term	(1)
Activity 1.2	Participate in SPREP, Micronesian Challenge, Coral Triangle Initiative, Coral Reef Conservation Program, and other international organizations' activities.	✓	Short-term	(2)

Project Title		Alt 1	Alt 2	Alt 3
IC Strategy 2: Identify collaboration opportunities that will assist managers in maintaining or improving Monument resilience.				
Activity 2.1	Collaborate with international agencies who are conducting research and fisheries-related activities in and near the Monument.	✓	Short-term	(2)
Activity 2.2	Collaborate with national research firms who partner with international research institutions.		Short-term	(1)
Activity 2.3	Improve coordination of seabird protections and fisheries management across the Federal Government and, as appropriate, engage with the international community through agreements, conferences, and one-on-one.		Mid-term	(2)
Activity 2.4	In coordination with USCG, develop Japanese language Monument information guides for boaters and Search and Rescue units for emergency response within the Islands Unit.		Mid-term	(2)

Appendix D. Wilderness Review for Mariana Trench and Mariana Arc of Fire NWRs

General Information on Wilderness Reviews

Wilderness review is the process used to determine whether or not to recommend lands or waters in the Refuge System to the Congress for designation as wilderness. Planning policy for the Refuge System (602 FW 3) mandates conducting wilderness reviews every 15 years. The wilderness review process has three phases: inventory, study, and recommendation. After first identifying lands and waters that meet the minimum criteria for wilderness, the resulting wilderness study areas (WSA) are further evaluated to determine if they merit recommendation from the Service to the Secretary of the Interior for inclusion in the National Wilderness Preservation System (NWPS). Areas recommended for designation are managed to maintain wilderness character in accordance with management goals, objectives, and strategies outlined in a Comprehensive Conservation Plan (CCP) until Congress makes a decision or the CCP is amended to modify or remove the wilderness proposal. This Monument Management Plan meets the requirements of a CCP.

Wilderness Inventory
The wilderness inventory consists of identifying areas that minimally meet the requirements for wilderness as defined in the Wilderness Act of 1964 (Wilderness Act). Wilderness is defined as an area which:

- Has at least 5,000 acres of land or is of sufficient size as to make practicable its preservation and use in an unimpaired condition, or be capable of restoration to wilderness character through appropriate management at the time of review, or be a roadless island;
- Generally appears to have been affected primarily by the forces of nature, with the imprint of man's work substantially unnoticeable;
- Has outstanding opportunities for solitude or a primitive and unconfined type of recreation; and
- May also contain ecological, geological, or other features of scientific, educational, scenic, or historic value. These features and values, though desirable, are not necessary for an area to qualify as a wilderness.

Wilderness Study
During the study phase, lands and waters qualifying for wilderness as a result of the inventory are studied to analyze values (ecological, recreational, cultural, spiritual), resources (wildlife, water, vegetation, minerals, soils), and uses (habitat management, public use) within the area. The findings of the study help determine whether to recommend the area for designation as wilderness.

Wilderness Recommendation
Once a wilderness study determines that a WSA meets the requirements for inclusion in the NWPS, a wilderness study report that presents the results of the wilderness review, accompanied by a Legislative Environmental Impact Statement (LEIS), is prepared. The wilderness study report and LEIS that support wilderness designation are then transmitted through the Secretary of the Interior to the President of the United States, and ultimately to the Congress for approval.

The following section summarizes the inventory phase of the wilderness review for the **Mariana Trench NWR** (Trench Unit/Refuge) and **Mariana Arc of Fire NWR** (Volcanic Unit/Arc of Fire Refuge). The Islands Unit is not managed as a refuge and therefore exempt from the wilderness review requirement.

Wilderness Inventory Summary

The wilderness inventory is a broad look at the planning area to identify WSAs. These WSAs are roadless areas within refuge boundaries, including submerged lands and their associated water column, that meet the minimum criteria for wilderness identified in Sect. 2. (c) of the Wilderness Act. A WSA must meet the minimum size criteria (or be a roadless island), appear natural, and provide outstanding opportunities for solitude or primitive recreation. Other supplemental values are evaluated, but not required.

Size

Inventory units meet the size criteria for a WSA if any one of the following standards applies:

- An area with over 5,000 contiguous acres. State and private lands are not included in making this acreage determination.
- A roadless island of any size. A roadless island is defined as an area surrounded by permanent waters or that is markedly distinguished from the surrounding lands by topographical or ecological features.
- An area of less than 5,000 contiguous Federal acres that is of sufficient size as to make practicable its preservation and use in an unimpaired condition, and of a size suitable for wilderness management.
- An area of less than 5,000 contiguous Federal acres that is contiguous with a designated wilderness, recommended wilderness, or area under wilderness review by another Federal wilderness managing agency.

The Trench Unit/Refuge is comprised of more than 50.5 million acres which meets the size criteria. The Volcanic Unit/Arc of Fire Refuge covers 46,779 acres, which also meets the size criteria.

Naturalness

A WSA must meet the naturalness criteria. Section 2.(c) of the Wilderness Act defines wilderness as an area that "…generally appears to have been affected primarily by the forces of nature with the imprint of man's work substantially unnoticeable." The area must appear natural to the average visitor rather than "pristine." The presence of ecologically accurate, historical landscape conditions is not required. An area may include some manmade features and human impacts provided they are substantially unnoticeable in the unit as a whole. Human-caused hazards, such as the presence of unexploded ordnance from military activity, and the physical impacts of refuge management facilities and activities are also considered in the evaluation of the naturalness criteria. An area may not be considered unnatural in appearance solely on the basis of "sights and sounds" of human impacts and activities outside the boundary of the unit. The cumulative effects of these factors were considered in the evaluation of naturalness for each wilderness inventory unit.

In the wilderness inventory, specific manmade features and other human impacts need to be identified that affect the overall apparent naturalness of the tract. There is a high probability of unexploded ordnance, wreckage of ship and aircraft, and other man-made debris lying in the submerged lands of the Trench Unit/Refuge. The Mariana Trench contains some of the deepest

known points in the global ocean and due to its inaccessibility, the region is virtually unexplored, and much remains to be learned. A naturalness evaluation is being deferred until a time when technological capabilities allow for a viable assessment of wilderness criteria.

As a volcanic arc deep within the Pacific Ocean, the Volcanic Unit/Arc of Fire Refuge continues to exist in a completely natural state. No known factors within the refuge serve to detract from its natural character. The Volcanic Unit/Arc of Fire Refuge meets the minimum criteria for naturalness.

Outstanding Opportunities for Solitude or Primitive and Unconfined Recreation

In addition to meeting the size and naturalness criteria, a WSA must provide outstanding opportunities for solitude or primitive recreation. The area does not have to possess outstanding opportunities for both solitude and primitive and unconfined recreation, and does not need to have outstanding opportunities on every acre. Further, an area does not have to be open to public use and access to qualify under these criteria. Congress has designated a number of wilderness areas in the NWPS that are closed to public access to protect ecological resource values.

"Opportunities for solitude" refers to the ability of a visitor to be alone and secluded from other visitors in the area. Primitive and unconfined recreation means non-motorized, dispersed outdoor recreation activities that do not require developed facilities or mechanical transport. These primitive recreation activities may provide opportunities to experience challenge and risk, self-reliance, and adventure.

Most of the area of both inventory units lie beyond the depths of current technical diving limits. Only a single pinnacle of the Zealandia Bank unit of the Volcanic Unit/Arc of Fire Refuge is readily accessible to recreational divers. Due to the extreme pressure at depth, humans cannot readily visit either refuge without the aid of submersible mechanical transport. As such, neither the Trench Unit/Refuge nor Volcanic Unit/Arc of Fire Refuge meets the minimum criteria for outstanding opportunities for solitude or primitive and unconfined recreation.

Evaluation of Supplemental Values

Supplemental values are defined by the Wilderness Act as "ecological, geological, or other features of scientific, educational, scenic, or historic value." Based upon the findings of the required components for WSA designation, supplemental values were not evaluated.

Findings

Under present conditions, neither the Trench Unit/Refuge nor Volcanic Unit/Arc of Fire Refuge meets the minimum criteria for consideration as WSA (see Table D.1, next page).

Mariana Trench NWR (Trench Unit/Refuge)	
Required Components	
(1) Has at least 5,000 ac of land or is of sufficient size to make practicable its preservation and use in an unconfined condition, or is a roadless island.	Yes. Contains over 50.5 million acres of submerged lands.
(2) Generally appears to have been affected primarily by the forces of nature, with the imprint of man's work substantially unnoticeable.	Unknown.
(3a) Has outstanding opportunities for solitude.	No. Refuge is too deep for technical divers to visit without submersible mechanical transport.
(3b) Has outstanding opportunities for a primitive and unconfined type of recreation.	No. Refuge is too deep for technical divers to visit without submersible mechanical transport.
Other Components	
(4) Contains ecological, geological or other features of scientific, educational, scenic, or historic value.	Not evaluated.
Summary	
Parcel qualifies as a wilderness study area (meets criteria 1, 2 & 3a or 3b).	No.
Mariana Arc of Fire NWR (Volcanic Unit/Arc of Fire Refuge)	
Required Components	
(1) Has at least 5,000 ac of land or is of sufficient size to make practicable its preservation and use in an unconfined condition, or is a roadless island.	Yes. Contains 46,779 acres of submerged lands.
(2) Generally appears to have been affected primarily by the forces of nature, with the imprint of man's work substantially unnoticeable.	Yes. Completely natural submarine volcanic arc. No diminishing factors.
(3a) Has outstanding opportunities for solitude.	No. Most portions of Refuge are too deep for divers to visit without submersible mechanical transport.
(3b) Has outstanding opportunities for a primitive and unconfined type of recreation.	No. Most portions of Refuge are too deep for divers to visit without submersible mechanical transport.
Other Components	
(4) Contains ecological, geological or other features of scientific, educational, scenic, or historic value.	Not evaluated.
Summary	
Parcel qualifies as a wilderness study area (meets criteria 1, 2 & 3a or 3b).	No.

Table D.1 Wilderness Inventory Summary

Appendix E. Best Management Practices & Biosecurity

Recommended BMPs for Ecosystem Protection and to Minimize Marine Invasive Species Introductions

These Best Management Practices (BMPs) are provided to Monument visitors to minimize potential introductions of marine invasive species in the Marianas Trench Marine National Monument. Portions of the recommended BMPs provided below, currently being used and considered effective, are taken from the CRED Programmatic Environmental Assessment for conducting research activities in the central and western Pacific Ocean, and the Papahānaumokuākea Marine National Monument Management Plan.

1. Marine Invasive Species Prevention Measures for Vessels

Shipboard Operations

The following ship maintenance protocols are applied to the NOAA ships[1] whereas similar procedures are recommended to be applied to other ships and small boats that are to access the Monument waters:

Ships should be dry docked every two years and the bottom and sides cleaned using a high pressure water system to remove dirt and growth on the hull. The bottom will be repainted with an EPA-approved, anti-fouling paint that retards marine growth and preserves the bottom surface. The hull is to be painted with a marine paint for protection in the salt water environment. Vessels will have a USCG type II approved Marine Sanitation Device aboard and a holding tank capable of holding and treating sewage, gray water and other waste generated aboard the ship. Ships will be capable of holding wastewater for approximately two days before the holding tank reaches capacity and grey water must be discharged. For operations within the Monument, all sewage would be treated and the grey water retained until the ship is outside of all Monument boundaries.

Small Boats

Small boats that have been deployed from the main ship are to be cleaned and inspected daily for organic material, including any algal fragments or other organisms. Organic material, if found, is physically removed and disposed of according to the ship's solid-waste disposal protocol or in approved secure holding systems. The internal and external surfaces of vessels are rinsed daily with freshwater and always rinsed between islands before transits. Vessels are allowed to dry before redeployment the following day.

Equipment and Gear

The following actions are routinely required while conducting work to minimize the spread of diseases to coral reef organisms and spreading invasive species on equipment and vessels. Equipment (e.g., gloves, forceps, shears) in direct contact with potential invasive species, diseased coral tissues, or diseased organisms are soaked in a freshwater 1:32 dilution with commercial bleach for at least 10 minutes and only a disinfected set of equipment is used at each dive site.

[1] The PIFSC and CRED primarily use two NOAA Ships for its cruises: *Hi'ialakai* and *Oscar Elton Sette*.

All samples of potentially invasive species, diseased coral tissues, or diseased organisms are collected and sealed in at least 2 of a combination of bags or jars underwater on-site and secured into a holding container until processing.

Dive Gear

Dive gear (e.g., wetsuit, mask, fins, snorkel, BC, regulator, weight belt, booties) is disinfected by one of the following ways: a 1:52 dilution of commercial bleach in freshwater, a 3% free chlorine solution, or a manufacturer's recommended disinfectant-strength dilution of a quaternary ammonium compound in "soft" (low concentration of calcium or magnesium ions) freshwater. Used dive gear is disinfected daily by performing the following steps: (1) physical removal of any organic matter and (2) submersion for a minimum of 10 min in an acceptable disinfection solution, followed by a thorough freshwater rinse and hanging to air dry. All gear in close proximity to the face or skin, such as masks, regulators, and gloves, are additionally rinsed thoroughly with potable water following disinfection.

Ballast Water

Vessels must have a US Coast Guard and/or International Maritime Organization ballast water management plan on board. The records of ballast water operations for the previous month with source locations must be made available at the time of inspection. If inspectors have concerns, access to salt water ballast tanks must be provided to allow water sampling. If any salt water ballast on board is deemed unacceptable the vessels master must employ ballast water management practices described in 33 CFR § 151.1510 prior to entry in the Monument. No ballast water discharge is allowed within the boundaries of the Monument except in the case of emergencies as defined by the US Coast Guard: (33 CFR § 151.1512)

Biofouling

All submerged and waterline surfaces must be free of macro-scale biofouling consisting of marine plants and animals. Surfaces must be free of any Chlorophyta (green-algae), Phaeophyta (brown algae), and Rhodophyta (red-algae) macro-algal species. Additionally, surfaces must be free of macro-invertebrate biofouling communities consisting of cnidarians (anemones and hydroids), arthropods (barnacles and macro-crustaceans), annelids (mobile and tube-dwelling worms), bryozoans, mollusks (clams, mussels and snails) and tunicates (sea squirts).

Live Organism Transport

There can be no transport of live or recently alive marine organisms associated with food stores, aquaculture/aquarium broodstock, or research activities aboard vessels departing for operations within the Monument.

Ballast Metals

Submersible operators should survey their surroundings visually and have access to detailed maps to avoid sensitive areas such as hydrothermal vents, coral colonies, and unique geologic features of scientific interest. All ballast would be dropped in the aphotic zone.

2. MIS Prevention for Deep-Sea Hydrothermal Vents Research

Education and Awareness
ROV operators should be educated about the potential for invasive species transport in order to make sound decisions regarding the deployment and decontamination of their ROVs.

Visual Inspection
Prior to any deployment, ROVs should be inspected to determine whether any visibly observable biological material is present on the vehicle. Users should pay extra attention to the o-ring seals (where tiny grains can become lodged); around the thrusters where sea grass and other filamentous organic matter can become entangled; and inside motor bells where any material is hard to detect. After each dive, users should perform the same visual inspection, returning any organic matter to its place of origin to prevent secondary uptake (secondary uptake occurs when material that has been removed from the ROV is subsequently attached to other objects, such as clothing, shoes, or equipment). Users should also inspect their shoes, clothing, and any gear to confirm that no organic material will be transmitted between sites.

Freshwater Soak and Rinse
Good ROV maintenance already includes a freshwater soak prior to beginning an expedition and rinsing ROVs in clean, freshwater following each dive. This will help remove salt and minimize corrosion of critical components. A freshwater rinse can also help remove any organic matter and dislodge potential invasive vectors. Freshwater is also lethal to many marine species, including microscopic organisms that cannot be detected during visual inspection. As transportation of rinse-water can serve as a potential source of secondary uptake, water for rinses should be prepared as close to the dive site as possible and disposed of at the same location.

Following a successful series of dives at a discrete site, and after examining submersible elements and providing a sterile rinse, ROVs should be thoroughly washed using a weak bleach solution (7.75 mL household bleach per liter of water) or other readily available sanitizing agent. This will kill many microbial and viral vectors that could be transported between sites. This step is particularly important when ROVs will be deployed in different biomes or in different geographic regions.

3. Procedures for Ecosystem and Protected Species Threat Reduction

Researchers should follow these guidelines while conducting deep-sea exploration and research:

- Avoid activities that will have deleterious impacts on the sustainability of populations of hydrothermal vent organisms.
- Avoid activities that lead to long lasting and significant alteration and/or visual degradation of vent sites.
- Avoid collections that are not essential to the conduct of scientific research.
- Avoid transplanting biota or geological material between sites.
- Be aware of the status of current and planned research in an area and avoid activities that will compromise experiments or observation of other researchers. Assure that the research activities and plans are known to the rest of the international research community through public domain data bases.

- Facilitate the fullest possible use of all biological, chemical and geological samples collected through collaborations wand cooperation amongst the global community of scientists.

Ecosystem Protection

During marine debris removal operations, vessels often anchor in areas where they will be working for extended periods. All vessels must anchor in areas with low coral cover to minimize impacts at each site before launching small boats for day-to-day operations. Acceptable anchoring sites are also used repeatedly on an annual basis, whenever possible, to minimize damage. Divers, spotters, and coxswains take every precaution during operations to avoid interactions with any listed species by following the best management practices for boat operations and diving activities, including but not limited to the following practices:

- Constant vigilance is kept for the presence of federally listed species;
- When piloting vessels, vessel operators or coxswains alter course to remain at least 100 yards from whales and at least 50 yards from other marine mammals and sea turtles;
- Vessel speed is reduced to 10 kn or less when piloting vessels in the proximity of marine mammals;
- Vessel speed is reduced to 5 kn or less when piloting vessels in areas of known or suspected turtle activity;
- Marine mammals and sea turtles are not encircled or trapped between multiple vessels or between vessels and the shore whenever possible;
- If a vessel is approached by a marine mammal or turtle, the engine is put into neutral and the animal allowed to pass;
- Unless specifically covered under a separate permit that allows activity within proximity to protected species, all in-water work is postponed when whales are within 100 yards or other protected species are within 50 yards. Activity recommences only after the animal(s) depart the area;
- Should protected species enter the area while in-water work is already in progress, the activity may continue only when that activity has no reasonable expectation to adversely affect the animal(s); and
- Attempts are not made to feed, touch, ride, or otherwise intentionally interact with any protected species.

Procedures for Reducing Threats During Monitoring Activities

Monitoring is conducted in shallow (<115 ft) water utilizing scuba gear. Research dives focus on the goal of data collection for research and monitoring purposes.

- The anchor is used on sand or rubble substrate to minimize disturbance of sensitive benthic areas and prevent coral damage. The anchor is always lowered rather than thrown overboard, and a diver checks the anchor to make sure it does not drag or entangle any fauna;
- The operational area is continuously monitored for protected species, with dive surveys being altered, postponed, or canceled and small boats being put on standby or in neutral or relocating to minimize disturbances or interactions;
- To avoid interactions with listed species during surveys and operations, team members and small boat coxswains monitor areas while in transit to and from work sites. If a listed species is sighted, the vessel alters course in the opposite direction. If unable to change course, the vessel is slowed or stopped until the animal is clear of the boat, as long as diver, coxswain, and passenger safety are not compromised;
- Protected species monitoring continues throughout all dive operations by at least one team member aboard each boat and 2 divers working underwater;

- Mechanical equipment, such as float lines, transect lines, or stabilization lines for oceanographic equipment, is monitored to ensure no entanglements occur with protected species;
- Team members immediately respond to an entangled animal, halting operations and providing on-site assessment and an appropriate response. This response could include allowing the animal to disentangle itself or assisting with disentanglement unless doing so would put divers, coxswains, or other staff at risk of injury;
- Before approaching any shorelines or exposed reefs, all observers examine the shoreline, reef areas, and any other visible land areas within the line of sight for marine mammals and sea turtles. The monitoring teams typically do not participate in terrestrial surveys/operations as part of their responsibilities, which minimizes the potential for disturbance of resting protected animals along shorelines;
- Follow all federal and local laws pertaining to marine mammal, sea turtle, seabird, and other resources protected by the ESA and Marine Mammal Protection Act when completing occasional requests for assistance with terrestrial surveys;
- The humphead wrasse (*Cheilinus undulatusi*) and the green bumphead parrotfish (*Bolbometopon muricatums*) are considered species of concern and are of great importance to the health of coral reef ecosystems. During all research activities, these species are only observed and recorded, and they are never collected, harassed, or sampled. Exact locations of these species are not released to avoid contributing further to overfishing;
- Avoid seabird nesting colonies;
- Avoid marine turtles and marine mammals; and
- Only disinfected equipment and gear are transported between the cruise point of origin to destination and return. Protocols are carefully followed to avoid transport of diseased or invasive materials between sites.

4. General Storage and Transport Protocols for Collected Samples

This protocol applies to the storage and transport of commonly collected samples (i.e. terrestrial samples, coral, fish, and invertebrates) in Monument. It was developed to ensure proper precautions in the handling of biological samples under the IATA and DOT Federal guidelines for safe transport of biological material (Packing Instruction 650). Separate protocols may exist for individual species or activities.

A. Diseased metazoan samples:

Diseased samples or those in which a parasite or pathogen is suspected will be collected and placed into individual plastic Ziploc® or Whirl-Pak® bags and sealed until return to base station (research vessel or field camp). Bags will be immediately labeled, or pre-labeled bags will be used.

Separate equipment will be used to sample health-compromised versus healthy organisms and these tools will be soaked in a freshwater bleach solution for at least ten minutes and rinsed in fresh water between dives.

Sealed plastic bags with diseased samples will be processed immediately or stored on ice in a cooler or other leak-proof container until return to base station.

Specimens will not be released or exposed to environments beyond the collection location.

Upon return to the ship, collection tools used for diseased samples will be disinfected with 10% bleach by soaking in a freshly made solution for a minimum of ten minutes, followed by a thorough freshwater rinse and air-drying.

Collected specimens will be processed as soon as possible and placed in a clearly labeled primary storage container. Processing and storage containers are dependent on preservation method:

Chemically preserved (diseased sample):
Specimens will be chemically fixed or preserved in one of the following (in sufficient concentration to fix all tissues):

Ethyl alcohol
Isopropyl alcohol
Methyl alcohol
DMSO
DNA extraction buffer
Z-fix
Formaldehyde/formalin
Glutaraldehyde
Acetone
Bouin's fixative
Helly's fix

Specimens in primary containers (the first Ziploc® or Whirl-Pak® bag) will be double contained in an additional Whirl-Pak® bag, Ziploc® bag, or plastic jar with a label identifying the collector, site and contents between the primary and secondary containers.

Double-contained samples will then be placed in ActionPacker® , cooler, or other leak-proof packaging (providing triple containment) capable of surviving a 1.2 m drop without rupture, and clearly labeled on the outside as to the PI and contents for future transport off the ship. This leak-proof packaging must have sufficient absorbent material to contain the entire fluid volume contained in the cumulative sample volume if a leak should occur.

Specimens will be preserved and stored in primary and secondary containment, as outlined above, as soon as possible upon return to the ship or field camp, and will remain in preservative in unopened secondary containment until return into a BSL-2 facility. All sample containers will be sealed and the outside surface of the leak-proof cooler or ActionPacker® will decontaminated with bleach solution prior to transport off the ship directly to the receiving laboratory.

Frozen (diseased sample):

Immediately upon returning to the base station, seawater remaining in Whirl-Pak® bags will be decanted into a container. This water will be processed by an MSD or similar sewage treatment process.

The specimens will not be removed from the Whirl-Pak® bag. Instead, the bag will be resealed, disinfected, clearly labeled, and placed in secondary containment such as Ziploc® freezer bags. The secondary containers will also be clearly labeled.

Samples will be stored frozen in the absence of any buffer aboard the research vessel. The work area will be decontaminated with a 10% bleach solution. After freezing, samples will not be removed, thawed, or opened while aboard the research vessel.

When it is time for transport from base station, the samples (still in secondary containment) will be placed in a cooler loaded with icepacks in order to keep them frozen. The cooler will then be sealed for transport. All coolers outside surfaces will be decontaminated with bleach solution prior to transport off the ship to the receiving laboratory.

B. Non-diseased metazoan or other multicellular samples:
Processing and storage containers are dependent on preservation method:

Chemically preserved (non-diseased sample):
Specimens will be chemically preserved in one of the following:

Ethyl alcohol
Isopropyl alcohol
Methyl alcohol
DMSO
DNA extraction buffer
Z-fix
Formaldehyde/formalin
Glutaraldehyde
Acetone
Bouin's fixative
Helly's fixative

Specimens will be double contained in plastic vials or bottles, glass bottles, Whirl-Pak® or Ziploc® bags; and placed in ActionPacker® or cooler. Blood or blood components should be contained using a primary container, absorbent material, a secondary container, and an outer container that is leak-proof.

Specimens will be preserved and stored prior to leaving collection location and will remain in preservative until return from the Monument.

Frozen (non-diseased sample):

Specimens (tissues or whole organisms) will be double contained in plastic bottles, glass bottles, or Whirl-Pak® bags; or larger plastic bags and placed in ActionPacker®, cooler, or other leak-proof packaging.

Dried (non-diseased sample):

Terrestrial plants or their parts may be pressed and dried and then transported in a closed container. . When appropriate, terrestrial arthropods may be pinned and dried and transported in appropriate closed containers. Coral skeletal samples (e.g., for taxonomic verification studies) will be soaked in commercial bleach solution to remove tissues, air dried, stored in Whirl-Pak® bags, and placed in ActionPacker®, or cooler. Remaining bleach solution should not be discarded, but stored in plastic or glass bottles, properly labeled as "waste".

Appendix F. Legal Documents

Proclamation,
Secretarial Order,
Submerged Lands Transfer Patent, and
Memorandum of Agreement between CNMI-DOI-DOC

Federal Register

Monday,
January 12, 2009

Part V

The President

Proclamation 8335—Establishment of the Marianas Trench Marine National Monument

Proclamation 8336—Establishment of the Pacific Remote Islands Marine National Monument

Proclamation 8337—Establishment of the Rose Atoll Marine National Monument

Federal Register
Vol. 74, No. 7
Monday, January 12, 2009

Presidential Documents

Title 3—

The President

Proclamation 8335 of January 6, 2009

Establishment of the Marianas Trench Marine National Monument

By the President of the United States of America

A Proclamation

Over approximately 480 nautical miles, the Mariana Archipelago encompasses the 14 islands of the United States Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands and the United States Territory of Guam that sit atop the Mariana Ridge in an area known as the Mariana Volcanic Arc. The Mariana Volcanic Arc is part of a subduction system in which the Pacific Plate plunges beneath the Philippine Sea Plate and into the Earth's mantle, creating the Mariana Trench. Six of the archipelago's islands have been volcanically active in historic times, and numerous seamounts along the Mariana Ridge are volcanically or hydrothermically active. The Mariana Trench is approximately 940 nautical miles long and 38 nautical miles wide within the United States Exclusive Economic Zone and contains the deepest known points in the global ocean.

The Mariana Volcanic Arc contains objects of scientific interest, including the largest active mud volcanoes on Earth. The Champagne vent, located at the Eifuku submarine volcano, produces almost pure liquid carbon dioxide. This phenomenon has only been observed at one other site in the world. The Sulfur Cauldron, a pool of liquid sulfur, is found at the Daikoku submarine volcano. The only other known location of molten sulfur is on Io, a moon of Jupiter. Unlike other reefs across the Pacific, the northernmost Mariana reefs provide unique volcanic habitats that support marine biological communities requiring basalt. Maug Crater represents one of only a handful of places on Earth where photosynthetic and chemosynthetic communities of life are known to come together.

The waters of the archipelago's northern islands are among the most biologically diverse in the Western Pacific and include the greatest diversity of seamount and hydrothermal vent life yet discovered. These volcanic islands are ringed by coral ecosystems with very high numbers of apex predators, including large numbers of sharks. They also contain one of the most diverse collections of stony corals in the Western Pacific. The northern islands and shoals in the archipelago have substantially higher large fish biomass, including apex predators, than the southern islands and Guam. The waters of Farallon de Pajaros (also known as Uracas), Maug, and Asuncion support some of the largest biomass of reef fishes in the Mariana Archipelago. These relatively pristine coral reef ecosystems are objects of scientific interest and essential to the long-term study of tropical marine ecosystems.

WHEREAS the submerged volcanic areas of the Mariana Ridge, the coral reef ecosystems of the waters surrounding the islands of Farallon de Pajaros, Maug, and Asuncion in the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands, and the Mariana Trench contain objects of scientific interest that are situated upon lands owned or controlled by the Government of the United States;

WHEREAS the United States continues to act in accordance with the balance of interests relating to traditional uses of the oceans recognizing freedom

of navigation and overflight and other internationally recognized lawful uses of the sea;

WHEREAS the islands, waters, and airspace of the Mariana Ridge are of particular importance to the national security of the United States;

WHEREAS section 2 of the Act of June 8, 1906 (34 Stat. 225, 16 U.S.C. 431) (the ''Antiquities Act'') authorizes the President, in his discretion, to declare by public proclamation historic landmarks, historic and prehistoric structures, and other objects of historic or scientific interest that are situated upon lands owned or controlled by the Government of the United States to be national monuments, and to reserve as a part thereof parcels of land, the limits of which in all cases shall be confined to the smallest area compatible with the proper care and management of the objects to be protected;

WHEREAS it is in the public interest to preserve the known volcanic areas of the Mariana Ridge, the marine environment around the islands of Farallon de Pajaros, Maug, and Asuncion in the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands, and the Mariana Trench for the care and management of the scientific objects therein:

NOW, THEREFORE, I, GEORGE W. BUSH, President of the United States of America, by the authority vested in me by section 2 of the Antiquities Act do proclaim that there are hereby set apart and reserved as the Marianas Trench Marine National Monument (the ''monument'' or ''marine national monument'') for the purpose of protecting the objects identified above, all lands and interests in lands owned or controlled by the Government of the United States within the boundaries described below and depicted on the accompanying map entitled ''Marianas Trench Marine National Monument'' attached to and forming a part of this proclamation. The monument includes the waters and submerged lands of the three northernmost Mariana Islands (the ''Islands Unit'') and only the submerged lands of designated volcanic sites (the ''Volcanic Unit'') and the Mariana Trench (the ''Trench Unit'') to the extent described as follows: The seaward boundaries of the Islands Unit of the monument extend to the lines of latitude and longitude depicted on the accompanying map, which lie approximately 50 nautical miles from the mean low water line of Farallon de Pajaros (Uracas), Maug, and Asuncion. The inland boundary of the Islands Unit of the monument is the mean low water line. The boundary of the Trench Unit of the monument extends from the northern limit of the Exclusive Economic Zone of the United States in the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands to the southern limit of the Exclusive Economic Zone of the United States in Guam approximately following the points of latitude and longitude identified on the accompanying map. The boundaries of the Volcanic Unit of the monument include a circle drawn with a 1 nautical mile radius centered on each of the volcanic features identified on the accompanying map and its legend. The Federal land and interests in land reserved consists of approximately 95,216 square miles of submerged lands and waters of the Mariana Archipelago, which is the smallest area compatible with the proper care and management of the objects to be protected.

Submerged lands that by legislation are subsequently granted by the United States to the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands but remain controlled by the United States under the Antiquities Act may remain part of the monument, for coordination of management with the Government of the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands. Any submerged lands and interests in submerged lands within the monument not owned or controlled by the United States shall be reserved as a part of the monument upon acquisition of title or control by the United States.

Management of the Marine National Monument

The Secretaries of Commerce, through the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, and the Interior, shall manage the monument pursuant to applicable legal authorities and in consultation with the Secretary of Defense.

The Secretary of the Interior shall have management responsibility for the monument, in consultation with the Secretary of Commerce, except that the Secretary of Commerce shall have the primary management responsibility, in consultation with the Secretary of the Interior, with respect to fishery-related activities regulated pursuant to the Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act (16 U.S.C. 1801 *et seq.*) and any other applicable authorities. The Secretaries of the Interior and Commerce shall not allow or permit any appropriation, injury, destruction, or removal of any feature of this monument except as provided for by this proclamation or as otherwise provided for by law.

The Secretaries of the Interior and Commerce shall take appropriate action pursuant to their respective authorities under the Antiquities Act and the Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act, and such other authorities as may be available to implement this proclamation, to regulate fisheries, and to ensure proper care and management of the monument.

Regulation of Scientific Exploration and Research

Subject to such terms and conditions as the Secretary deems necessary for the care and management of the objects of this monument, the Secretary of the Interior may permit scientific exploration and research within the monument, including incidental appropriation, injury, destruction, or removal of features of this monument for scientific study, and the Secretary of Commerce may permit fishing within the monument for scientific exploration and research purposes to the extent authorized by the Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act. The prohibitions required by this proclamation shall not restrict scientific exploration or research activities by or for the Secretaries, and nothing in this proclamation shall be construed to require a permit or other authorization from the other Secretary for their respective scientific activities.

Regulation of Fishing and Management of Fishery Resources

Within the Islands Unit of the monument, the Secretary of Commerce shall prohibit commercial fishing. Subject to such terms and conditions as the Secretary of Commerce deems necessary for the care and management of the objects of the Islands Unit, the Secretary, consistent with Executive Order 12962 of June 7, 1995, as amended, shall ensure that sustenance, recreational, and traditional indigenous fishing shall be managed as a sustainable activity consistent with other applicable law and after due consideration with respect to traditional indigenous fishing of any determination by the Government of the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands.

Monument Management Planning

The Secretaries of the Interior and Commerce shall, within 2 years of the date of this proclamation, prepare management plans within their respective authorities and promulgate implementing regulations that address any further specific actions necessary for the proper care and management of the objects identified in this proclamation. In developing and implementing any management plans and any management rules and regulations, the Secretaries shall designate and involve as cooperating agencies the agencies with jurisdiction or special expertise, including the Department of Defense, the Department of State, and other agencies through scoping in accordance with the National Environmental Policy Act (42 U.S.C. 4321 *et seq.*), its implementing regulations and with Executive Order 13352 of August 26, 2004, Facilitation of Cooperative Conservation, and shall treat as a cooperating agency the Government of the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands, consistent with these authorities. The monument management plans shall ensure that the monument will be administered in accordance with this proclamation, and shall, as appropriate to their respective authorities, provide for:

1. management of the Islands Unit of the monument, in consultation with the Government of the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands, including designation of specific roles and responsibilities and the means

of consultation on management decisions as appropriate, without affecting the respective authorities or jurisdictions of the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands or the Secretaries of the Interior or of Commerce;

2. public education programs and public outreach regarding the coral reef ecosystem and related marine resources and species of the monument and efforts to conserve them;

3. traditional access by indigenous persons, as identified by the Secretaries in consultation with the Government of the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands, for culturally significant subsistence, cultural and religious uses within the monument;

4. a program to assess and promote monument-related scientific exploration and research, tourism, and recreational and economic activities and opportunities in the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands;

5. a process to consider requests for recreational fishing permits in certain areas of the Islands Unit, based on an analysis of the likely effects of such fishing on the marine ecosystems of these areas, sound professional judgment that such fishing will not materially interfere with or detract from the fulfillment of the purposes of this proclamation, and the extent to which such recreational fishing shall be managed as a sustainable activity consistent with Executive Order 12962, as amended, and other applicable law; and

6. programs for monitoring and enforcement necessary to ensure that scientific exploration and research, tourism, and recreational and commercial activities do not degrade the monument's coral reef ecosystem or related marine resources or species or diminish the monument's natural character.

The management plans and their implementing regulations shall impose no restrictions on innocent passage in the territorial sea or otherwise restrict navigation, overflight, and other internationally recognized lawful uses of the sea, and shall incorporate the provisions of this proclamation regarding Armed Forces actions and compliance with international law.

This proclamation shall be applied in accordance with international law. No restrictions shall apply to or be enforced against a person who is not a citizen, national, or resident alien of the United States (including foreign flag vessels) unless in accordance with international law.

Nothing in this proclamation shall be deemed to diminish or enlarge the jurisdiction of the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands.

Advisory Council

The Secretaries of the Interior and Commerce, within 3 months of the date of this proclamation and after considering recommendations from the Governor of the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands, the Secretary of Defense, and the Secretary of Homeland Security, shall establish the Mariana Monument Advisory Council to provide advice and recommendations on the development of management plans and management of the monument. The Advisory Council shall consist of three officials of the Government of the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands and one representative each from the Department of Defense and the United States Coast Guard.

Members of the Advisory Council will be appointed for a term of 3 years by the Secretaries of the Interior and Commerce after nomination by the head of the pertinent executive branch agency or, with respect to the officials of the Government of the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands, by the Governor of the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands. The Advisory Council will adopt such procedures as it deems necessary to govern its activities. Each participating agency shall be responsible for the expenses of its representative and the Departments of the Interior and Commerce shall be equally responsible for the costs of the Advisory Council.

Emergencies, National Security, and Law Enforcement Activities

1. The prohibitions required by this proclamation shall not apply to activities necessary to respond to emergencies threatening life, property, or the environment, or to activities necessary for national security or law enforcement purposes.

2. Nothing in this proclamation shall limit agency actions to respond to emergencies posing an unacceptable threat to human health or safety or to the marine environment and admitting of no other feasible solution.

Armed Forces Actions

1. The prohibitions required by this proclamation shall not apply to activities and exercises of the Armed Forces (including those carried out by the United States Coast Guard).

2. The Armed Forces shall ensure, by the adoption of appropriate measures not impairing operations or operational capabilities, that its vessels and aircraft act in a manner consistent, so far as is reasonable and practicable, with this proclamation.

3. In the event of threatened or actual destruction of, loss of, or injury to a monument living marine resource resulting from an incident, including but not limited to spills and groundings, caused by a component of the Department of Defense or the United States Coast Guard, the cognizant component shall promptly coordinate with the Secretary of the Interior or Commerce, as appropriate, for the purpose of taking appropriate actions to respond to and mitigate any actual harm and, if possible, restore or replace the monument resource or quality.

4. Nothing in this proclamation or any regulation implementing it shall limit or otherwise affect the Armed Forces' discretion to use, maintain, improve, manage, or control any property under the administrative control of a Military Department or otherwise limit the availability of such property for military mission purposes.

This proclamation is not intended to, and does not, create any right or benefit, substantive or procedural, enforceable at law or in equity, by any party against the United States, its agencies, instrumentalities, or entities, its officers, employees, agents, or any other person.

All Federal lands and interests in lands within the boundaries of this monument are hereby withdrawn from all forms of entry, location, selection, sale, or leasing or other disposition under the public land laws, to the extent that those laws apply.

The establishment of this monument is subject to valid existing rights.

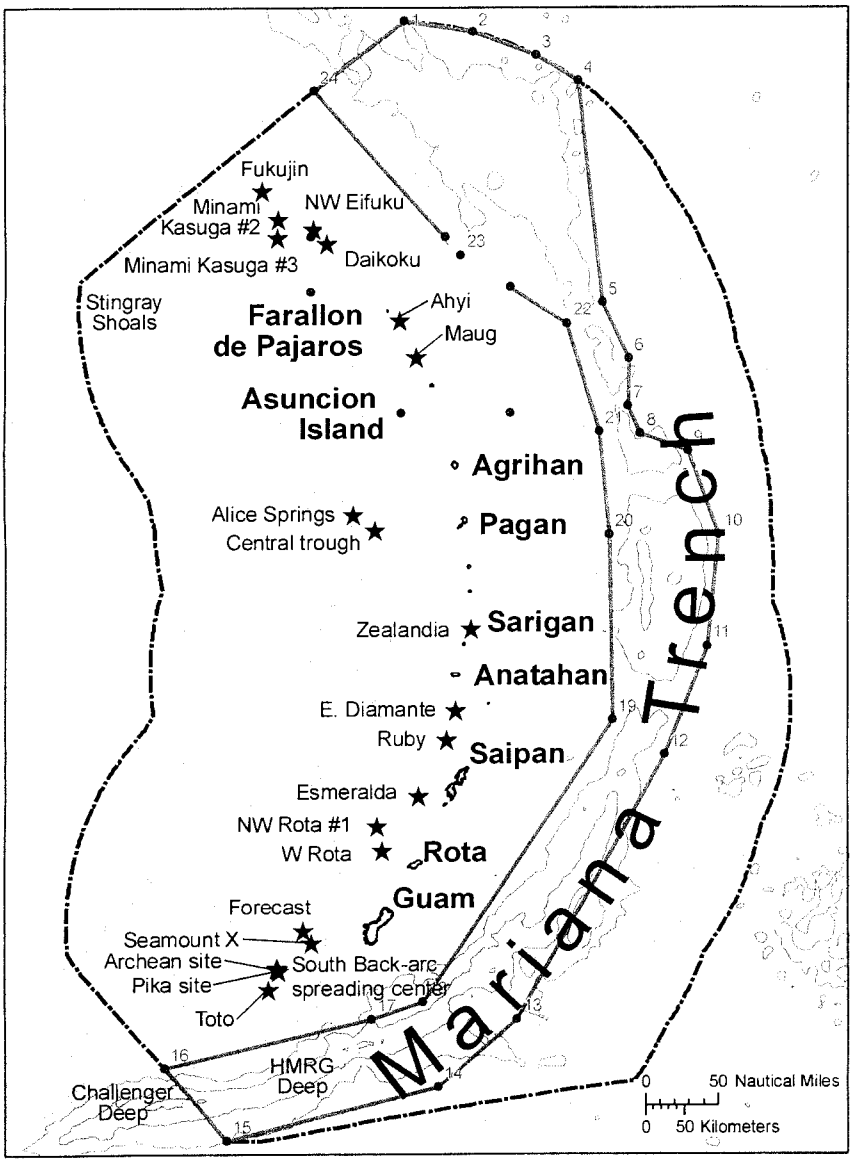
Nothing in this proclamation shall be deemed to revoke any existing withdrawal, reservation, or appropriation; however, the national monument shall be dominant over any other existing Federal withdrawal, reservation, or appropriation.

Warning is hereby given to all unauthorized persons not to appropriate, excavate, injure, destroy, or remove any feature of this monument and not to locate or settle upon any lands thereof.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, I have hereunto set my hand this sixth day of January, in the year of our Lord two thousand nine, and of the Independence of the United States of America the two hundred and thirty-third.

Billing code 3195–W9–P

Marianas Trench Marine National Monument



Trench Unit

Id	Longitude	Latitude
1	145° 5' 46" E	23° 53' 35" N
2	145° 52' 27.10" E	23° 45' 50.54" N
3	146° 36' 18.91" E	23° 29' 18.33" N
4	147° 5' 16.84" E	23° 11' 43.92" N
5	147° 22' 31.43" E	20° 38' 41.35" N
6	147° 40' 48.31" E	19° 59' 23.30" N
7	147° 39' 59.51" E	19° 27' 2.96" N
8	147° 48' 51.61" E	19° 8' 18.74" N
9	148° 21' 47.20" E	18° 56' 6.46" N
10	148° 42' 50.50" E	17° 58' 2.20" N
11	148° 34' 47.12" E	16° 40' 53.86" N
12	148° 5' 39.95" E	15° 25' 51.09" N
13	146° 23' 24.38" E	12° 21' 38.38" N
14	145° 28' 33.28" E	11° 34' 7.64" N
15	143° 3' 9" E	10° 57' 30" N
16	142° 19' 54.93" E	11° 47' 24.83" N
17	144° 42' 31.24" E	12° 21' 24.65" N
18	145° 17' 59.93" E	12° 33' 5.35" N
19	147° 29' 32.24" E	15° 49' 25.53" N
20	147° 27' 32.35" E	17° 57' 52.76" N
21	147° 20' 16.96" E	19° 9' 19.41" N
22	146° 57' 55.31" E	20° 23' 58.80" N
23	145° 44' 31.14" E	21° 11' 14.60" N
24	144° 5' 27.55" E	23° 2' 28.67" N

Islands Unit

Id	Longitude	Latitude
1	144° 1' 22.97" E	21° 23' 42.40" N
2	145° 33' 25.20" E	21° 23' 42.40" N
3	145° 44' 31.14" E	21° 11' 14.60" N
4	146° 18' 36.75" E	20° 49' 17.46" N
5	146° 18' 36.75" E	19° 22' 0.00" N
6	145° 3' 12.22" E	19° 22' 0.00" N
7	144° 1' 22.97" E	20° 45' 44.11" N

Vents Unit

Volcano	Longitude	Latitude
Fukujin	143° 27' 30" E	21° 56' 30' N
Minami Kasuga #2	143° 38' 30" E	21° 36' 36' N
NW Eifuku	144° 2' 36" E	21° 29' 15' N
Minami Kasuga #3	143° 38' 0" E	21° 24' 0" N
Daikoku	144° 11' 39" E	21° 19' 27" N
Ahyi	145° 1' 45" E	20° 26' 15" N
Maug	145° 13' 18" E	20° 1' 15" N
Alice Springs	144° 30' 0" E	18° 12' 0" N
Central trough	144° 45' 0" E	18° 1' 0" N
Zealandia	145° 51' 4" E	16° 52' 57" N
E. Diamante	145° 40' 47" E	15° 56' 31" N
Ruby	145° 34' 24" E	15° 36' 15" N
Esmeralda	145° 14' 45" E	14° 57' 30" N
NW Rota #1	144° 46' 30" E	14° 36' 0" N
W Rota	144° 50' 0" E	14° 19' 30" N
Forecast	143° 55' 12" E	13° 23' 30' N
Seamount X	144° 1' 0" E	13° 14' 48" N
South Backarc	143° 37' 8" E	12° 57' 12' N
Archaean site	143° 37' 55" E	12° 56' 23' N
Pika site	143° 38' 55" E	12° 55' 7" N
Toto	143° 31' 42" E	12° 42' 48' N

Sources:
NOAA Coral Reef Conservation Program
NMFS Coral Reef Ecosystem Division
NESDIS NGDC
NOS/CCMA Biogeography Branch
OAR Pacific Marine Environmental Lab

-10000 m
-8000 m
-6000 m
-4000 m
-2000 m

★ Active Hydrothermal Submarine Volcanoes
Trench Unit (59,732 nm²)
Islands Unit (12,388 nm²)
EEZ

[FR Doc. E9–496

Filed 1–9–09; 8:45 am]

BILLING CODE 4310–10–C

THE SECRETARY OF THE INTERIOR
WASHINGTON

ORDER NO. 3284

SIGNATURE DATE: January 16, 2009

Subject: Delegation of Management Responsibility for the Pacific Remote Islands Marine National Monument, Rose Atoll Marine National Monument and the Marianas Trench Marine National Monument

Sec. 1 **Background**. On January 6, 2009, the President issued Presidential Proclamations 8335, 8336 and 8337 (Proclamations), collectively establishing the Pacific Remote Islands Marine National Monument, Rose Atoll Marine National Monument, and the Marianas Trench National Monument (Monuments). While these Monuments include unique scientific and historic features that warrant their protection by the President under the Antiquities Act, (16 U.S.C. 431), they also include some of the most unique and diverse terrestrial and marine habitat on earth, supporting numerous species of corals, fish, shellfish, marine mammals, water birds, land birds, insects, and vegetation, many of which are threatened or endangered. In each of these Proclamations the President directed that the Secretary of the Interior (Secretary) assume specific management responsibilities at each monument.

Within the boundaries of the Monuments, the United States Fish and Wildlife Service (Service) currently administers National Wildlife Refuges at Baker, Howland, and Jarvis Islands; Palmyra Atoll; Kingman Reef; Johnston Atoll; and Rose Atoll.

Sec. 2 **Purpose**. The purpose of this Order is to delegate the Secretary's management responsibilities for the Monuments established under the three Proclamations cited in Section 1 to the Director of the Service.

Sec. 3 **Authority**. This Order is issued pursuant to the following authorities:

a. Presidential Proclamations 8335, 8336, and 8337, dated January 6, 2009;

b. Section 2 of Reorganization Plan No. 3 of 1950 (64 Stat. 1262), as amended;

c. The Fish and Wildlife Act of 1956, 16 U.S.C. 742a;

d. The National Wildlife Refuge System Administration Act of 1966, as amended, 16 U.S.C. 668dd; and

e. 16 U.S.C. 460k-3.

Sec. 4 **Delegation and Administration**.

a. General.

(1) The responsibilities given the Secretary of the Interior by the President over the emergent and submerged lands and waters of the Monuments are hereby delegated through the Assistant Secretary for Fish and Wildlife and Parks (Assistant Secretary) to the Director of the Service, to be administered subject to the specific provisions of this section as set out below.

(2) For each of the areas subject to this delegation, the Director of the Service shall provide for the proper care and management of the monument, including all objects of scientific and historic interest therein; the conservation of fish and wildlife; and the development of programs to assess and promote national and international monument-related scientific exploration and research.

(3) In exercising management authority over these areas of the Monuments, the Director of the Service shall consult, as appropriate, with the National Park Service, the U.S. Geological Survey, and other appropriate bureaus of the Department, to draw upon their respective expertise with respect to marine science, and encourage these bureaus to undertake coordinated research and educational projects therein.

b. Pacific Remote Islands Marine National Monument.

(1) Howland Island, Baker Island and Jarvis Island Units. The Director shall manage the emergent and submerged lands and waters out to 50 nautical miles from the mean low water lines of Howland, Baker, and Jarvis Islands as units of the Pacific Remote Islands Marine National Monument. This delegation extends the current boundary of the existing wildlife refuge at each of these islands to 12 nautical miles from the respective mean low water line of each island. Those areas beyond 12 nautical miles from the mean low water line for which NOAA has primary management responsibility for fishery-related activities are not included in the National Wildlife Refuge System.

(2) Palmyra Atoll Unit. The Director shall manage the emergent and submerged lands and waters out to 50 nautical miles from the mean low water line at Palmyra Atoll as a unit of the Pacific Remote Islands Marine National Monument, except that those areas subject to the exclusions defined in Secretary's Order 3224 of January 18, 2001, shall remain in the Office of Insular Affairs, subject to the terms of that Order. The Director shall continue to manage Palmyra Atoll, including the area out to 12 nautical miles from such mean low water line, as a National Wildlife Refuge, subject to Secretary's Order 3224. Those areas beyond 12 nautical miles from such mean low water line for which NOAA has primary management responsibility for fishery-related activities are not included in the National Wildlife Refuge System.

(3) Kingman Reef Unit. The Director shall manage the emergent and submerged lands and waters out to 50 nautical miles from the mean low water line at Kingman Reef as a unit of the Pacific Remote Islands Marine National Monument. The Director shall continue to manage Kingman Reef, including the area out to 12 nautical miles from such mean low water line, as a National Wildlife Refuge, subject to the provisions of Secretary's Order 3223 of January 18, 2001. Those areas beyond 12 nautical miles from such mean low water line for which NOAA has primary management responsibility for fishery-related activities are not included in the National Wildlife Refuge System.

(4) Johnston Atoll Unit. The Director shall manage the emergent and submerged lands and waters out to 50 nautical miles from the mean low water line at Johnston Atoll as a unit of the Pacific Remote Islands Marine National Monument. This delegation extends the current boundary of the existing wildlife refuge at Johnston Atoll to include the area out to 12 nautical miles from such mean low water line. However, those portions of the emergent lands at Johnston Atoll that are currently under the administrative jurisdiction of the Department of the Air Force will continue to be managed by the Air Force until such administrative jurisdiction is terminated, at which time those emergent lands shall be administered as part of the expanded wildlife refuge. Those areas beyond 12 nautical miles from such mean low water line for which NOAA has primary management responsibility for fishery-related activities are not included in the National Wildlife Refuge System.

(5) Wake Island Unit. The Director shall manage the emergent and submerged lands and waters out to 50 nautical miles from the mean low water line at Wake Island as a unit of the Pacific Remote Islands Marine National Monument. The Director shall manage the emergent and submerged lands and waters of Wake Island out to 12 nautical miles from such mean low water lines as a unit of the National Wildlife Refuge System; except in accordance with Proclamation No. 8336, the Director shall not commence management of the emergent lands at Wake Island, and the Department of the Air Force shall continue to manage such emergent lands, according to the terms and conditions of the Agreement between the Secretary of the Air Force and the Secretary of the Interior, unless and until such agreement is terminated. Those areas beyond 12 nautical miles from such mean low water line for which NOAA has primary management responsibility for fishery-related activities are not included in the National Wildlife Refuge System.

c. Rose Atoll Marine National Monument. The Director shall manage the emergent and submerged lands and waters out to 50 nautical miles from the mean low water line at Rose Atoll as the Rose Atoll Marine National Monument. The Director shall continue to manage the existing wildlife refuge at Rose Atoll within the boundaries set forth in the Notice of Establishment, 71 F.R. 13183 (April 5, 1974). Those areas beyond such mean low water line for which NOAA has primary management responsibility for fishery-related activities are not included in the National Wildlife Refuge System.

d. The Marianas Trench Marine National Monument. The Director shall manage the "Trench Unit" and the "Volcanic Unit" of the Marianas Trench Marine National Monument as units of the National Wildlife Refuge System, subject to the provisions of the proclamation establishing this Monument. The Director shall exercise all management responsibility given to the Secretary of the Interior for the "Island Unit" of the Marianas Trench Marine National Monument, although no part of the "Island Unit" is included as a unit of the National Wildlife Refuge System.

Sec. 5 **Effective Date**. This Order is effective immediately. Its provisions shall be converted to the Departmental Manual.

/s/ DIRK KEMPTHORNE
Secretary of the Interior

SO#3284 01/16/09

The United States of America
To all to whom these presents shall come, Greeting:

WHEREAS, the submerged lands surrounding the islands of Farallon de Pajaros (Uracas), Maug, and Asuncion in the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands (CNMI), which include lands permanently or periodically covered by tidal waters up to but not above the line of mean low tide and seaward to a line three geographical miles distant from the coastlines of each of these islands, which were included in the Marianas Trench Marine National Monument (Monument), established by Presidential Proclamation 8335 of January 6, 2009, pursuant to Section 2 of the Antiquities Act of June 8, 1906 (now codified at 54 U.S.C. 320301);

WHEREAS, the CNMI Constitution recognizes that the islands of Maug, Uracas, Asuncion, Guguan, and other islands specified by law shall be maintained as uninhabited places and used only for the preservation and protection of natural resources, including but not limited to bird, wildlife, and plant species;

WHEREAS, pursuant to Public Law 93-435, as amended by Public Law 113-34 (taken together, the Act), "the submerged lands adjacent to the islands of Farallon de Pajaros (Uracas), Maug, and Asuncion permanently covered by tidal waters up to the mean low water line and extending three geographical miles seaward from the mean high tide line" (Excepted Lands) were excepted from conveyance to CNMI by Presidential Proclamation 9077 (Proclamation), of January 15, 2014, by virtue of the authority vested in the President of the United States by Section 1(b)(vii) of the Act;

WHEREAS, Proclamation 9077 included a provision allowing the Secretary of the Interior to subsequently transfer the Excepted Lands to CNMI under Section 1(b) of the Act, at such time as the Secretary of the Interior, the Secretary of Commerce, and the Government of CNMI have entered into an agreement for the coordination of management that ensures the protection of the Monument within the area to be conveyed (Agreement), and that such Agreement has now been entered into;

NOW THEREFORE, KNOW YE, that the UNITED STATES, in consideration of the premises, and in conformity with said Acts and Presidential Proclamations, HAS GIVEN AND GRANTED, and by these presents DOES GIVE AND GRANT unto the Government of CNMI, the Excepted Lands; TO HAVE AND TO HOLD the same, together with all the rights, privileges, immunities, and appurtenances, of whatsoever nature, thereunto belonging, unto the same Government of CNMI, its successors and assigns, forever; and,

EXCEPTING AND RESERVING TO THE UNITED STATES:
An Easement in perpetuity for the United States to ensure that the Excepted Lands, and the resources associated with such lands and as set forth herein, herewith conveyed to the Government of CNMI are forever managed and maintained for the protection of the Monument or other Federal conservation status, unless such conservation status is withdrawn hereafter by an Act of Congress. The Grantor and Grantee (Parties) shall be bound by the terms of said Reserved Easement in that:

1. The Excepted Lands and associated natural resources shall be managed and maintained by the Government of CNMI consistent with the Monument or other Federal conservation status of the adjacent Federal submerged lands. In doing so, the Government of the CNMI shall not authorize or allow commercial fishing or development on such lands or in the navigable waters overlaying such lands.

2. Nothing in this Easement shall be construed to limit the rights of (a) the Government of CNMI to manage sustenance, recreational, and traditional indigenous fishing in such area as a sustainable activity; (b) the Government of CNMI to conduct or to authorize third parties to undertake bona fide scientific research in such area; (c) the Government of CNMI and the Departments of the Interior and Commerce for coordinated management as set forth in the Agreement or any successor to the Agreement then in effect; or (d) the reserved rights of the United States set forth in the Act. In addition, nothing in this Easement shall be construed or applied to require the Government of CNMI to manage or maintain a more protective conservation regime with respect to the Excepted Lands and associated natural resources than that regime authorized by applicable Federal law for the adjacent Federal submerged lands and associated natural resources.

3. After advance notice to the Government of CNMI, persons duly authorized by the Secretary of the Interior or the Secretary of Commerce shall be allowed reasonable access to the area covered by this easement to ensure compliance with its terms.

4. If a dispute arises between the Parties concerning the interpretation or operation of this Reserved Easement, either Party may request mediation by providing the other Party with written notice of such request. Neither Party is obligated to enter mediation. Nevertheless, if the Parties mutually agree to enter mediation, the Parties shall attempt to agree upon a single mediator, and the cost of mediation shall be borne by the United States Government, subject to the availability of funds. Any efforts at mediation shall conclude within ninety (90) days after the written notice, unless the Parties mutually agree to extend the time period for the mediation.

5. The United States expressly reserves the right to enforce the provisions of this Reserved Easement in any court of competent jurisdiction.

IN TESTIMONY WHEREOF, the undersigned Secretary of the Interior, in the name of the United States, caused these letters to be made Patent, and the Seal of the Department to be hereunto affixed.

GIVEN under my hand, in the CITY OF WASHINGTON, DISTRICT OF COLUMBIA the 29 day of November in the year of our Lord two thousand and sixteen and of the Independence of the United States the two hundred and thirty-eighth.

By Sally Jewell.

IN TESTIMONY WHEREOF, the undersigned Governor of the Northern Mariana Islands, in the name of the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands, accepts these letters to be made Patent.

GIVEN under my hand, on the ISLAND OF SAIPAN, COMMONWEALTH OF THE NORTHERN MARIANA ISLANDS the 21st day of December in the year of our Lord two thousand and sixteen.

By_____.

Patent Number 2016-1

MEMORANDUM OF AGREEMENT
between
the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands and
the U.S. Department of Commerce and
the U.S. Department of the Interior
for
Coordination of the Management of the
Marianas Trench Marine National Monument's Submerged Lands Located
Adjacent to the Islands of Farallon De Pajaros, Maug, and Asuncion

This Memorandum of Agreement ("MOA") is entered into by and between the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands ("the CNMI" or "Commonwealth") Government, the United States Department of Commerce, and the United States Department of the Interior, to establish an agreement for the coordination of management, consistent with Proclamations 8335 and 9077, of submerged lands located adjacent to the islands of Farallon de Pajaros, Maug, and Asuncion, that the United States intends to convey to the CNMI Government.

RECITALS

WHEREAS, on January 6, 2009, Proclamation 8335 established the Marianas Trench Marine National Monument (Monument) (Figures 1-5) for the purpose of protecting the submerged volcanic areas of the Mariana Ridge; the marine environment around the islands of Farallon de Pajaros (Uracas), Maug, and Asuncion in the CNMI; and the Mariana Trench; and

WHEREAS, Proclamation 8335 sets forth the purposes and management regime for the Monument, and restricts and prohibits certain activities in the Monument; and

WHEREAS, Proclamation 8335 directs the Secretary of Commerce, through the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA), and the Secretary of the Interior, to manage the Monument pursuant to applicable legal authorities and in consultation with the Secretary of Defense; and

WHEREAS, the Secretary of the Interior has delegated management authority for the Monument to the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS); and

WHEREAS, Proclamation 8335 directs the Secretaries of Commerce and the Interior to prepare management plans for the proper care and management of the objects identified in the Proclamation and to treat the CNMI Government as a cooperating agency; and

WHEREAS, on September 18, 2013, by Public Law 113-34, Congress enacted an amendment to Public Law 93-435, the Territorial Submerged Lands Act of 1974, as amended (referred to hereafter as "TSLA"), to convey to the CNMI Government certain submerged lands and associated mineral rights permanently or periodically covered by tidal waters up to but not above the line of mean high tide, located seaward to a line three geographical miles distant from the coastlines of the CNMI; and

WHEREAS, on January 15, 2014, pursuant to section 1(b)(vii) of the TSLA, Proclamation 9077 excepted from the conveyance certain submerged lands adjacent to the islands of Farallon de Pajaros, Maug, and Asuncion (the "Northern Islands Submerged Lands"); and

WHEREAS, on January 16, 2014, and March 13, 2014, respectively, the United States conveyed to the CNMI (1) by operation of law, the submerged lands identified in the Act and not excepted by Proclamation 9077, and (2) by patent, the mineral rights associated with those submerged lands; and

WHEREAS, Proclamation 9077 also recognized the authority of the Secretary of the Interior under the TSLA to convey the excepted lands to CNMI when the Secretaries of Commerce and the Interior, and the CNMI Government entered into an MOA for coordination of management that ensures the protection of the Monument within the Northern Islands Submerged Lands; and

NOW, THEREFORE, in view of the above recitals, the Government of the Commonwealth, the Department of Commerce, and the Department of the Interior (the "Signatories") enter into this MOA to establish the terms and conditions for the coordination of management of the Northern Islands Submerged Lands and subsequent to its execution, the Secretary of the Interior will continue the process to convey the Northern Islands Submerged Lands and associated mineral rights to the CNMI. This MOA shall be subject to the following terms and conditions.

I. Purpose, Scope, Authorities, and Guiding Principles

1.1 Purpose

Recognizing the commitment herein of the CNMI Government to manage the conveyed submerged lands consistent with the purposes and requirements of Proclamations 8335 and 9077, the purpose of this MOA is to provide a cooperative framework for the coordination of resource management to ensure the long-term, comprehensive conservation and protection of the Monument within the Northern Islands Submerged Lands. This MOA establishes functional relationships, processes, and general terms and conditions under which the Signatories will cooperate to effectively coordinate management of the Monument within the Northern Islands Submerged Lands.

1.2 Scope

The areas subject to this MOA are those within the boundary of the Northern Islands Submerged Lands—the submerged lands and associated waters adjacent to the islands of Farallon de Pajaros (Uracas), Maug, and Asuncion, identified in Proclamation 9077—which are part of the Islands Unit of the Monument (Figure 2). The boundaries of the Northern Islands Submerged Lands are contained in the Patent and shown in the attached maps (Figures 3-5). The boundaries of the Monument are described in Proclamation 8335 and shown in Figure 1.

1.3 Authorities

The Signatories are authorized to enter into and implement this MOA under various authorities including the following:

Antiquities Act, 54 USC 320301 et seq;

The Covenant to Establish a Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands in Political Union with the United States of America, 48 U.S.C. § 1801 note;

The Commonwealth Constitution, Articles III and XIV;

Coastal Zone Management Act, 16 U.S.C. § 1451, et seq.;

Coral Reef Conservation Act, 16 U.S.C. § 6401, et seq.;

Endangered Species Act, 16 U.S.C. § 1531 et seq.;

Fish and Wildlife Act, 16 U.S.C. § 742;

Fish and Wildlife Coordination Act, 16 U.S.C. § 661 et seq.;

Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act, 16 U.S.C. §1801 et seq.;

Marine Mammal Protection Act, 16 U.S.C. § 1361, et seq.;

National Wildlife Refuge System Administration Act of 1966, as amended, 16 U.S.C. §§ 688dd-ee;

Proclamation 9077 (January 15, 2014), 79 Fed. Reg. 3479 (January 21, 2014);

Proclamation 8335 (January 6, 2009), 74 Fed. Reg. 1557 (January 12, 2009);

Refuge Recreation Act, 16 U.S.C. § 460k-3; and

Territorial Submerged Lands Act of 1974, as amended, 48 U.S.C. § 1705 et seq.

1.4 Guiding Principles

Upon conveyance by the United States of the Northern Islands Submerged Lands to the CNMI Government, the USFWS and NOAA agree to continue management responsibilities for the conveyed submerged lands, in consultation with the CNMI Government, until such time that the CNMI Government notifies in writing the other signatories of its intent to assume all or a portion of the management responsibilities of the conveyed submerged lands, and the effective date of such assumption. During this interim period, USFWS and NOAA will continue to consult with the CNMI Government on management of the conveyed submerged lands.

Upon assuming such management responsibilities, the CNMI Government agrees to manage the Northern Islands Submerged Lands, in coordination with NOAA and FWS, consistent with the purposes and requirements of Proclamations 8335 and 9077, the Commonwealth Constitution, other applicable laws, and provisions of the Patent, and, in a manner that:

A. Preserves and protects natural resources, including, but not limited to bird, wildlife, and plant species as required by Section 2 of Article XIV of the Commonwealth Constitution;

B. Recognizes that the Monument is a place of maritime cultural significance for the Chamorro and Carolinian residents with cultural connections throughout the Mariana Islands by managing, to the extent compatible with the conservation and management goals of Proclamation 8335, the Monument resources within the Northern Islands Submerged Lands in a manner that honors the unique heritage of the indigenous cultures;

C. Provides protections for resources when there is uncertainty regarding impacts of activities that are to be permitted in the Northern Islands Submerged Lands;

D. Prohibits the appropriation, injury, destruction, or removal of any Monument object or resource within the Northern Islands Submerged Lands area, except as may be allowed under Proclamation 8335;

E. Permits scientific exploration and research within the Monument in a manner consistent with Proclamation 8335;

F. Permits sustenance, recreational, and traditional indigenous fishing in a sustainable fashion consistent with Proclamation 8335 and applicable laws;

G. Prohibits commercial fishing and mineral extraction;

H. Adopts best practices for an adaptive management approach that incorporates conservation management strategies, scientific principles, and traditional ecological knowledge;

I. Considers scientific exploration, research advances, and technology to learn about and develop greater understanding of the Monument objects and resources;

J. Enhances public appreciation of the unique character and environment of the Monument, and promotes conservation management of these areas through outreach and education activities;

K. Establishes effective monitoring of and enforcement for permitted activities;

L. Allows for innocent passage in the Northern Islands Submerged Lands and does not otherwise restrict navigation, overflight, and other internationally recognized lawful uses of the sea; and

M. Maintains consistency with provisions of Proclamation 8335 regarding actions of the Armed Forces and international law and the provisions of Sec. 2 of the TSLA (48 U.S.C. 1706).

II. Management Officials

2.1 The Government of the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands

The CNMI Government's management functions under this MOA shall be carried out by designees from: (1) the Department of Land and Natural Resources; and (2) the Bureau of Environmental and Coastal Quality.

2.2 The U.S. Department of Commerce

The Department of Commerce's management functions under this MOA shall be carried out by a designee from NOAA's National Marine Fisheries Service, Pacific Islands Regional Office.

2.3 The U.S. Department of the Interior

The Department of the Interior's management functions under this MOA shall be carried out by a designee from the USFWS, Pacific Islands Refuges and Monuments Office.

2.4. Management Officials

The designees under sections 2.1, 2.2, and 2.3 shall be collectively referred to as the "Management Officials."

III. Coordination of Management

3.1 General Coordination of Management

A. The Signatories will coordinate management of the Northern Islands Submerged Lands in accordance with the Guiding Principles set forth in Section 1.4, applicable legal authorities, and this article. The Parties to this MOA agree to utilize their respective authorities to carry out the purposes and requirements of this MOA.

B. Management Officials will ensure that the jurisdictional responsibilities of each Signatory are respected and maintained, while endeavoring to (1) reduce duplication of effort; (2) streamline processes for public use and involvement when it is advantageous to the protection of Monument objects and resources and logistically feasible; and (3) capitalize upon the authorities, strengths, and capabilities of the Signatories' programs to further the conservation management of the Monument as directed by Proclamation 8335.

C. Each Management Official will endeavor to provide reasonable advance notice to the other Management Officials prior to conducting activities supporting Monument purposes in the Northern Islands Submerged Lands area. Nothing in this MOA shall be construed to alter, diminish, or enlarge any rights, powers of regulation, or control over lands and navigable waters reserved to the United States by the Constitution or Federal law. To the maximum extent practicable, NOAA and USFWS will also provide the CNMI Government with reasonable notice and an opportunity to participate in all scientific research either agency conducts in the Northern Islands Submerged Lands area. At the conclusion of such research, Management Officials will share all data to the extent allowed by law.

D. As directed by Proclamation 8335, NOAA and USFWS shall prepare a Monument Management Plan (MMP) for the proper care and management of the objects identified in the Proclamation and invite the CNMI Government to participate as a cooperating agency in developing the plan.

3.2 Monument Management Plan ("MMP")

A. The Secretaries of Commerce and the Interior will incorporate into the MMP provisions for coordination of management in protecting the coral reef ecosystems and related marine, cultural and historic resources, and objects of historic or scientific interest of the Monument.

B. Consistent with Proclamation 8335, the MMP currently in preparation includes provisions addressing:

(1) Management of the Islands Unit, in consultation with the CNMI, including designation of specific roles and responsibilities and the means for consultations on management decisions as appropriate, consistent with the respective authorities of the CNMI Government and Secretaries of Commerce and the Interior;

(2) Public education and outreach programs about coral reef ecosystems and other Monument resources and species, and efforts to conserve them;

(3) Traditional access by indigenous persons for culturally significant subsistence, cultural and religious purposes;

(4) A program to assess and promote Monument-related scientific exploration and research, tourism, and recreational and economic activities and opportunities in the CNMI;

(5) A mechanism to permit recreational fishing as a sustainable activity consistent with the purposes, terms and objectives of Proclamation 8335, upon consideration of the best scientific information available; and

(6) Programs for monitoring and enforcement to ensure scientific exploration and research, tourism, and recreational and economic activities do not degrade Monument coral reef ecosystems or related marine resources and species, or diminish the Monument's natural character.

3.3 Dispute Resolution

The Management Officials shall cooperate with each other in good faith and make reasonable efforts to carry out the provisions of this MOA. The Management Officials agree to respect the authorities, jurisdictions, and views of the respective parties and to make all efforts to keep an open mind when a dispute arises. If a dispute arises as to whether a proposed action is consistent with this MOA, Management Officials will first have an informal discussion of the matter with particular focus on the Guiding Principles of this MOA. If the Management Officials cannot reach a resolution, the following procedure shall apply.

A. The proponent of the proposed action shall prepare a written "opening statement" on the proposed action and provide a copy of the statement to the other Management Officials. The opening statement shall specifically address whether the proposed action is consistent with Proclamations 8335 and 9077, CNMI sovereignty, the MMP, the CSLMP, and any other relevant authority, laws and regulations; any relevant economic, cultural, historical, or recreational factors that will be affected by the proposed action; and the impact the proposed action may have on conservation efforts.

B. If Management Officials concur with the opening statement then the proponent may proceed with the proposed action.

C. If a Management Official does not concur with the opening statement or the proposed action in general, the official shall prepare a written "opposition statement" and provide a copy of it to the other Management Officials within 7 days of receipt of the

opening statement. The opposition statement shall specifically address whether the proposed action is inconsistent with Proclamations 8335 or 9077, CNMI sovereignty, the MMP, the CSLMP, and any other relevant authority, laws and regulations; any relevant economic, cultural, historical, or recreational factors that would be affected by the proposed action; and the impact the proposed action may have on conservation efforts.

D. The Management Officials shall convene a special meeting within 7 days of receipt of the opposition statement(s) to discuss the proposed action. The Management Officials shall consider Proclamations 8335 and 9077 and any other relevant authority, laws and regulations, the MMP, and the CSLMP; the economic, cultural, historical, and recreational factors that will be affected by the proposed action; and the impact the proposed action may have on conservation efforts and furthering the goals and objectives of Proclamation 8335. If they cannot agree, the respective management officials will forward the dispute to the NOAA Administrator, Director of the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, and the Governor of CNMI. If these officials are unable to promptly reach a unanimous decision, the agencies will make their decisions, which will be the final agency action for purposes of the issue in dispute.

E. A Management Official or Signatory may call for a mutually agreed upon third party to be brought in at any stage of the dispute resolution process to help facilitate an agreement. The cost of mediation shall be shared equally between the Secretary of Commerce, the Secretary of the Interior, and the CNMI Government.

F. Nothing in this section or in this MOA in general, shall constitute authority for any proponent to undertake activities in the Northern Islands Submerged Lands that are inconsistent with Proclamations 8335 and 9077, any Patent issued by the Secretary of the Interior in furtherance of this MOA, or applicable law and regulations.

IV. Conveyance of Submerged Lands

4.1 Upon execution of this MOA, the Secretary of the Interior will continue the process provided under sections 1(b) and (c) of the TSLA to transfer the Northern Islands Submerged Lands (as described above) and associated mineral rights to the CNMI Government. The transfer shall be accomplished by the execution of a Patent.

V. Period of MOA, Modification, or Termination

5.1 Term

The MOA is effective when signed by all of the Signatories and shall remain in effect unless terminated under section 5.3.

5.2 Review and Modification

The Signatories may modify this MOA by written amendment with the concurrence of all Signatories. The Signatories shall review the MOA every 10 years and make amendments as needed to promote the conservation of the Northern Islands Submerged Lands, consistent with Proclamation 8335.

5.3 Termination

Any Party may terminate this MOA after providing 30-day advance written notice to the other Parties. Termination of this MOA shall not affect the enforcement of rights in, access to, or use of the Northern Islands Submerged Lands, including as provided in any Patent issued by the Secretary of the Interior pursuant to the TSLA.

VI. General Conditions

6.1 Consistent with Federal and CNMI Laws

A. Nothing in this MOA shall be construed to supersede or otherwise diminish authorities vested in the Signatories under applicable Federal laws or the laws of the CNMI Government. Any such conflicting term in this MOA shall be given no effect by the Signatories, but the remainder of the MOA shall remain in effect.

B. If a term is nullified due to conflict with law, the Signatories shall immediately review the MOA and determine whether action (including, but not limited to, an amendment) is necessary to address the nullification of the term.

6.2 No Financial Obligation

A. This MOA defines in general terms the basis on which the Signatories will cooperate, and as such, does not constitute a financial obligation or an authorization for particular expenditures. Expenditures of funds, human resources and technical expertise are intended to be provided by each signatory to the extent that their participation is authorized by law and resources are available.

B. Nothing in this MOA is intended to require the expenditure of funds in excess or advance of applicable appropriations. This MOA is not a fiscal or funds obligation document. Any activities involving reimbursement or contribution of funds between Signatories to the MOA will be handled in accordance with applicable laws, regulations, and procedures.

6.3 Counterparts

This MOA may be executed in any number of counterparts, each of which will be deemed an original, but all of which when taken together will constitute one and the same instrument. The signature page of any counterpart may be detached therefrom without impairing the legal effect of the signature(s) thereon, provided such signature page is attached to any other counterpart identical thereto except having additional signature pages executed by other parties to this MOA attached thereto.

VII. CNMI Legal Certification

I hereby certify that this agreement has been reviewed and approved as to form and legal capacity for the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands.

Attorney General, Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands — Date: 9-23-16

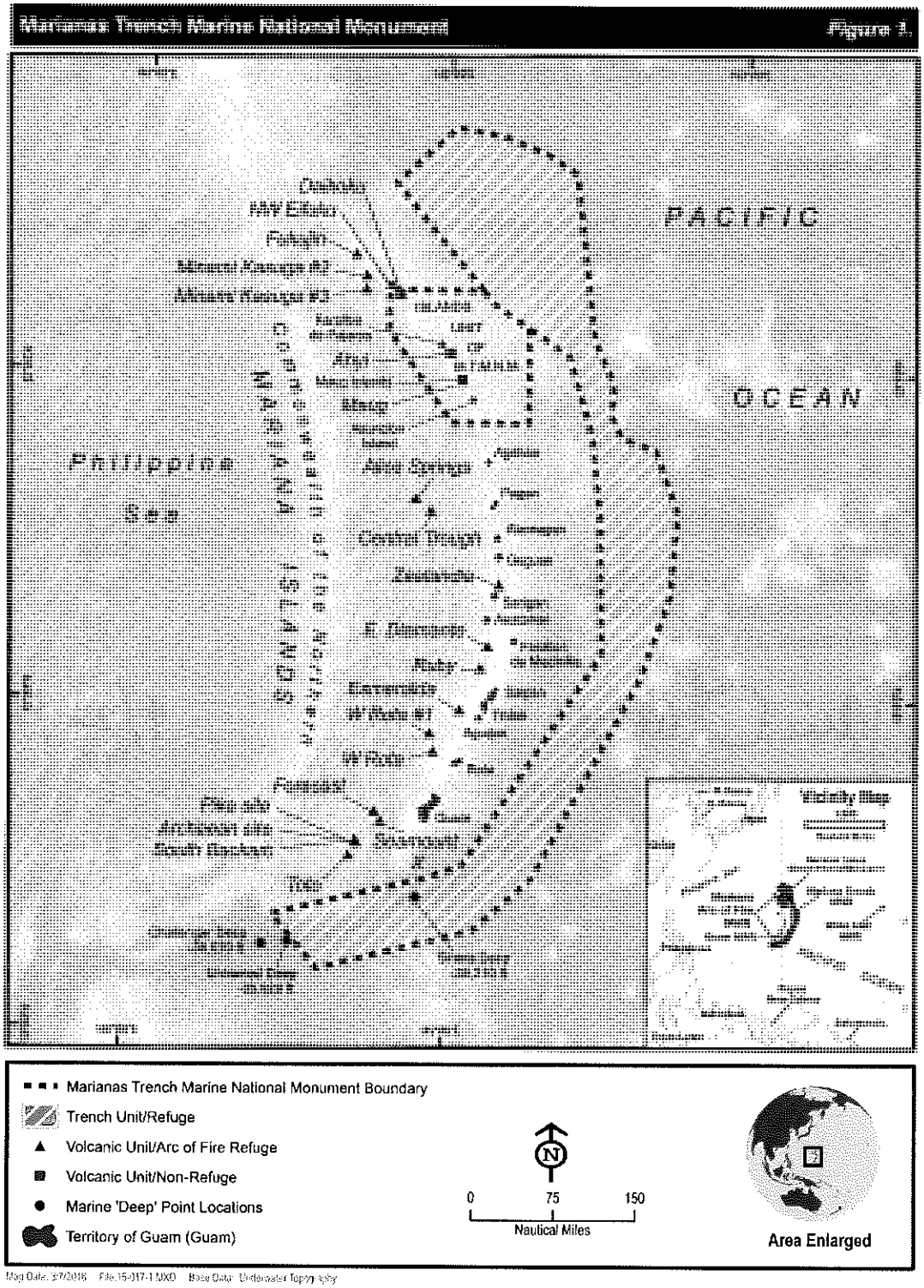
VIII. Co-signers

By signing below, each Party's representative is affirming his or her authorization to bind that Party to the terms and conditions of this MOA.

Ralph Deleon Guerrero Torres — Date: 9/22/16
Governor
Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands

Eileen Sobeck — Date: 9/22/2016
Assistant Administrator for Fisheries
National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration
U.S. Department of Commerce

Lori Faeth — Date: 9/22/16
Deputy Assistant Secretary for Policy and International Affairs
U.S. Department of the Interior

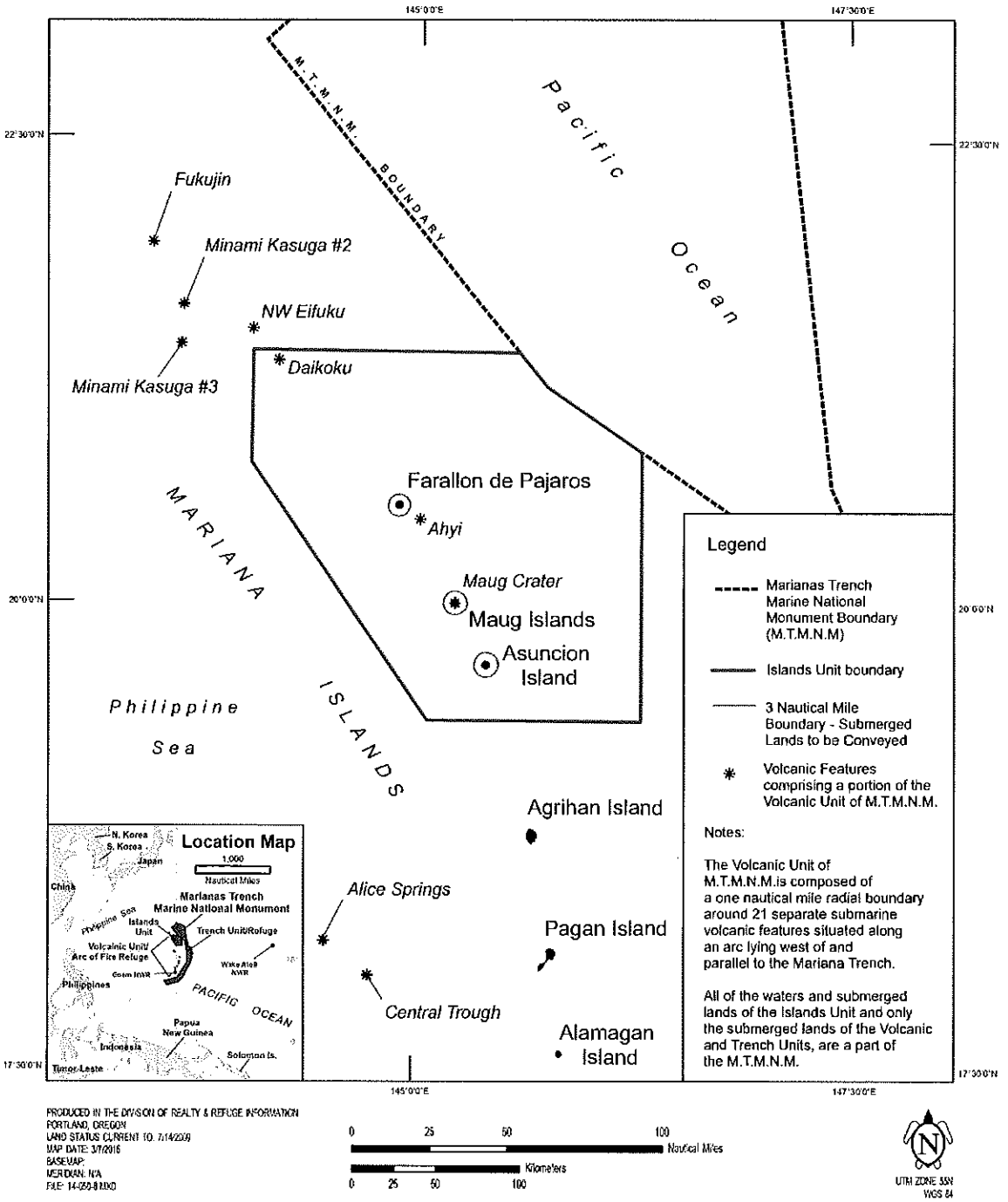

Marianas Trench Marine National Monument
Figure 1.
PACIFIC
OCEAN
Philippine
Sea
Marianas Trench Marine National Monument Boundary
Trench Unit/Refuge
Volcanic Unit/Arc of Fire Refuge
Volcanic Unit/Non-Refuge
Marine 'Deep' Point Locations
Territory of Guam (Guam)
0
75
150
Nautical Miles
Area Enlarged

U.S. Fish & Wildlife Service

Proposed - Northern Islands Submerged Lands Conveyance

Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands

Figure 2.
Vicinity Map

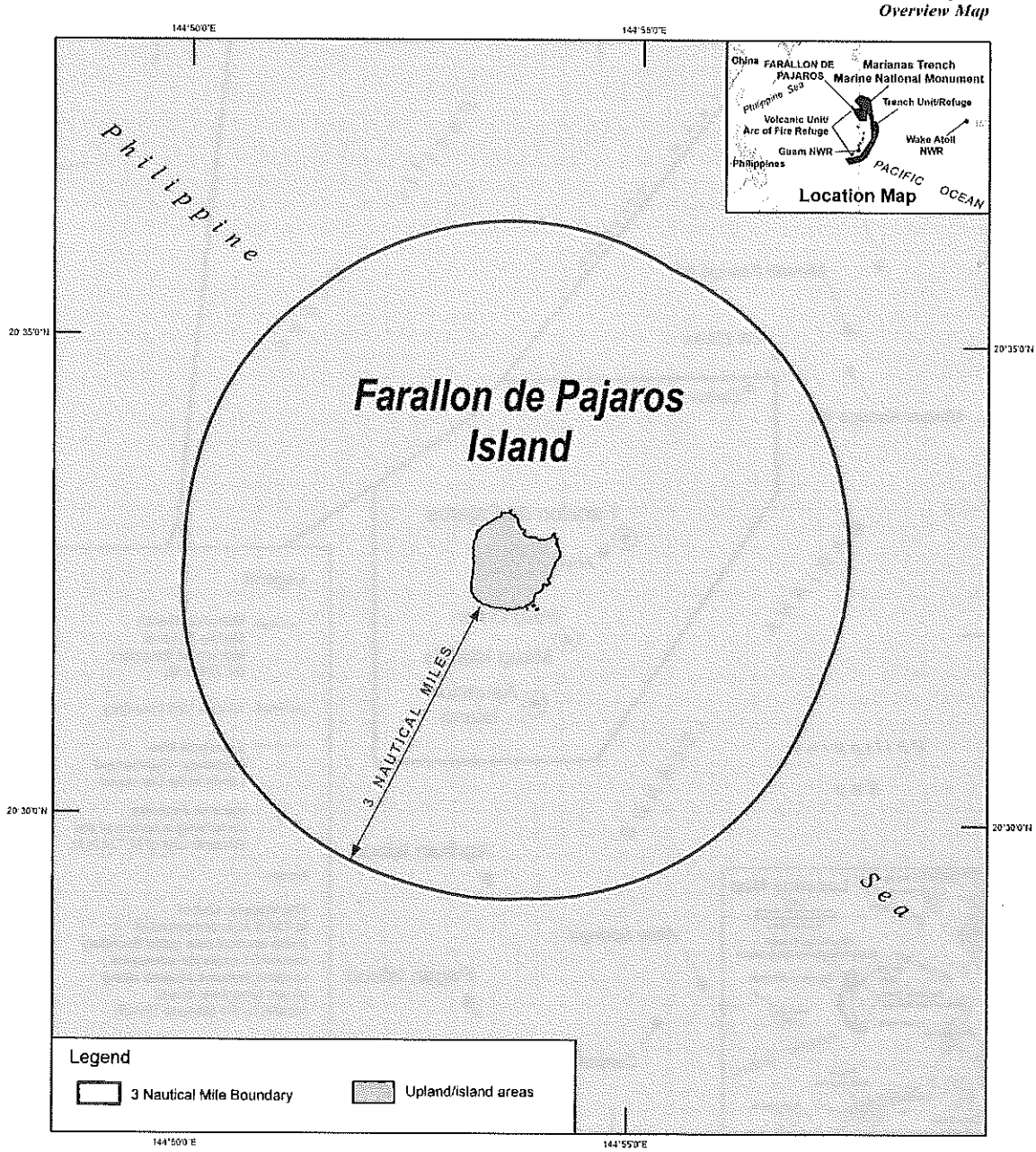


U.S. Fish & Wildlife Service

Proposed - Northern Islands Submerged Lands Conveyance

Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands

Figure 3. Farallon de Pajaros Overview Map



PRODUCED IN THE DIVISION OF REALTY & REFUGE INFORMATION
PORTLAND, OREGON
LAND STATUS CURRENT TO 7/14/2009
MAP DATE: 3/7/2016
BASEMAP:
MERIDIAN: N/A
FILE: 14-050-9.MXD

0 0.75 1.5 3 Nautical Miles

0 0.75 1.5 3 Kilometers

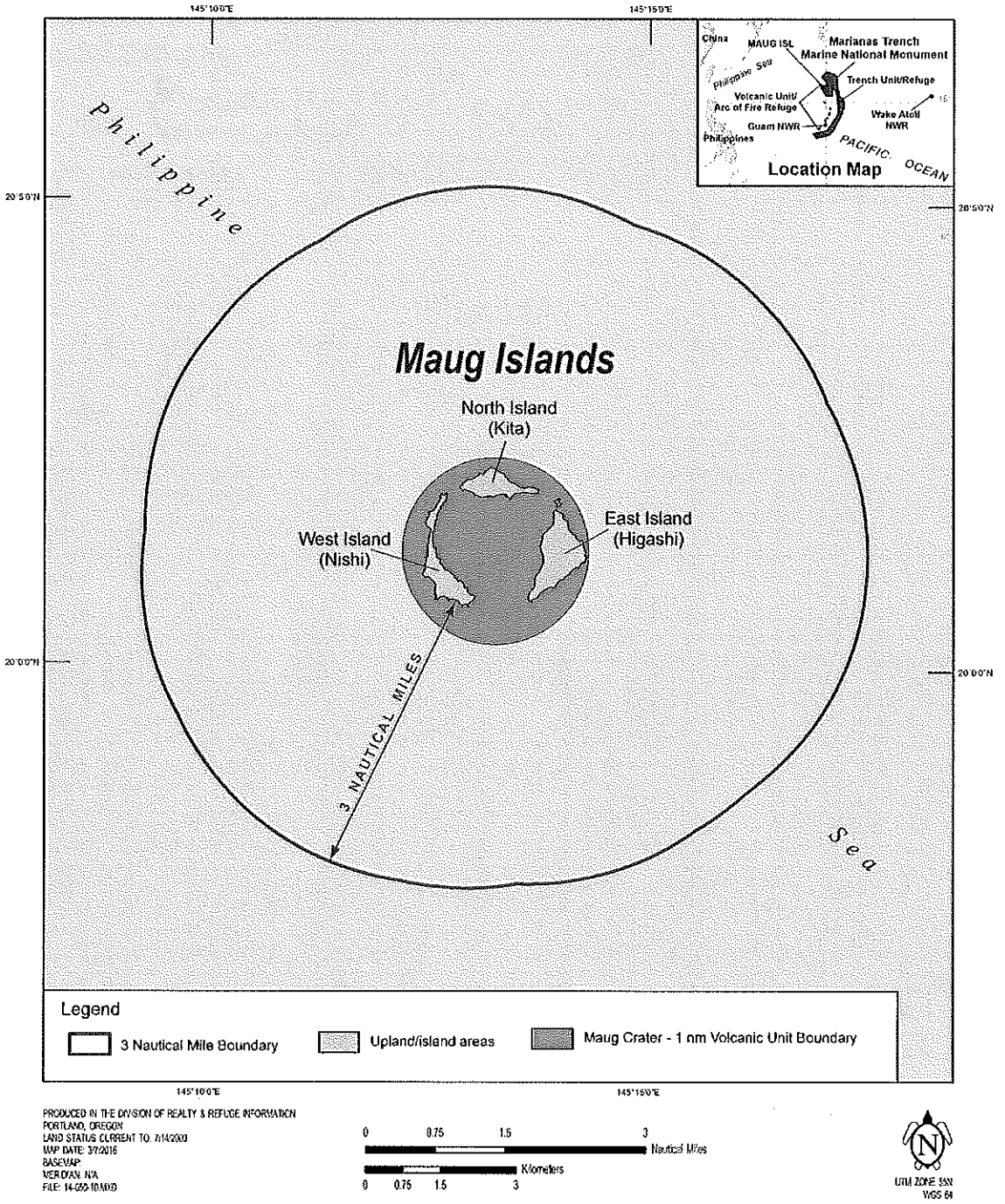
UTM ZONE 55N
WGS 84

U.S. Fish & Wildlife Service

Proposed - Northern Islands Submerged Lands Conveyance

Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands

Figure 4. Maug Islands Overview Map

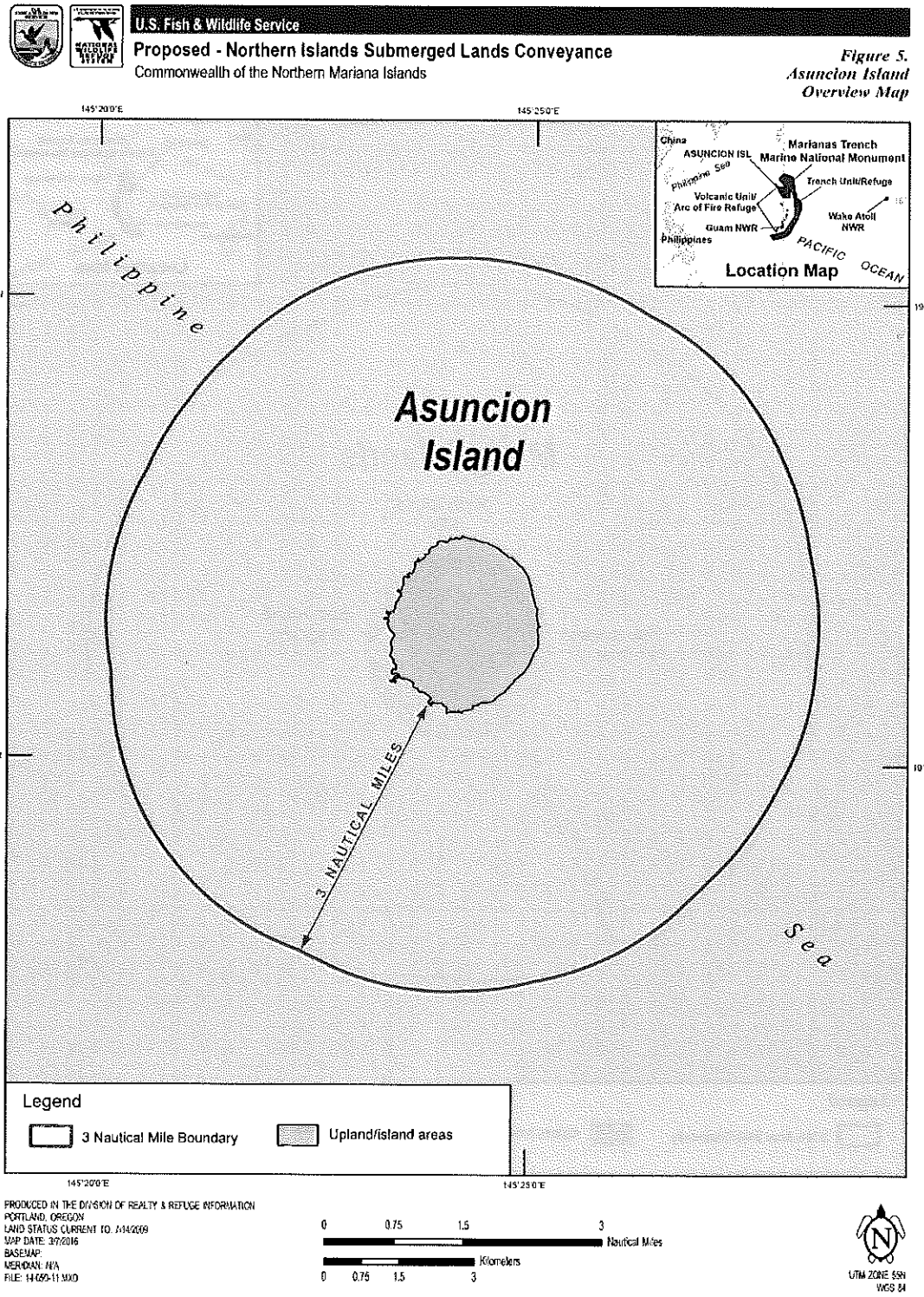


PRODUCED IN THE DIVISION OF REALTY & REFUGE INFORMATION
PORTLAND, OREGON
LAND STATUS CURRENT TO: 7/14/2009
MAP DATE: 3/7/2016
BASEMAP:
MERIDIAN: N/A
FILE: 14-050-10.MXD

0 0.75 1.5 3 Nautical Miles

0 0.75 1.5 3 Kilometers

UTM ZONE 55N
WGS 84


U.S. Fish & Wildlife Service
Proposed - Northern Islands Submerged Lands Conveyance
Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands
Figure 5.
Asuncion Island
Overview Map
145°20'0"E
145°25'0"E
19°45'0"N
19°40'0"N
Philippine
Sea
Asuncion
Island
3 NAUTICAL MILES
China
ASUNCION ISL
Marianas Trench
Marine National Monument
Philippine Sea
Trench Unit/Refuge
Volcanic Unit/
Arc of Fire Refuge
Wake Atoll
NWR
Guam NWR
Philippines
PACIFIC
OCEAN
Location Map
Legend
3 Nautical Mile Boundary
Upland/island areas
PRODUCED IN THE DIVISION OF REALTY & REFUGE INFORMATION
PORTLAND, OREGON
LAND STATUS CURRENT TO: 7/14/2009
MAP DATE: 3/7/2016
BASEMAP:
MERIDIAN: N/A
FILE: 14-055-11.MXD
0 0.75 1.5 3
Nautical Miles
Kilometers
0 0.75 1.5 3
N
UTM ZONE 55N
WGS 84

Appendix G. Mariana Trench Monument Advisory Council

Charge Document

MARIANA TRENCH MONUMENT ADVISORY COUNCIL

The purpose of the advisory council document is to specify the committee's mission or charge, and general operational characteristics (not membership behavior).

1. Council's Official Designation. Mariana Trench Monument Advisory Council (MTMAC)

2. Authority. The MTMAC is organized as directed by Presidential Proclamation 8335, establishing the Marianas Trench Marine National Monument (Monument). The MTMAC is exempt from provisions of the Federal Advisory Committee Act (FACA), as amended, 5 U.S.C. App. 2, as an intergovernmental committee, in accordance with 41 CFR Part §102-3.40 (g).

3. Objectives and Scope of Activities. The objectives of the MTMAC shall be for each member to provide intergovernmental advice and recommendations on the development of management plans and management of the Monument. The scope of the MTMAC is solely to exchange individual members' views, information, or advice relating to the management planning or implementation of Federal programs established pursuant to statute, that explicitly or inherently share intergovernmental responsibilities or administration.

4. Description of Duties. MTMAC members shall provide advice and recommendations to the Department of the Interior (DOI) through the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS) and the Department of Commerce (DOC), through the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA). Recommendations on overall management of the Monument will be made to USFWS, and advice and recommendations on fisheries-related activities in the Islands Unit of the Trench Monument shall be provided to NOAA Fisheries Service. USFWS and NOAA will consult with each other on their management. The MTMAC will adopt such procedures as it deems necessary to govern its activities.

5. Agency or Official to Whom the Committee Reports. The MTMAC members will provide advice on overall Monument management to the DOI/USFWS through the Refuge and Monuments Supervisor of the Pacific Islands Refuge and Monuments Office and to the NOAA Fisheries Service, Monument Program Manager.

6. Support. Each participating agency in the MTMAC shall be responsible for the expenses of its representative and the Departments of the Interior and Commerce shall be equally responsible for the costs of the Advisory Council.

7. Designated Federal Officer (DFO). The Monument Superintendent, USFWS Pacific Refuges and Monuments Office, or his/her appointed designee shall serve as the DFO for the MTMAC, in consultation with NOAA. The NOAA Monuments Program Manager shall be an alternate DFO for the MTMAC. The DFO will work in cooperation with NOAA to approve or call all of the advisory committee's meetings, prepare and approve all meeting agendas and minutes, attend all meetings, adjourn any meeting when determined adjournment to be in the public interest, and chair meetings when directed to do so by the USFWS official to whom the MTMAC reports.

8. Estimated Number and Frequency of Meetings. The MTMAC shall meet in person at least once per fiscal year and may schedule additional teleconference or videoconference meetings approximately every four months, or as deemed necessary by the DFO. The frequency of meetings needed will be reconsidered every 3-years.

9. Duration. The MTMAC shall exist for the duration of development and implementation of the Monument Management Plan.

10. Termination. The MTMAC may be terminated following completion of the Marianas Trench Monument Management Plan, if agreed to by the DOI/USFWS and DOC/NOAA, in consultation with the CNMI Government.

11. Membership and Designation. The MTMAC shall consist of three officials of the Government of the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands and one representative each from the Department of Defense and the United States Coast Guard. Members of the MTMAC will be appointed for a term of 3 years in accordance with provisions of Presidential Proclamation 8335. Additional MTMAC membership may be considered upon MTMAC recommendation to DOI/USFWS and DOC/NOAA Officials. Recognizing there may be times when MTMAC members won't be available for scheduled MTMAC meetings, an alternate for each MTMAC member shall be named by the respective government entity (CNMI, DOD, and USCG). Alternates shall be identified and submitted to the DFO at least two weeks prior to participation on the MTMAC. Alternates must be fully briefed and be prepared to provide their government's advice, and will have equal delegated authorities as the primary member from the respective governmental entity.

12. Subcommittees. The MTMAC DFO has the authority to create subcommittees. Any subcommittees developed must report back to the MTMAC, and must not provide advice or work products directly to the USFWS or NOAA.

13. Recordkeeping. Records of the MTMAC, formally and informally established subcommittees, or other subgroups of the committee, shall be documented and reported to the USFWS and NOAA MTMAC representatives. These records shall be available for public inspection and copying, subject to the Freedom of Information Act, 5 U.S.C. 552.

MARIANAS TRENCH MONUMENT ADVISORY COUNCIL
By-Laws
September 12, 2013

1. Council's Official Designation. Marianas Trench Monument Advisory Council (MTMAC).

2. Purpose: The purpose of the MTMAC is to provide advice and recommendations to the Secretaries of the Interior and Commerce on the development of management plans and management of the monument.

3. Authority. The MTMAC is an intergovernmental committee established as directed by Presidential Proclamation 8335, which also established the Marianas Trench Marine National Monument (hereby referred to as monument). The MTMAC is exempt from provisions of the Federal Advisory Committee Act (FACA), as amended, as an intergovernmental committee, in accordance with 41 CFR Part §102-3.40 (g). The MTMAC members may share information discussed at the MTMAC meetings, however this shall be done separately from the MTMAC meetings to prevent triggering the FACA. Proclamation 8335 does not grant any additional authorities to the MTMAC or its members other than to provide advice and recommendations as stated in the above Purpose (section 1 of these by-laws) and adopt procedures as it deems necessary to govern its activities. These by-laws do not affect or modify existing regulations or agency responsibilities and authorities. They specifically do not commit any agency to activities beyond the scope of its mission and authorities under its organic statutes and trust responsibilities.

4. Agency or Official to Whom the MTMAC Reports. The MTMAC members will provide advice and recommendations to the Secretaries of the Interior and Commerce via U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS) Refuge Supervisor of the Hawaiian and Pacific Islands National Wildlife Refuge Complex and the Pacific Islands Deputy Regional Administrator, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) Fisheries Service (NMFS), respectively.

5. Objectives, Responsibilities and Scope of Activities.
Objectives: The objectives of the MTMAC shall be to obtain, review and comment on relevant information and to provide advice and recommendations on Marianas Trench Monument management plans and management of the monument, to include but not limited to:
1) Council of Environmental Quality commitments to the CNMI government affecting management of the Marianas Trench Marine National Monument;
2) management of the Islands Unit;
3) public education programs and public outreach regarding the coral reef ecosystem and related marine resources and species of the monument and efforts to conserve them;
4) traditional access by indigenous persons, as identified by the Secretaries in consultation with the Government of the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands (CNMI), for culturally significant subsistence, cultural and religious uses within the monument;
5) a program to assess and promote monument-related scientific exploration and research, tourism, and recreational and economic activities and opportunities in the CNMI;

6) a process to consider requests for recreational fishing permits in certain areas of the Islands Unit;
7) programs for monitoring and enforcement necessary to ensure that scientific exploration and research, tourism, and recreational and commercial activities do not degrade the monument's coral reef ecosystem or related marine resources or species or diminish the monument's natural character;
8) assuring management plans and their implementing regulations do not impose any restrictions on innocent passage in the territorial sea or otherwise restrict navigation, overflight, and other internationally recognized lawful uses of the sea, and that any established monument prohibitions do not apply to activities necessary to respond to emergencies threatening life, property, or the environment, or to activities necessary for national security to include activities and exercises of the Armed Forces, or law enforcement purposes; and
9) assuring management plans and their implementing regulations do not limit or otherwise affect the Armed Forces' discretion to use, maintain, improve, manage, or control any property under the administrative control of a Military Department or otherwise limit the availability of such property for military purposes.

Responsibilities: To ensure a successful forum, all MTMAC members share these common responsibilities which may include but are not limited to:

- Represent respective agencies and authorities accurately
- Prepare for, attend, and participate in scheduled meetings
- Engage in open and honest communications to, during and from the forum
- Timely follow through on assigned action items
- Share information on availability and access to resources for the respective agencies to ensure successful monument management
- Advise the MTMAC on political and resource opportunities or issues particular to the respective governing bodies that may affect the monument management
- Communicate with the staff of member agencies to enhance coordination
- Conducting other activities as necessary to achieve the purpose of the MTMAC

Scope: The MTMAC's scope of activities shall apply to all matters within the boundaries of the monument and relevant to the protection of resources identified in Proclamation 8335.

6. Membership Nomination, Appointment and Term Limit. Per the Proclamation 8335, the MTMAC shall consist of a minimum of the following:
a) Three officials of the Government of the CNMI as recommended by the CNMI Governor, one representative recommended by and from the Department of Defense, and one representative recommended by and from the United States Coast Guard.
b) Members of the MTMAC will be appointed by the Secretaries of the Interior and Commerce for a term of 3 years in accordance with provisions of Presidential Proclamation 8335.
c) Each MTMAC member identified in 6. a. is entitled to participate in a consensus process.

Recognizing there may be times when MTMAC members are not able to participate in meetings, they may identify alternate representatives to serve for no more than one calendar year. The CNMI Governor may designate (3) alternates, the Department of Defense may designate (1) alternate, and the US Coast Guard may designate (1) alternate. The designation must be in writing and presented to the Chairperson at any time before the commencement of a MTMAC scheduled meeting. Each alternate will have equal delegated authorities as the primary member from their respective governmental entity. An alternate may not appoint another alternate. [

Additional MTMAC membership may be recommended to the Secretaries by a consensus of all the existing members; however, the maximum number of members shall not exceed seven.

To be eligible to be nominated to the MTMAC a person must be a government official who has authority to represent the views of their respective government department or agency. "Official" means currently employed with federal and/or CNMI government. Membership on the MTMAC shall continue until the earlier of (1) expiration of term; (2) termination of employment in member's respective government, agency, or department; or (3) until such time as the Secretaries determine service is no longer required.

Upon termination of member's assignment to the MTMAC, a new member nomination will be sought from the appropriate agency.

7. MTMAC Positions, Description of Duties and Term Limits.
The MTMAC shall have the following leadership positions, duties and terms:
a) Chairperson
- Duties: In coordination with USFWS and NMFS: Schedules, calls to order, conducts, facilitates consensus building and adjourns MTMAC meetings. Determines MTMAC meeting agendas with the assistance of MTMAC members. Submits MTMAC advice and recommendations (to include corresponding member's opinions) to the NMFS and USFWS. Chairs MTMAC public outreach and open house events. Acts as the MTMAC strategic messaging spokesperson for messages decided by consensus of the members.
- Term: Three years or to the end of MTMAC appointment whichever occurs first, as applicable.

b) Vice Chairperson
- Duties: Acts at Chairperson in the absence of the Chairperson.
- Term: Three years or to the end of MTMAC appointment whichever occurs first, as applicable

c) Secretary
- Duties: Ensures each MTMAC meeting is properly documented; ensures minutes are taken, then reviews minutes for accuracy and reports minutes to the MTMAC for acceptance; ensures the administrative record is maintained and publicly available; ensures action items are tracked and reported to the MTMAC

- Term: Three years or to the end of MTMAC appointment whichever occurs first, as applicable

8. NMFS and USFWS MTMAC Assistance Expectations
NMFS and USFWS shall provide administrative support to the MTMAC. This administrative support shall include:

- providing subject matter expertise and research for MTMAC questions
- legal advice to the advisory council as necessary for the performance of its mission,
- providing information necessary to perform advisory council duties,
- assisting the Secretary with preparing and distributing meeting minutes
- maintaining appropriate records of administrative proceedings and responding to public requests for information,
- identifying and obtaining meeting venues with consideration of equal opportunity among the CNM Islands,
- providing meeting announcements one week prior and again one day prior to meetings using media, website, and other appropriate means
- providing toll-free conference call capability for MTMAC discussions conducted by phone
- providing MTMAC administrative supplies subject to the availability of appropriations,
- establishing and maintaining the MTMAC webpage on the Services' appropriate websites

9. MTMAC Operating Procedures. The MTMAC will adopt such procedures as it deems necessary to govern its activities. The following are general operating procedures.

a) Consensus View: The MTMAC operates by the exchange of views, information, and data and strives for consensus to develop advice and recommendations relating to monument management. While consensus is the goal, it is not required. When consensus for advice and recommendations is not reached, each member's opinion is documented and submitted to the NMFS and USFWS. This consensus process is also used for adopting procedures to govern MTMAC activities and recommendations for membership additions or deletions.

b) Meetings: All official meetings should be conducted in person where possible to facilitate public participation. However, the advisory council may conduct routine administrative business through alternative means, such as a teleconference. All official meetings conducted in person will be open to the public; however public comment will only be sought during public outreach sessions conducted immediately after the meeting or upon temporary termination of the meeting. Public outreach sessions may include an open house approach. Meetings will be held quarterly per fiscal year or as needed, with the goal of meeting annually in the CNMI. Members unable to attend meetings will provide their written comments attached to the minutes.

c) Robert's Rules of Order: Robert's Rules of Order meeting convention will be used with the modification for attaining consensus. Consensus votes include: agree, can live with it (neutral, which does not affect the vote count), and disagree. When a member differs from consensus opinion, the reason is discussed, the members then strive for adjustments to make agreement and attempt consensus again. All submitted advice or recommendations will include the individual opinions of all members. If the primary and alternate members are both present only one may participate in the consensus process.

d) Quorum: Official meeting quorum is attained if at least two CNMI members and both the DoD and USCG members are present. Should this not be attained, the missing member may authorize the meeting to proceed (after review of the agenda items) without them or they may participate remotely or after the meeting (ie. concurrence after the meeting). Agendas may be adjusted to ensure no quorum conflicts.

e) Elections: Positions are elected by the MTMAC members. Elections are held every three years as scheduled by the Chairperson in coordination with the members. Members may nominate each other for positions or the Chairperson may ask a member to accept a nomination. A member(s) who is nominated must accept the nomination before a consensus vote is taken. If a consensus is not attained, discussion is sought to strive for consensus, however if consensus is still not attained a majority vote may decide.

f) Working Groups: The MTMAC may need to utilize working groups. The purpose of a working group would be to address assigned issues or reviews support of the MTMAC. Working groups must be FACA compliant.

10. Operating Costs: Each participating agency shall be responsible for the expenses of its representative and the Departments of the Interior and Commerce shall be equally responsible for the costs of the Advisory Council. Nothing in these by-laws shall be construed as obligating funds in violation of the Anti-Deficiency Act, 31 U.S.C. 1341.

11. Duration. MTMAC would consult every three years with USFWS and NMFS regarding the ongoing role of MTMAC and its duration and extension.

12. Liability. Nothing in these by-laws is intended to establish any right or provide a basis for any action, either legal or equitable, by any person or class or persons against the United States or CNMI, its departments, agencies, instrumentalities or entities, or its officers or employees, challenging a government action or a failure to act.

MARIANAS TRENCH MONUMENT ADVISORY COUNCIL
By-Laws
September 12, 2013

SIGNED

MTMAC Chairperson
(CNMI Representative)
Benigno Sablan

09/12/13
Date

MTMAC Vice Chairperson
(Frank Rabauliman)
CNMI Representative

9/12/13
Date

MTMAC Secretary
(DoD Representative)
Roy Tsutsui

9/12/13
Date

MTMAC CNMI Representative
Arnold Palacios

9/12/13
Date

MTMAC U.S. Coast Guard
Morgan Roper

9/12/13
Date

G-8

Appendix H. Acronyms and Abbreviations

Administration Act	National Wildlife Refuge System Administration Act
Arc of Fire Refuge	Mariana Arc of Fire National Wildlife Refuge
BMPs	best management practices
CCP	Comprehensive Conservation Plan
CEQ	Council on Environmental Quality
CFR	Code of Federal Regulations
CNMI	U.S. Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands
DLNR	CNMI Department of Land and Natural Resources
DOD	Department of Defense
DOI	Department of the Interior
DOS	Department of State
EA	Environmental Assessment
EARs	Ecosystem Acoustic Recorders
E&R	Exploration and Research (action plan)
EBM	Ecosystem Based Management
EEZ	Exclusive Economic Zone
EMB	East Mariana Basin
EO	Presidential Executive Order
ESA	Endangered Species Act
FADs	fish aggregating devices
FEP	Fishery Ecosystem Plan
FOSC	Federal on Scene Coordinator
FRS	DLNR Fisheries Research Section
GHG	green house gas

IMO	International Maritime Organization
IPCC	Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change
JTMD	Japan Tsunami Marine Debris
LCPW	Lower Circumpolar Pacific Water
LE	Law Enforcement
LiDAR	Light Detection and Ranging (a remote sensing method)
MARAMP	Marianas Archipelago Rapid Assessment and Monitoring Program
MIACP	Marianas Islands Area Contingency Plan
MIS	Marine Invasive Species (action plan)
MMCT	Monument Management Coordination Team
MMP	Monument management plan
MMPA	Marine Mammal Protection Act
Monument	Marianas Trench Marine National Monument
MOU	Memorandum of Understanding
MPA	marine protected area
MRCM	Marine Resources Conservation and Monitoring Action Plan
MSA	Magnuson-Stevens Act
MTMAC	Mariana Trench Monument Advisory Council
NEC	North Equatorial Current
NEPA	National Environmental Policy Act
NHPA	National Historic Preservation Act of 1966
NISL	Northern Islands Submerged Lands
nmi	nautical miles
NMFS	National Marine Fisheries Service
NMSA	National Marine Sanctuaries Act
NOAA	National Ocean and Atmospheric Administration

NOC	National Ocean Council
NOS	National Ocean Service
NPCC	North Pacific Counter Current
NPDW	North Pacific Deep Water
NRDA	Natural Resource Damage Assessment
NRF	National Response Framework
NWRS	National Wildlife Refuge System
OAR	Office of Oceanic and Atmospheric Research
OIA	Office of Insular Affairs
OLE	Office of Law Enforcement
OPA	DOS Office of Oceans and Polar Affairs
PIFSC	Pacific Islands Fisheries Science Center
PIFWO	Pacific Islands Fish and Wildlife Office
PIRO	Pacific Islands Region Office
PRiMO	Pacific Risk Management ‘Ohana
Proclamation	Presidential Proclamation 8335
ROV	remotely operated vehicles
SAE	Surveillance and Enforcement (action plan)
SCC	Subtropical Counter Current
SFD	Sustainable Fisheries Division
SHPO	State Historic Preservation Officer
SNF	Sustainable Non-commercial Fishing (action plan)
SPREP	Pacific Regional Environmental Programme
SUP	Special Use Permit
T&E	threatened and endangered
Trench Unit/Refuge	Mariana Trench National Wildlife Refuge

TZCF	transition zone chlorophyll front
USCG	U.S. Coast Guard
USGS	U.S. Geological Survey
USFWS	U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service
VMS	vessel monitoring systems
WMB	West Mariana Basin
WPFMC	Western Pacific Fishery Management Council

Appendix I. Mandates

I.1 Acts of Congress

America COMPETES Act of 2007 - directs Federal agencies to invest in innovation through research and development, and to improve the competitiveness of the United States.

Antiquities Act of 1906 - provides the basis for U.S. management of national marine monuments. This law gives the President of the United States the authority to, by presidential proclamation, restrict the use of particular public land owned by the Federal government.

Archeological and Historic Preservation Act of 1974 - requires Federal agencies provide for "...the preservation of historical and archeological data (including relics and specimens) which might otherwise be irreparably lost or destroyed as the result of...any alteration of the terrain caused as a result of any Federal construction project of federally licensed activity or program."

Clean Water Act of 1972 - establishes the basic structure for regulating discharges of pollutants into the waters of the United States and regulating quality standards for surface waters.

Coastal Zone Management Act of 1972 - provides for the management of the nation's coastal resources to preserve, protect, develop, and where possible, to restore or enhance the resources of the nation's coastal zone.

Comprehensive Environmental Response, Compensation, and Liability Act of 1980 - provides broad Federal authority to respond directly to releases or threatened releases of hazardous substances that may endanger public health or the environment.

Coral Reef Conservation Act of 2000 - enacted to preserve coral reef ecosystems; to promote the wise management and sustainable use; to develop sound science on the condition of coral reef ecosystems and the threats to such ecosystems; to support conservation programs; and to provide financial resources.

Endangered Species Act of 1973 - the basis for U.S. conservation of species that are endangered or threatened with extinction throughout all or a significant portion of their range, and the conservation of the ecosystems on which they depend.

Federal Ocean Acidification Research and Monitoring Act of 2009 - outlines a coordinated process for federal agencies to create a plan for effective monitoring of processes and consequences of OA on marine organisms and ecosystems. Agencies are required to develop adaptation strategies to conserve ecosystems vulnerable to the effects of OA.

Lacey Act of 1900 - prohibits trade in wildlife, fish, and plants that have been illegally taken, possessed, transported or sold. It also regulates introduction of birds and other animals to places where they have never existed before.

Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act of 1976 - the basis for U.S. management of fisheries within the EEZ, it was adopted to create a U.S. fishery conservation zone out to 200 nautical miles off the U.S. coast; to phase out foreign fishing activities within this zone; to prevent overfishing; to allow overfished stocks to recover; and to conserve and manage fishery resources. It has since been amended several times, most recently in 2006.

Mandatory Ballast Water Management Program for U.S. Waters (2004) - protects U.S. waters against the unintentional introduction of nonindigenous species via ballast water discharges.

Marine Debris Research, Prevention, and Reduction Act of 2006 - established programs to help identify, determine sources of, assess, reduce, and prevent marine debris and its adverse impacts on the marine environment and navigation safety.

Marine Mammal Protection Act of 1972 - prohibits the taking of marine mammals, and enacts a moratorium on the import, export, and sale of any marine mammal, along with any marine mammal part or product within the United States.

Marine Plastic Pollution Research and Control Act of 1987 - aims to reduce the amount of garbage—both plastics and other persistent wastes—that ships dump into the oceans. It also prohibits all ships from dumping plastics into the sea.

Marine Protection, Research, and Sanctuaries Act of 1972 (AKA the Ocean Dumping Act) - the basis for U.S. management of dumping of materials into the ocean. The act regulates the ocean dumping of all material beyond the territorial limit (3 miles from shore) and prevents or strictly limits dumping material that would adversely affect human health, welfare, or amenities, or the marine environment, ecological systems, or economic potentialities.

Migratory Bird Treaty Act of 1918 - The original 1918 statute implemented the 1916 Convention between the U.S. and Great Britain (for Canada) for the protection of migratory birds. Later amendments implemented treaties between the U.S. and Mexico, the U.S. and Japan, and the U.S. and the Soviet Union (now Russia) for the protection of migratory birds.

National Environmental Policy Act of 1969 - requires Federal agencies to integrate environmental values into their decision making processes by considering the environmental impacts of their proposed actions and reasonable alternatives to those actions.

National Historic Preservation Act of 1966 - requires Federal agencies to evaluate the impact of all federally funded or permitted projects on historic properties (buildings, archaeological sites, etc.) through a process known as Section 106 Review.

National Wildlife Refuge System Administration Act of 1966 - provides for the conservation of fish, wildlife, plants, and their habitats within the Refuge System, and ensures that the biological integrity, diversity, and environmental health of the Refuge System are maintained.

National Wildlife Refuge System Improvement Act of 1997 - The Administration Act was amended by the Improvement Act. The Improvement Act includes a unifying mission for all national wildlife refuges, a new process for determining compatible uses on refuges, and a requirement that each refuge will be managed under a CCP developed in an open public process.

Refuge Recreation Act of 1962 - authorized the Secretary of the Interior to administer refuges, hatcheries and other conservation areas for recreational use, when such uses do not interfere with the area's primary purposes. The Act provided for public use fees and permits, and penalties for violation of regulations.

Shark Conservation Act of 2010 - prohibits any person from cutting the fins of a shark at sea and from possessing, transferring and landing shark fins (including the tail) that are not naturally attached to the corresponding carcass. In addition it prohibits any person from landing a shark carcass without its corresponding fins being naturally attached.

Vessel Incidental Discharge Act of 2018 - establishes new responsibilities for the USCG to enforce EPA performance standards for marine pollution control devices (both equipment and management practices) that control discharges incidental to the normal operation of a vessel. It retains authority of the Secretary of Interior to regulate discharge on areas under DOI jurisdiction.

Whale Conservation and Protection Study Act of 1976 - directs the Secretary of Commerce to conduct comprehensive studies of all whales found in waters subject to the jurisdiction of the United States.

I.2 Executive Orders

Executive Order 13112 - Invasive Species - established the National Invasive Species Council. The Executive Order requires that a Council of Departments dealing with invasive species be created. Currently there are 13 Departments and Agencies on the Council.

Executive Order 13166 - Improving Access to Services for Persons with Limited English Proficiency - requires Federal agencies to ensure that written materials routinely provided in English also are provided in regularly encountered languages other than English, identify any need for services to those with limited English proficiency (LEP), and develop and implement a system to provide those services so LEP persons can have meaningful access to them.

Executive Order 13653 - Preparing the United States for the Impacts of Climate Change - enacted in order to prepare the Nation for the impacts of climate change by undertaking actions to enhance climate preparedness and resilience. The EO outlines Federal agency responsibilities in the areas of supporting climate resilient investment; managing lands and waters for climate preparedness and resilience; providing information, data and tools for climate change preparedness and resilience; and planning.

Executive Order 13840 - Ocean Policy to Advance the Economic, Security, and Environmental Interests of the United States – enacted on June 19, 2018. The order established an Ocean Policy Committee and delineates seven policy priorities: 1) Coordinating departments' ocean management; 2) Promoting the lawful use of the ocean; 3) Exercising rights and jurisdiction over the ocean; 4) Facilitating economic growth; 5) Ensuring that policies do not prevent the sustainable use of the marine ecosystems; 6) Modernizing the attainment and use of best available science; and, 7) Facilitating collaboration among government entities, industry, the science community, and other stakeholders.

I.3 International Treaties

Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species of Wild Fauna and Flora (CITES) - an international treaty to prevent species from becoming endangered or extinct because of international trade. Under this treaty, countries work together to regulate the international trade of animal and plant species and ensure that this trade is not detrimental to the survival of wild populations.

Convention on the Conservation of Migratory Species of Wild Animals - more commonly abbreviated to just the Convention on Migratory Species (CMS) - aims to conserve terrestrial, marine and avian migratory species throughout their range. It is an intergovernmental treaty concerned with the conservation of wildlife and habitats on a global scale.

Law of the Sea Treaty - defines the rights and responsibilities of nations in their use of the world's oceans; it establishes guidelines for businesses, the environment, and the management of marine natural resources. Although the United States now recognizes the treaty as a codification of customary international law, it has not ratified it.

Appendix J. Statement of Compliance

for Implementation of the
Marianas Trench Marine National Monument Management Plan

The following Executive orders and legislative acts have been reviewed as they apply to implementation of the Marianas Trench Marine National Monument Management Plan (MMP).

National Environmental Policy Act (1969). The planning process has been conducted in accordance with NEPA Implementing Procedures; DOI and DOC procedures; USFWS and NOAA Fisheries procedures; and has been performed in coordination with the affected public.

The MMP is programmatic in many respects and specific details of certain projects and actions cannot be determined until a later date depending on funding and implementation schedules. Certain projects or actions may require additional NEPA compliance.

National Historic Preservation Act (1966). The implementation of the MMP should not affect cultural resources. The proposed action does not meet the criteria of an effect or adverse effect as an undertaking defined in 36 CFR 800.9 and 614 FW 2. The USFWS and NOAA Fisheries will comply with the National Historic Preservation Act if any management actions have the potential to affect any historic properties which may be present.

Executive Order 12372. Intergovernmental Review. Coordination and consultation with affected local, and Territorial governments, and other Federal agencies has been completed through personal contact by Federal agency planners, Monument managers, and supervisors.

Executive Order 12898. Federal Actions to Address Environmental Justice in Minority and Low-Income Populations. All Federal actions must address and identify, as appropriate, disproportionally high and adverse human health or environmental effects of its programs, policies, and activities on minority populations, low-income populations, and Indian Tribes in the United States. The MMP was evaluated and no adverse human health or environmental effects were identified for minority or low-income populations, indigenous peoples, Indian Tribes, or anyone else.

Wilderness Preservation Act of 1964. The USFWS has evaluated the suitability of the two Refuges within the Monument for wilderness designation and determined neither qualifies at this time.

National Wildlife Refuge System Administration Act of 1966, as amended by the National Wildlife Refuge System Improvement Act of 1997 (16 U.S.C. 668dd-668ee). Appropriate Use findings and Compatibility Determinations have been prepared by USFWS for the following uses: *Photography, Videography, Filming, or Audio Recording*; and, *Research, Exploration, Scientific Collections, and Surveys*.

Marine Mammal Protection Act. NOAA Fisheries will conduct consultations under provisions of the Marine Mammal Protection Act for any Monument management program actions that have the potential to affect marine mammals.

Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act. NOAA Fisheries will ensure that all fishery activities conducted within the Monument are in compliance with the Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act.

Executive Order 13186. Responsibilities of Federal Agencies to Protect Migratory Birds. The MMP is consistent with Executive Order 13186 because the MMP and NEPA analyses evaluate the effects of agency actions on migratory birds.

Endangered Species Act of 1973. The USFWS and NOAA Fisheries will conduct consultations under Section 7 of the ESA for any Monument management program actions that have the potential to affect listed species.

Coastal Zone Management Act, Section 307. Section 307(c)(1) of the Coastal Zone Management Act of 1972, as amended, requires each Federal agency conducting or supporting activities directly affecting the coastal zone, to conduct or support those activities in a manner which is, to the maximum extent practicable, consistent with approved state coastal management programs. The MMP is consistent with Coastal Zone Management Act because MMP implementation would protect the coastal zone and not cause any adverse impacts.

Executive Order 11990. Protection of Wetlands. Marine systems and their associated reefs are classified as wetlands. The MMP is consistent with Executive Order 11990 because MMP implementation would protect existing wetlands.

Executive Order 11988. Floodplain Management. Under this order Federal agencies "shall take action to reduce the risk of flood loss, to minimize the impact of floods on human safety, health and welfare, and to restore and preserve the natural and beneficial values served by flood plains." Executive Order 11988 does not apply to this MMP as there are no floodplains within the Monument boundaries.

Integrated Pest Management (IPM), 517 DM 1 and 569 FW 1 In accordance with 517 DM 1, only pesticides registered with the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) in full compliance with the Federal Insecticide, Fungicide, and Rodenticide Act (FIFRA), and as provided in regulations, orders, or permits issued by EPA, may be applied on lands and waters under USFWS jurisdiction. The standard IPM language is not applicable to marine waters. There are no plans to use any pesticides within Monument boundaries in this MMP. To preclude the introduction of invasive species, Best Management Practices and Biosecurity Protocols will be implemented.

_____	_____
USFWS Division Chief Planning, Visitor Services, and Transportation Interior Region 12	Michael D. Tosatto, Regional Administrator NOAA Fisheries Pacific Islands Region

Appendix K. Public Scoping

Public scoping meetings were held on Saipan, Tinian, Rota, and Guam in February and March of 2012 to receive public input on management issues, concerns, and opportunities.

We summarized the comments and questions we received and provided an initial response to the public in Planning Update 3 that was mailed to interested parties in March 2013. The full text of all comments received in 2012 can be viewed on-line at www.regulations.gov. The following summary table with the government response was included in the 2013 update.

Topic	Public Comments	Public Questions	Response
Science and Exploration	Keep it pristine and untouched. Design lab for deep-sea geological research. Conduct periodic biological surveys. Science lab should be built on one of the 3 Northern Islands. Share all scientific findings with the public. Translate scientific findings into language that can be understood by the general community. While in port, researchers should give presentations throughout the community. Make a world class ocean institute/research facility. Provide resources to fund marine science. Climate change should be considered in the plan.	*How much science is needed?* *What research will be allowed within the Monument?* *Has there been an inventory of all the resources on the ocean floor?* *Have the resources within the Monument been identified?* *Will there be opportunities for teachers and students of the CNMI to participate in the research cruises?* *What agency will take care of Rapid Ecological Assessments (REA)?* *What has the Hawai'i model taught us so far that we can adopt?*	The types of research are predicted to revolve around fundamental exploration and characterization; discovering, characterizing, and understanding bottom-dwelling life; discovering, characterizing, and understanding geologic features and habitats; as well as characterizing and understanding scientific processes. Many of the Monument resources in and around the Islands Unit have been identified through the NOAA NMFS Pacific Islands Fisheries Science Center (PIFSC). The PIFSC with CNMI, Guam, the Service, and other NOAA and Interior partners is creating a science plan for the Mariana Archipelago under a separate planning process. It will highlight what is known, some things that are unknown, and necessary steps to fill the gaps. In 2006, NOAA explored the Ring of Fire and identified new findings about the biology, vents and volcanism. The U.S. Geological Survey (USGS) has a long history of data collection and analysis from Pacific islands Exclusive Economic Zones (EEZ). Nonrenewable marine mineral resources within the EEZ of the CNMI are identified in USGS Circular 1286 (2005). Currently the NOAA research cruises to the CNMI are typically filled to capacity with scientists and tasks to be accomplished, so student participation is unlikely. However, teachers can apply to the Teacher at Sea Program. More information is available at: www.teacheratsea.noaa.gov. Similar to a REA, NOAA will conduct a baseline characterization of the marine resources within the MTMNM and associated archipelago in collaboration with the Service and the CNMI government. The Papahānaumokuākea Marine National Monument model has taught us the importance of inter-agency and public communication and the benefit of identifying mutual objectives in accomplishing goals.
Traditional and Cultural Access	No permit requirements to enter the islands unit for traditional and cultural fishing. Monument must be open to indigenous residents to visit without hassle. Traditional fishing should mean with traditional wooden boats (no engines) and shell hooks using line from plant or animal parts. Chamorros and Carolinians should fish for free.	*Will the native islanders and people of CNMI be able to fish in Monument waters after designation?* *Will a permit be required?* *Will charter fishing be allowed in the Monument?* *Will traditional fishing and cultural exchange of fish caught be allowed?*	Access to the Islands Unit for traditional and cultural purposes will be managed through a permit system in close coordination with the CNMI government. The Proclamation prohibits commercial fishing within 50 nmi of the waters around the islands of Maug, Faralon De Pajaros, and Asuncion. The Western Pacific Fisheries Management Council has proposed non-commercial fishing regulations for the Islands Unit which include options for traditional and subsistence fishing (along with the concept of "customary exchange" and sport/charter boat fishing, with the final regulations to be established by NMFS.

Topic	Public Comments	Public Questions	Response
Minerals Management	Make sure indigenous people get a share in any minerals mined in the Trench. The Federal Government should authorize minerals exploration and extraction from the Monument. Legislation should be introduced to authorize mining in the Monument.	*What will happen to the rights of indigenous people to all the resources on the ocean floor?* *What inherent rights do the people of Guam, CNMI, & Micronesia have when natural resources are harvested from the ocean floor?*	The Proclamation prohibits the removal of Monument resources with exceptions for science and fishing. As such, the commercial harvest of marine minerals is not allowed. For all other waters surrounding CNMI, U.S. law decrees that the marine mineral resources are held by the Federal government for the benefit of all Americans. However, there is no legal framework for permitting mineral extraction from Federal waters surrounding U.S. territories. That is due to the fact that Congress authorized the Bureau of Ocean Energy Management, Regulation and Enforcement to regulate mineral extraction in Federal waters off the states, leaving out mention of the territories. There have been attempts in Congress over the past several years to amend the Outer Continental Shelf Lands Act to include the territories but nothing yet has passed.
Monument	We (indigenous people) own all the submerged lands. Article 12 mentions submerged lands so [there is a] need to negotiate.	*Where is the authority for taking land/waters?* *Did the Feds take the Monument from the CNMI?*	Through the 1975 Covenant agreement with the United States, the CNMI is under the sovereignty of the United States. As a function of national external sovereignty, the U.S. holds paramount rights over seaward submerged lands. The U.S. proclaimed a 200 nmi EEZ in 1983, a 12 nmi territorial sea in 1988, and a 24 nmi contiguous zone in 1999, consistent with customary international law as codified in United Nations Convention on the Law of the Sea. The Monument is held in trust for the benefit of all Americans, including the people of the CNMI and Guam.
Permits	Need permit review board to ensure activities do no harm. Charter vessel should be allowed to fish with only a float plan. Do not implement fee schedule for indigenous people. Permit local people to fish but no commercial fishing.	*How much would it cost if other countries want to explore the site?*	National Wildlife Refuge System (NWRS) Special Use Permits (SUPs) are issued for the Trench and Volcanic Units. Research SUPs are currently issued at no cost to scientists. The details of a permitting process and protocol for activities within the Islands Unit are being developed in the MMP. We recognize that local residents may or may not be persons of Northern Marianas descent. We will consider recreational use permits in the MMP separately from traditional and cultural access permits.
Management	Plan must include strong conservation for the whole ecosystem not just fisheries. Let CNMI be the caretaker of the Monument.	*Who is in charge of monitoring the Monument after it's all settled, the US or CNMI?* *Who has custody of the Monument?* *How would you make the Trench Monument more personal to the people of the Marianas?*	The United States retains custody of the Monument. The Secretary of the Interior has management responsibility for the Monument, in consultation with the Secretary of Commerce, except that the Secretary of Commerce, in consultation with the Secretary of the Interior, has the primary responsibility with respect to fishery-related activities. These management responsibilities are administered primarily by the Service/NWRS and the NOAA/NMFS, and will be conducted in consultation with the Government of the CNMI and the DOD, as provided in the Proclamation. We will develop opportunities to involve local people in the conservation of this unique place, as well as provide traditional access for cultural and religious uses.

Topic	Public Comments	Public Questions	Response
Regulations and Law Enforcement	Law enforcement (LE) should be done by Federal government and a strong effective LE plan should be in the MMP. Publish new regulation proposals in local media for residents to comment. Regulations should be built by people of CNMI. Consider visitor contact station on Pagan for LE. Vessels entering the Islands Unit need quarantine inspections to prevent invasive species transport.	*Who will enforce the regulations established for the Monument?* *How will regulations for the Monument be enforced?* *How will this all be monitored?* *How can Guam LE help in enforcing the regulations established for the Monument?* *Who is allowed to commercially fish in the Trench area?*	Monument regulation enforcement will be conducted primarily by the United States Coast Guard (USCG), working in close association with NOAA Office of Law Enforcement (OLE), Service OLE, Refuge LE, and CNMI LE personnel. USCG response is based on current intelligence information received from CNMI and others. USCG also uses modern technology such as satellite imagery and vessel monitoring systems. Guam LE can help with enforcement through outreach and education to the boating public, boarding at sea and at port of vessels that are known to be operating in the Trench region. Commercial fishing permit holders are listed on the website: www.fpir.noaa.gov/SFD/SFD_permits_index.html An Invasive Species Action Plan will be an appendix to the MMP detailing protocols and prevention measures.
National Security	Federal Government should build USCG bases on Saipan, Tinian, Rota, Pagan, and FDM. Concern that DOD participation on MTMAC will change MMP to allow destructive practices.	*Will the military be using any areas of the Monument for military exercises?* *What area is the military bombing and is it part of the Monument and does it affect the Monument resources??* *Why are the Feds (military, Service, & NOAA) not talking about military activities that may impact the Monument?*	The Proclamation recognizes the important role of the Department of Defense (DOD) and provides specific provisions for their continuing activities. The DOD will continue to conduct exercises in the region to maintain military readiness and has committed to adopt appropriate measures to minimize impacts on natural resources within the Monument. The 2009 Mariana Islands Range Environmental Impact Statement (EIS) addresses ongoing and proposed military training activities within the Mariana Islands Range Complex , which includes portions of the Monument. After analysis, the EIS projects "no significant harm to marine communities" within the Monument. The Farallon de Medinilla (FDM) Target Range (70 miles north of Saipan) is not within the Monument. An interagency team of NOAA, Service, CNMI, and U.S. Navy staff survey the area annually to assess damage to coral reef habitat to develop reports with recommendations to minimize damage to coral reef resources, marine mammals, and seabirds using FDM and surrounding waters. The Proclamation mandates that DOD is a member of the Marianas Trench Monument Advisory Council (MTMAC) which will help to facilitate inter-agency communication and enhance public awareness.
MTMAC	Include Guam representation in MTMAC. Not happy with 3 CNMI on MTMAC (and no Guam Rep.) Need island reps for Rota, Tinian, & Saipan so information can be shared and CNMI represented fairly.	*Why is it just CNMI on the MTMAC and no one from Guam?*	The Proclamation identified the members of the Advisory Council as three officials of the CNMI and one representative each from the DOD and the USCG. Governor Fitial nominates MTMAC representatives for CNMI and the Secretaries of the Interior and Commerce appoint members based on nominations. Recommendations for Guam representation can be made from the Governors of CNMI and Guam to the Secretaries for consideration.

Topic	Public Comments	Public Questions	Response
Visitor Center	Provide multiple visitor centers (VC) on multiple islands (Saipan, Rota, Tinian) as well as a traveling display. A research facility and lab should be part of the VC. VC should have video and audio feed from Trench. Include long-term maintenance funding for visitor center.	*Where will the visitor's center be located?* *On what basis will the site location of a VC be determined?* *What types of exhibits will be in the VC?*	When necessary funding is secured, and in consultation with the CNMI government, several site locations will be evaluated as part of a Request for Proposals (RFP) which will also include preliminary design options. Site selection factors will include, but are not limited to: accessibility, physiography, demographic patterns, site capacity, zoning, legal matters, utilities availability, and cost. Exhibits will be developed during the design phase to explain Monument resources, ocean and wildlife conservation, cultural and traditional customs, and current research activities.
Education and Outreach	Link programs to CNMI and Guam education curriculums. Provide access to live Web views. Make a 3-D model of islands and trench. Have a summer camp for kids. Develop educational DVD for students. Provide trips to MTMNM for students and teachers. Students should be able to take samples. Establish apprenticeships for CNMI youth.	*Will there be an on-line map and information to learn more about the Monument?* *What educational benefits will there be for our descendants?* *How can local people get to visit the Monument?*	On-line maps and information about the Monument is available on our Websites: www.fws.gov/marianastrenchmarinemonument www.fpir.noaa.gov/MNM/mnm_index.html Public education programs and public outreach regarding Monument resources and Monument-related scientific exploration and research will be important management components of value to all. Currently, local residents of the CNMI or Guam would need to have a boat or charter one as well as obtain a Monument activity permit. The permit process will be established for the Islands Unit as part of the MMP.
Economic Benefits	Clarify what is authorized for economic and financial activities authorized within the Monument. Create employment opportunities for CNMI and purchase goods locally, be sure Tinian and Rota are included in economic benefits. Restricting tourism in the Northern islands would be detrimental. Establish buoys for dive boats in near shore reef area as well as deeper water for larger live-aboard boats.	*How does designating the area as a Monument benefit the people of the CNMI and our descendants?* *Who determines qualification on education level and who will be deciding who will be employed by these activities?*	The benefit to the people of the CNMI may be realized through global recognition of the value and importance of this area for marine ecosystem conservation and also through the opportunity to learn more about the unique resources within the Mariana Archipelago to ensure the long-term conservation of these natural and cultural legacies. If hired as Federal employees, the U.S. Office of Personnel Management publishes minimum qualifications for white collar jobs in the Federal service in the Operating Manual: Qualifications Standards for General Schedule Positions. For trades, craft, and labor positions, refer to The Job Qualifications System for Trades and Labor Occupations. Human Resource specialists use these manuals to evaluate applicants for vacant positions in the Federal service. The use of contracted employees may also be considered. Qualifications and selection for potential employment opportunities on private charter boats would be determined by those private businesses.

November 2020

Front Cover Photo:
ROV Jason sampling at NW Rota-1. NOAA

Back Cover:
Napoleon wrass. JE Maragos/USFWS
Zealandia Bank pinnacle. N. Poneroy/NOAA
Brittle stars and deep-sea coral. NOAA